

Gestetner® **LANIER**  **RICOH**® **SAVIN**®



G071
SERVICE MANUAL

001479MIU

RICOH GROUP COMPANIES



G071 SERVICE MANUAL

RICOH GROUP COMPANIES

Gestetner[®]  **LANIER RICOH[®] SAVIN[®]**

G071

SERVICE MANUAL

001479MIU

It is the reader's responsibility when discussing the information contained within this document to maintain a level of confidentiality that is in the best interest of Ricoh Corporation and its member companies.

***NO PART OF THIS DOCUMENT MAY BE REPRODUCED IN ANY
FASHION AND DISTRIBUTED WITHOUT THE PRIOR
PERMISSION OF RICOH CORPORATION.***

All product names, domain names or product illustrations, including desktop images, used in this document are trademarks, registered trademarks or the property of their respective companies.

They are used throughout this book in an informational or editorial fashion only and for the benefit of such companies. No such use, or the use of any trade name, or web site is intended to convey endorsement or other affiliation with Ricoh products.

WARNING

The Service Manual contains information regarding service techniques, procedures, processes and spare parts of office equipment distributed by Ricoh Corporation. Users of this manual should be either service trained or certified by successfully completing a Ricoh Technical Training Program.

Untrained and uncertified users utilizing information contained in this service manual to repair or modify Ricoh equipment risk personal injury, damage to property or loss of warranty protection.

Ricoh Corporation

LEGEND

PRODUCT CODE	COMPANY			
	GESTETNER	LANIER	RICOH	SAVIN
G071	C7010	LP 036c	Aficio CL5000	CLP1036

DOCUMENTATION HISTORY

REV. NO.	DATE	COMMENTS
*	12/2002	Original Printing

G071

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INSTALLATION

1. INSTALLATION.....	1-1
1.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS	1-1
1.1.1 ENVIRONMENT	1-1
1.1.2 MACHINE LEVEL	1-1
1.1.3 SPACE REQUIREMENTS.....	1-2
1.1.4 POWER REQUIREMENTS	1-2
1.2 MACHINE INSTALLATION.....	1-3
1.3 OPTIONS	1-4
1.4 REMARKS FOR INSTALLATION.....	1-5

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

2. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE.....	2-1
2.1 OVERVIEW	2-1
Users Do the User PM Procedures.....	2-1
All PM Done by Technicians	2-1
Counters	2-1
2.2 USER MAINTENANCE	2-1
Main Unit.....	2-1
Optional Paper Tray Unit	2-2
2.3 SERVICE MAINTENANCE.....	2-2
Main Unit.....	2-2
Optional Units	2-3

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

3. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT	3-1
3.1 SPECIAL TOOLS	3-1
3.2 EXTERIOR COVERS	3-2
3.2.1 REAR COVER	3-2
3.2.2 LOWER LEFT COVER	3-3
3.2.3 UPPER COVER, OPERATION PANEL.....	3-3
3.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS.....	3-4
3.3.1 PRINTER CONTROLLER	3-4
3.3.2 CONTROLLER BOX.....	3-4
3.3.3 BCU BOARD	3-4
3.3.4 I/O BOARD	3-5
3.3.5 PSU	3-5
3.3.6 HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY BOARD.....	3-6

3.4	DRIVE UNITS.....	3-7
3.4.1	DEVELOPMENT CLUTCHES	3-7
	K/Y Development Units.....	3-7
	C/M Development Units.....	3-7
3.4.2	DEVELOPMENT MOTOR	3-8
3.4.3	MAIN MOTOR	3-8
3.4.4	PCU GEAR BOX AND OPC BELT CLEANING CLUTCH	3-9
3.4.5	FUSING UNIT MOTOR	3-9
3.4.6	PAPER FEED MOTOR.....	3-10
3.4.7	PAPER FEED CLUTCH	3-10
3.4.8	REGISTRATION CLUTCH	3-10
3.5	LASER OPTICS SECTION.....	3-11
3.5.1	CAUTION DECAL LOCATION	3-11
3.5.2	LASER OPTICS HOUSING UNIT	3-12
	Adjusting for Image Skew	3-14
	Laser Beam Pitch Adjustment.....	3-15
3.5.3	POLYGONAL MIRROR MOTOR AND LSD	3-16
3.6	DEVELOPMENT UNIT	3-17
3.7	PHOTOCONDUCTOR UNIT (PCU)	3-19
3.7.1	MAIN UNIT	3-19
3.7.2	WASTE TONER BOTTLES	3-20
3.7.3	CHARGE CORONA WIRE	3-21
3.7.4	CHARGE CORONA WIRE CLEANER MOTOR.....	3-22
3.7.5	OPC BELT CLEANING UNIT	3-22
3.7.6	IMAGE TRANSFER BELT CLEANING UNIT	3-22
3.8	PAPER TRANSFER UNIT.....	3-23
3.8.1	VERTICAL TRANSPORT UNIT.....	3-23
3.8.2	TRANSFER ROLLER.....	3-23
	Cleaning the Paper Dust Mylar.....	3-24
3.9	FUSING/PAPER EXIT	3-25
3.9.1	FUSING UNIT.....	3-25
3.9.2	OIL SUPPLY UNIT	3-25
3.9.3	LAMPS	3-26
3.9.4	FUSING INNER UNIT.....	3-27
3.9.5	PRESSURE ROLLER THERMOFUSE.....	3-27
3.9.6	FUSING BELT UNIT AND PRESSURE ROLLER UNIT	3-27
3.9.7	PRESSURE ROLLER THERMISTOR.....	3-28
3.9.8	HOT ROLLER STRIPPERS	3-28
3.9.9	PRESSURE ROLLER.....	3-29
3.9.10	OIL ABSORBERS.....	3-30
3.9.11	PAPER EXIT UNIT AND PAPER EXIT/ OVERFLOW SENSOR.....	3-31
3.10	PAPER FEED AND TRANSPORT	3-32
3.10.1	FEED ROLLER AND FRICTION PAD	3-32
3.10.2	REGISTRATION SENSOR.....	3-33
3.10.3	PAPER FEED SENSOR.....	3-35
3.10.4	PAPER NEAR-END SENSOR.....	3-35
3.10.5	PAPER END SENSOR.....	3-35
3.11	BYPASS TRAY.....	3-36

3.11.1 PICKUP/FEED ROLLER	3-36
3.11.2 PAPER FEED CLUTCH	3-37
3.11.3 REVERSE ROLLER	3-37

TROUBLESHOOTING

4. TROUBLESHOOTING	4-1
4.1 SERVICE CALL	4-1
4.1.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS	4-1
4.1.2 SC TABLE	4-2
4.2 CONTROLLER ERROR TABLE	4-9
4.3 BLOWN FUSE CONDITIONS	4-12
4.4 CHECK POINTS FOR IMAGE PROBLEMS AT REGULAR INTERVALS.....	4-12

SERVICE TABLES

5. SERVICE TABLES	5-1
5.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE	5-1
5.1.1 OPERATION PANEL KEYS	5-1
5.1.2 STARTING SERVICE PROGRAM MODE	5-2
Procedure 1	5-2
Procedure 2	5-2
5.1.3 MAIN MENU	5-2
5.1.4 SPECIFYING A VALUE OR SETTING	5-3
5.1.5 LEAVING SERVICE MODE	5-3
5.2 SP MODE TABLES	5-4
5.2.1 SERVICE (CONTROLLER SERVICE MODES)	5-4
Bit Switch Settings	5-6
Gamma Adjustment	5-8
5.2.2 ENGINE SERVICE MODES	5-11
SP1-XXX: (Feed)	5-11
SP2-XXX: (Drum).....	5-15
SP3-XXX: (Process)	5-29
SP5-XXX: (Mode)	5-32
SP7-XXX: (Data Log).....	5-39
Input Check Table.....	5-47
Table 1: Tray 1 Paper Size	5-50
Table 2: 1st/2nd Bank Paper Size	5-50
Table 3: 1st/2nd Bank Near End	5-50
Output Check Table	5-51
5.3 CONTROLLER SELF-DIAGNOSTICS	5-53
5.3.1 OVERVIEW	5-53
5.3.2 DETAILED SELF-DIAGNOSTICS	5-54
5.4 USER PROGRAM MODE	5-55
5.5 UPGRADING SOFTWARE.....	5-56
5.5.1 OVERVIEW	5-56

5.5.2 UPGRADING	5-57
Procedure	5-57
Error Recovery.....	5-58
5.6 DIP SWITCHES.....	5-59
Controller Board.....	5-59
BCU Board.....	5-59
5.7 PRINTING A TEST PATTERN	5-60

DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS

6. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS	6-1
6.1 OVERVIEW	6-1
6.1.1 MAJOR COMPONENTS	6-1
6.1.2 PAPER PATH.....	6-2
6.1.3 DRIVE COMPONENTS.....	6-3
6.1.4 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS	6-4
Image Transfer	6-4
Development Units.....	6-5
Paper Path.....	6-6
Drive Components	6-7
Circuit Boards	6-8
6.2 PRINTING PROCESS OVERVIEW.....	6-9
6.3 PROCESS CONTROL	6-11
6.3.1 OVERVIEW	6-11
6.3.2 PROCESS CONTROL STEPS.....	6-12
Six Steps.....	6-12
When is Process Control Done?	6-12
6.4 PHOTOCONDUCTOR UNIT (PCU)	6-13
6.4.1 OVERVIEW	6-13
6.4.2 NEW PHOTOCONDUCTOR UNIT DETECTION	6-14
New PCU Sensor.....	6-14
Mechanism	6-14
PCU Counter	6-14
6.4.3 CHARGE CORONA UNIT	6-15
Power Supply.....	6-15
Wire Cleaning	6-15
Cleaning Interval.....	6-15
Quenching	6-16
6.4.4 OPC BELT DRIVE	6-16
6.4.5 OPC BELT CLEANING UNIT	6-17
Toner Collection Augers	6-17
Counter Blade + Brush	6-17
Waste Toner Bottle Sensors	6-17
Drive	6-18
6.4.6 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT UNIT	6-19
Drive	6-19
Belt Mark Sensor	6-19
Bias Roller	6-20

6.4.7	TRANSFER BELT CLEANING UNIT	6-21
	Bias Brush	6-21
	Bias Roller and Cleaning Blade	6-21
	Collecting Coil	6-21
	Waste Toner Bottle Sensors	6-21
	Contact Mechanism	6-22
	Power Supply	6-23
	Drive	6-23
6.5	LASER EXPOSURE	6-24
6.5.1	OVERVIEW	6-24
	Dust Shield Glass Cleaning	6-25
	LD Unit Adjustment	6-25
	Polygonal Mirror	6-25
	Laser Diode Power Control	6-25
	Maintenance Adjustment	6-25
6.5.2	LD SAFETY SWITCH	6-26
	Operation Panel Message and Switch Mechanism	6-27
6.6	DEVELOPMENT	6-28
6.6.1	OVERVIEW	6-28
6.6.2	DEVELOPMENT UNIT	6-29
	Rollers and Agitators	6-29
	Replacing Units	6-29
	Memory Chip	6-29
6.6.3	TONER SUPPLY MECHANISM	6-30
	Toner Cartridge Agitators	6-30
	Drive Power Path	6-30
	Development Unit Agitator	6-30
	Toner Supply Roller and Doctor Roller	6-30
	Shutter	6-30
6.6.4	TONER END DETECTION	6-31
	Mechanism	6-31
	Toner Near-End Detection	6-31
	Toner End Detection	6-32
	Toner End Recovery	6-32
6.6.5	DEVELOPMENT UNIT CONTACT MECHANISM	6-33
	Mechanism	6-33
	Reverse Rotation	6-33
6.6.6	POWER SOURCE	6-34
	Development, Toner Supply, and Doctor Rollers	6-34
	Doctor Roller	6-34
6.7	PAPER FEED	6-35
6.7.1	OVERVIEW	6-35
	Transport Speed	6-36
	Friction Pad	6-36
6.7.2	STANDARD TRAY DRIVE	6-36
	Feed and Vertical Transport Rollers	6-36
	Registration Roller	6-36
6.7.3	STANDARD TRAY – BOTTOM PLATE LIFT	6-37
	Lift Mechanism	6-37

Paper Near End Detection	6-37
Paper End Detection	6-37
6.7.4 STANDARD TRAY - PAPER SIZE DETECTION	6-38
Mechanism	6-38
Switch Pattern	6-38
6.7.5 BYPASS TRAY	6-39
Paper Feed Mechanism	6-39
Bypass Tray Drive Power Path	6-39
Pick-up Solenoid	6-39
Paper End Sensor	6-39
6.8 PAPER TRANSFER AND SEPARATION	6-40
6.8.1 OVERVIEW	6-40
Jammed Paper Release	6-40
Image Transfer and Paper Separation	6-40
6.8.2 MECHANISM	6-41
Timing	6-41
Mechanism	6-41
6.8.3 POWER SUPPLY	6-42
Electric Power Path	6-42
Transfer Roller Bias	6-42
Discharge Plate	6-42
Temperature/Humidity Control	6-42
Roller Cleaning	6-43
6.9 FUSING UNIT AND OIL SUPPLY UNIT	6-44
6.9.1 OVERVIEW	6-44
6.9.2 FUSING UNIT CONFIGURATION	6-45
Fusing Belt	6-45
Oil Supply	6-45
Heating Roller Lamp	6-45
Pressure Roller Lamp	6-45
Pressure Roller Pawls	6-45
Fusing Bias	6-46
Fusing Unit SCs	6-46
6.9.3 TEMPERATURE CONTROL	6-47
6.9.4 OIL SUPPLY AND CLEANING	6-48
Oil Supply	6-48
Oil Path	6-48
Oil Recycling	6-48
Belt Cleaning	6-48
Oil End Detection	6-49
Fusing unit switch	6-49
6.9.5 DRIVE	6-49
Drive Power Path (Fusing Unit and Oil Supply Roller)	6-49
Drive Power Path (Pressure Roller)	6-49
6.9.6 ENERGY SAVER MODE	6-50
Level 1 Energy Saver Mode (default: off)	6-50
Level 2 Energy Saver Mode	6-50
Ready Mode	6-50
6.9.7 PAPER EXIT	6-51

Drive Power Path	6-51
Paper Jam Detection	6-51
6.9.8 OVERFLOW DETECTION	6-51
6.10 PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARDS	6-52
6.10.1 PRINTER CONTROLLER	6-52
Function	6-52
Memory	6-52
Interfaces	6-52
Slots	6-53
Options	6-53
DIP Switch	6-53
LED Indicators	6-53
6.10.2 BASE ENGINE CONTROL UNIT (BCU).....	6-54
Function	6-54
Upgrading	6-54
Nonvolatile Random Access Memory (NVRAM).....	6-54
DIP Switch	6-54
6.10.3 INPUT/OUTPUT (I/O) BOARD	6-55
6.10.4 POWER SUPPLY UNIT (PSU).....	6-55
6.10.5 HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY.....	6-55
6.11 CONTROLLER.....	6-56
6.11.1 OVERVIEW	6-56
6.11.2 BOARD LAYOUT.....	6-58
6.11.3 PRINT DATA PROCESSING	6-59
RPCS Driver	6-59
PCL5c Driver	6-59
PS3 Driver	6-60
CMS (Color Management System)	6-60
Gray Correction	6-60
BG/UCR (Black Generation/Under Color Removal).....	6-60
Gamma Correction.....	6-60
Toner Limitation	6-61
Dither Processing and ROP/RIP	6-61
6.11.4 CONTROLLER FUNCTIONS	6-62
Sample Print	6-62
Locked Print.....	6-62
Paper Source Selection	6-63
Auto Continue	6-64
Paper Output Tray	6-65
Stapling.....	6-66
6.12 IEEE1394 INTERFACE	6-67
6.12.1 SPECIFICATIONS.....	6-67
Hardware Specification	6-67
System Requirements.....	6-67
6.12.2 IEEE1394	6-67
6.12.3 BLOCK DIAGRAM.....	6-68
6.12.4 PIN ASSIGNMENT	6-68
6.12.5 REMARKS ABOUT THIS INTERFACE KIT	6-69
6.12.6 TROUBLESHOOTING NOTES	6-69

6.12.7 IP OVER IEEE 1394	6-70
6.13 IEEE 802.11B (WIRELESS LAN)	6-71
6.13.1 SPECIFICATIONS.....	6-71
6.13.2 BLOCK DIAGRAM.....	6-71
6.13.3 TRANSMISSION MODE.....	6-72
Ad hoc Mode.....	6-72
Infrastructure Mode.....	6-72
6.13.4 SECURITY FEATURES	6-73
Using the SSID in Ad hoc mode	6-73
6.13.5 TROUBLESHOOTING NOTES	6-74
Communication Status.....	6-74
Channel Settings	6-74
Troubleshooting Steps	6-75
6.14 USB	6-76
6.14.1 SPECIFICATIONS.....	6-76
6.14.2 USB 1.1/2.0	6-76
6.14.3 USB CONNECTORS.....	6-77
6.14.4 PIN ASSIGNMENT	6-77
6.14.5 REMARKS.....	6-78
Related SP Mode.....	6-78

SPECIFICATIONS

SPECIFICATIONS.....	7-1
1. GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS.....	7-1
1.1 MAIN UNIT	7-1
2. SUPPORTED PAPER SIZES.....	7-4
2.1 MAIN TRAY, BYPASS TRAY, AND DUPLEX UNIT	7-4
2.2 FINISHER, MAIL BOX, AND PAPER TRAY UNIT.....	7-5
3. SOFTWARE ACCESSORIES	7-6
3.1 PRINTER DRIVERS.....	7-6
3.2 UTILITY SOFTWARE	7-6
4. MACHINE CONFIGURATION.....	7-7
4.1 SYSTEM COMPONENTS	7-7
Exterior	7-7
Interior.....	7-8
Maintenance Kits	7-8
4.2 OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT	7-9
Finisher	7-9
Mail Box	7-10
Duplex Unit	7-10
Interchange Unit	7-10

PAPER TRAY UNIT (G313)

SEE SECTION G313 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTERCHANGE UNIT (G305)

SEE SECTION G305 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

DUPLEX UNIT (G303)

SEE SECTION G303 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

500-SHEET FINISHER (G314)

SEE SECTION G314 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

FOUR-BIN MAILBOX (G312)

SEE SECTION G312 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

IMPORTANT SAFETY NOTICES

PREVENTION OF PHYSICAL INJURY

1. Before disassembling or assembling parts of the printer and peripherals, make sure that the printer power cord is unplugged.
2. The wall outlet should be near the printer and easily accessible.
3. If any adjustment or operation check has to be made with exterior covers off or open while the main switch is turned on, keep hands away from electrified or mechanically driven components.
4. The printer drives some of its components when it completes the warm-up period. Be careful to keep hands away from the mechanical and electrical components as the printer starts operation.
5. The inside and the metal parts of the fusing unit become extremely hot while the printer is operating. Be careful to avoid touching those components with your bare hands.

HEALTH SAFETY CONDITIONS

Toner and developer are non-toxic, but if you get either of them in your eyes by accident, it may cause temporary eye discomfort. Try to remove with eye drops or flush with water as first aid. If unsuccessful, get medical attention.

OBSERVANCE OF ELECTRICAL SAFETY STANDARDS

1. The printer and its peripherals must be serviced by a customer service representative who has completed the training course on those models.
2. The NVRAM module (option) installed on the controller has a lithium battery which can explode if replaced incorrectly. Replace the NVRAM only with an identical one. The manufacturer recommends replacing the entire NVRAM. Do not recharge or burn this battery. Used NVRAM must be handled in accordance with local regulations.

SAFETY AND ECOLOGICAL NOTES FOR DISPOSAL

1. Do not incinerate toner bottles or used toner. Toner dust may ignite suddenly when exposed to an open flame.
2. Dispose of used toner, the maintenance unit which includes developer or the organic photoconductor in accordance with local regulations. (These are non-toxic supplies.)
3. Dispose of replaced parts in accordance with local regulations.
When keeping used lithium batteries in order to dispose of them later, do not put more than 100 batteries per sealed box. Storing larger numbers or not sealing them apart may lead to chemical reactions and heat build-up.
4. When keeping used lithium batteries in order to dispose of them later, do not put more than 100 batteries per sealed box. Storing larger numbers or not sealing them apart may lead to chemical reactions and heat build-up.

LASER SAFETY

The Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) prohibits the repair of laser-based optical units in the field. The optical housing unit can only be repaired in a factory or at a location with the requisite equipment. The laser subsystem is replaceable in the field by a qualified Customer Engineer. The laser chassis is not repairable in the field. Customer engineers are therefore directed to return all chassis and laser subsystems to the factory or service depot when replacement of the optical subsystem is required.

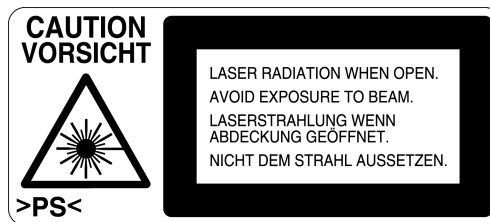
WARNING

Use of controls, or adjustment, or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

WARNING

WARNING: Turn off the main switch before attempting any of the procedures in the Laser Optics Housing Unit section. Laser beams can seriously damage your eyes.

CAUTION MARKING:



Trademarks

Microsoft®, Windows®, and MS-DOS® are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and /or other countries.

PostScript® is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems, Incorporated.

PCL® is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company.







Ethernet® is a registered trademark of Xerox Corporation.

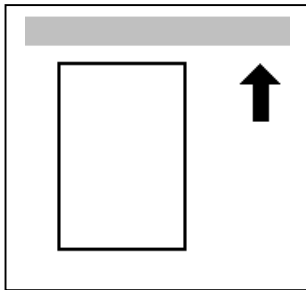
PowerPC® is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and may be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights involved with those marks.

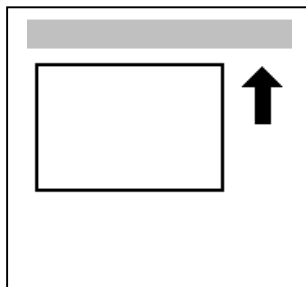
Conventions in this Manual

This manual uses several symbols.

Symbol	What it means
	Refer to section number
	See Core Tech Manual for details
	Screw
	Connector
	Clip ring
	E-ring



Lengthwise, SEF (Short Edge Feed)



Sideways, LEF (Long Edge Feed)

INSTALLATION

TAB
POSITION 1

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

TAB
POSITION 2

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

TAB
POSITION 3

TROUBLESHOOTING

TAB
POSITION 4

500-SHEET FINISHER G314

FOUR-BIN MAILBOX G312

SERVICE TABLES

TAB
POSITION 5

INTERCHANGE UNIT G305

DUPLEX UNIT G303

DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

TAB
POSITION 6

SPECIFICATIONS

TAB
POSITION 7

PAPER TRAY UNIT G313

TAB
POSITION 8

INSTALLATION

1. INSTALLATION

1.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

1.1.1 ENVIRONMENT

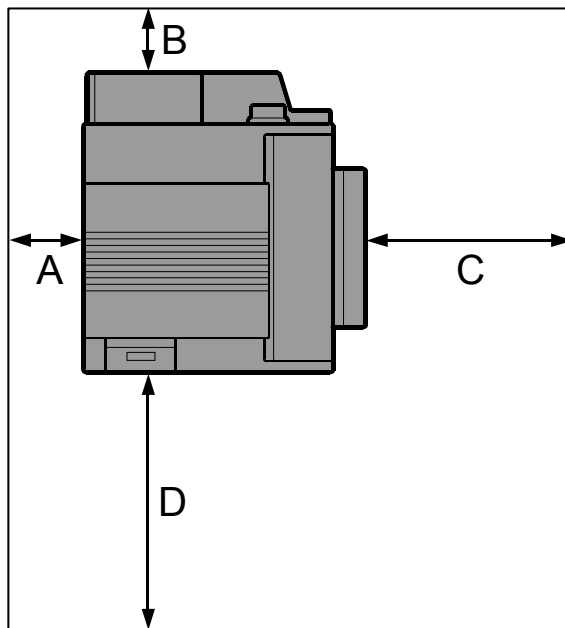
1. Temperature Range: 10°C to 32°C (50°F to 89°F)
2. Humidity Range: 20% to 80% RH
3. Ambient Illumination: Less than 2,000 lux (keep the machine out of direct sunlight.)
4. Ventilation: 3 times/hr/person or more
5. Avoid exposing the machine to sudden temperature changes, which include:
 - 1) Direct cool air from an air conditioner
 - 2) Direct heat from a heater
6. Avoid installing the machine in areas that may be exposed to corrosive gas.
7. Install the machine at a location lower than 2,500 m (8,200 ft.) above sea level.
8. Install the machine on a strong, level base. (➡ 1.1.2)
9. Avoid installing the machine in areas that may be subjected to strong vibration.

1.1.2 MACHINE LEVEL

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------------------|
| Front to back: | Within 5 mm (0.2") of level |
| Right to left: | Within 5 mm (0.2") of level |

INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

1.1.3 SPACE REQUIREMENTS



A: Over 100 mm (4")
B: Over 100 mm (4")
C: Over 550 mm (22")
D: Over 750 mm (30")

1.1.4 POWER REQUIREMENTS

CAUTION

1. Insert the plug firmly in the outlet.
2. Avoid using an outlet extension plug or cord.
3. Ground the machine.

1. Input voltage level:
120 V, 60 Hz, More than 11 A
220 to 240 V, 50/60 Hz, More than 7 A
2. Permissible voltage fluctuation: $\pm 10\%$
3. Do not put or place anything on the power cord.

1.2 MACHINE INSTALLATION

Refer to the Operating Instructions for details.

If the customer has a service contract, change the settings of the following SP modes depending on the contract type.

Item	SP No.	Function	Default
Meter charge	SP5-930-1 (Meter_Charge)	<p>Specifies whether the meter charge mode is enabled or disabled. If the user is doing the user PM procedures, set meter charge to 'Off'. If the technician is doing all the PM, set meter charge to 'On'.</p> <p>Meter charge mode enabled:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Counter menu appears immediately after the Menu key is pressed. The counter type selected by the counting method (SP5-045-1, Counter Method) can be displayed with the Counter menu. The counter values can also be printed with the Counter menu. The selected counter starts from a negative number. <p>Meter charge mode disabled:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Counter menu is not displayed. The total counter starts from 0. 	Off
Counting method	SP5-045-1 (Counter Method)	<p>Specifies whether the counting method used in meter charge mode is based on developments or prints.</p> <p>Important: This SP can only be done before the negative counters are reset with SP7-825-001 (Counter Reset)</p>	Developments
A3/11" x 17" double counting	SP5-104-1 (Double Count)	Specifies whether the counter is doubled for A3/11" x 17" paper.	No: Single counting
PM warning display 1	SP5-931-1 (PM_Display – Charger)	<p>Specifies whether the PM warning for the charge corona unit is displayed when the replacement time arrives.</p> <p>1: Displayed 0: Not displayed</p>	1
PM warning display 2	SP5-931-2 (PM_Display – PCU)	<p>Specifies whether the PM warning for the PCU is displayed.</p> <p>1: Displayed 0: Not displayed</p>	1

OPTIONS

Item	SP No.	Function	Default
PM warning display 3	SP5-931-3 (PM_Display - Bank_Feed)	Specifies whether the PM warning for the feed rollers in the optional paper feed unit is displayed. 1: Displayed 0: Not displayed	0
Fax No. setting	SP5-812-2 (FAX TEL No.)	Programs the service station fax number. The number is printed on the counter list when the meter charge mode is selected, so that the user can fax the counter data to the service station.	
Counter reset	SP7-825-1 (Counter Reset)	Resets the counters to 0. Important: This must be done at installation after all the above settings have been finished. The negative counters used in meter charge mode will be reset to zero.	

NOTE: 1) The default setting for this machine is meter-charge mode off.
2) The meter-charge counter cannot be reset.

1.3 OPTIONS

Refer to the Option Setup Guide for details.

No.	Optional Unit	Alternative	Requirements
1	500-sheet finisher	No. 2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No. 3 Hard disk or memory (extra 64 MB or more) for sort mode
2	4-bin mailbox	No. 1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No. 3
3	Interchange unit		
4	Duplex unit		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No. 3
5	Paper tray unit		
6	Printer hard disk		
7	DIMM memory (64, 128, or 256 MB modules available)		
8	IEEE1394 interface unit		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Extra 64 MB (or more) optional SDRAM module
9	User account enhancement unit		
10	IEEE802.11b (Wireless LAN)		

NOTE: 1) You cannot install the finisher and mailbox on the same machine.
2) You can install either 1 or 2 paper tray units.

1.4 REMARKS FOR INSTALLATION

In case you install this printer or you instruct customers to install, please note the following remark for development unit installation and replacement:

After installation or replacement of the development unit, print out the development unit check sheet by user mode (User Mode – Maintenance – Development Unit Check).

NOTE: For details please refer to the Quick Installation Guide.

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

2. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

2.1 OVERVIEW

Users Do the User PM Procedures

The user does PM for the items in section 2.2. The technician does PM for the items in section 2.3. Meter-charge mode must be set to “off” (SP5-930 [Meter_Charge], 5.2).

All PM Done by Technicians

The technician does PM for the items in sections 2.2 and 2.3. Meter-charge mode must be set to “on” (SP5-930, [Meter_Charge], 5.2).

Counters

When a maintenance counter for a unit has reached the limit, the corresponding message is displayed on the operation panel. After completing the maintenance procedure for that item, reset the counter (SP7-804, [PM_Clear], 5.2).

2.2 USER MAINTENANCE

Abbreviations:

Clean, **I**nspect, **L**ubricate, **R**eplace, **KP**rints, **KD**evelopments, **W**henever**N**ecessary

Main Unit

Item	KD		KP		Detection	Reset	Machine stops
	50	120	30	120			
T/B waste toner bottle		R*			Waste toner sensors	Auto-reset (sensor)	Yes
O/B waste toner bottle	R*				Waste toner sensors	Auto-reset (sensor)	Yes
Oil supply unit			R**		Oil end sensor/Oil supply unit counter	Manual reset	Yes
Fusing unit with paper feed roller				R	Exit sheet counter	Manual reset	Yes

* : Replacement period calculated for a 50% color ratio (the actual waste toner bottle condition is detected with the sensors)

** : Standard replacement period (the actual oil amount is detected with the sensor)

SERVICE MAINTENANCE

Item	KD			Detection	Reset	Machine stops
	60	120	240			
Black development unit		R		Dev. Bk counter*	Auto-reset (memory chip)	Yes
Color development unit	R			Dev. color counter*	Auto-reset (memory chip)	Yes
PCU (includes charge corona unit & dust filters)		R		PCU counter*	Auto-reset (new PCU sensor)	No

*Displayed with SP7-906 (PMCounter-PREV)

Item	WN	Detection	Reset	Machine stops	Remarks
Registration roller	C	None	None	No	① damp cloth and ② dry cloth
Dust shield glass (LD unit)	C	None	None	No	Built-in cleaning brush
Bottom plate pad	C	None	None	No	① damp cloth and ② dry cloth

Optional Paper Tray Unit

Item	150KP	Detection	Reset	Machine stops	Remarks
Feed, pick-up, and separation rollers	R	None	None	No	① damp cloth and ② dry cloth

2.3 SERVICE MAINTENANCE

Abbreviations:

Clean, **I**nspect, **L**ubricate, **R**eplace, **K**ilo**P**rints, **K**ilo**D**evelopments, **W**hen**e**ver**N**ecessary

Main Unit

Bypass Tray

Item	WN	Remarks
Feed Roller	C	① damp cloth and ② dry cloth
Pick-up Roller	C	① damp cloth and ② dry cloth
Separation Roller	C	① damp cloth and ② dry cloth

Optional Units***Paper Tray Unit***

Item	WN	Remarks
Relay Roller	C	① damp cloth and ② dry cloth
Bottom Plate Pad	C	① damp cloth and ② dry cloth

Finisher

Item	WN	Remarks
Rollers	C	① damp cloth and ② dry cloth
Sensors	C	Blower blush or dry cloth
Anti-Static Brush	C	Blower blush or dry cloth
Bushings	L	Launa oil when abnormal noise occurs
Stapler	R	Every 200K staples (estimated replacement period)

Mail Box

Item	WN	Remarks
Rollers	C	① damp cloth and ② dry cloth
Tray Paper Sensors	C	Blower blush or dry cloth

Duplex Unit

Item	WN	Remarks
Rollers	C	① damp cloth and ② dry cloth
Feed/exit sensors	C	Blower blush or dry cloth

Interchange Unit

Item	WN	Remarks
Paper Exit Sensor	C	Blower blush or dry cloth

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

3. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

⚠ CAUTION

Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before beginning any of the procedures in this section.

NOTE: This manual uses the following symbols.

☞ : See or Refer to

🔩 : Screws

🔌 : Connector

🔗 : Clip ring

Ⓢ : E-ring

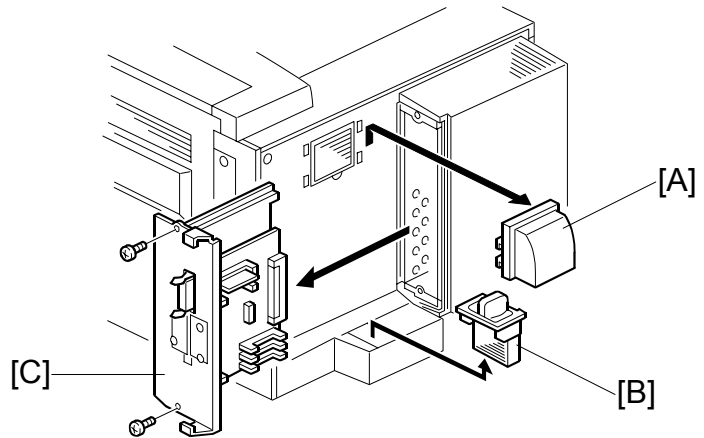
3.1 SPECIAL TOOLS

Part Number	Part Name
N8036701	Flash Memory Card - 4MB
G0219350	Loop-back connector - Parallel

3.2 EXTERIOR COVERS

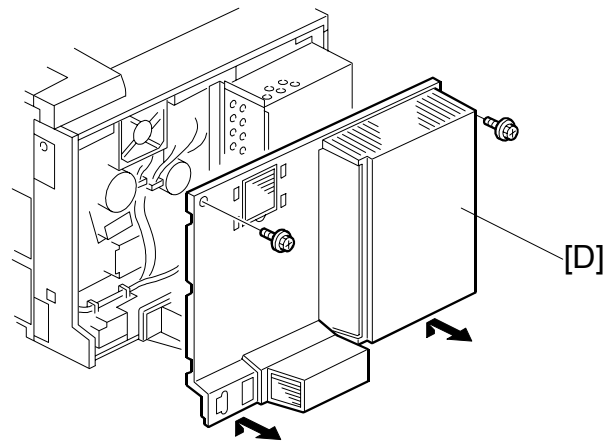
3.2.1 REAR COVER

1. Duct cover [A] (4 hooks)
2. Ozone filter [B]
3. Printer controller [C] (⚙ x 2)



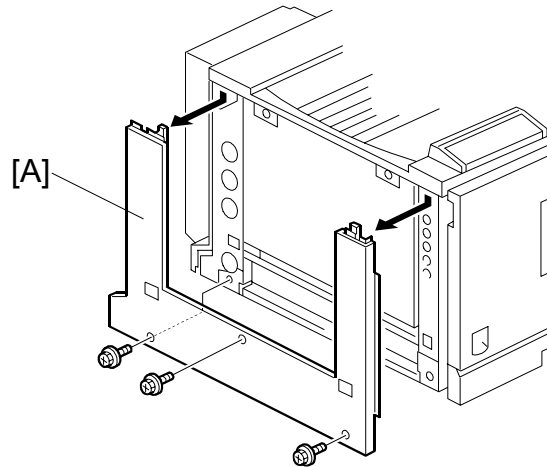
Replacement
Adjustment

4. Rear cover [D] (⚙ x 2)



3.2.2 LOWER LEFT COVER

1. Lower left cover [A] (⌘ x 3)

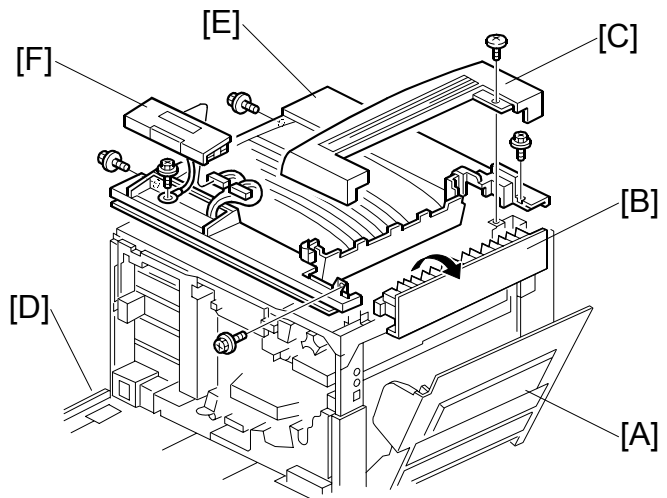


Replacement
Adjustment

3.2.3 UPPER COVER, OPERATION PANEL

1. Open the right cover [A].
2. Upper right cover [B]
3. Paper exit cover [C] (⌘ x 1)
4. Open the front cover [D].
5. Upper cover [E] (⌘ x 4)
6. Operation panel [F] (4 hooks, ⌘ x 2, ⌘ x 1)

NOTE: Insert a screwdriver between the upper cover and the main unit and unhook the panel.



3.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

3.3.1 PRINTER CONTROLLER

☛ 3.2.1

NOTE: Remove the NVRAM from the old controller board, and install it on the new one.

If the controller NVRAM is defective, reset the total counter to 0 after changing the NVRAM, if meter charge mode is enabled.

3.3.2 CONTROLLER BOX

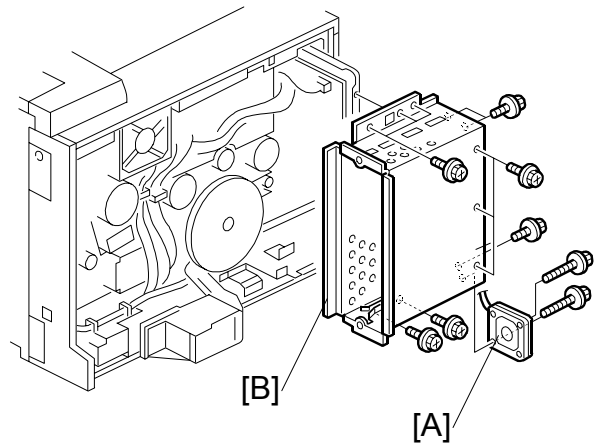
1. Rear cover (☛ 3.2.1)

2. Cooling fan [A] (☛ x 2)

NOTE: When reassembling, install the fan with the label facing the inside.

3. Controller box [B] (☛ x 11)

NOTE: 1) Do not remove the BCU board base with the controller box.
2) When putting back the controller box, take care not to pinch the cable from the I/O board.



Replacement
Adjustment

3.3.3 BCU BOARD

1. Controller box (☛ 3.3.2)

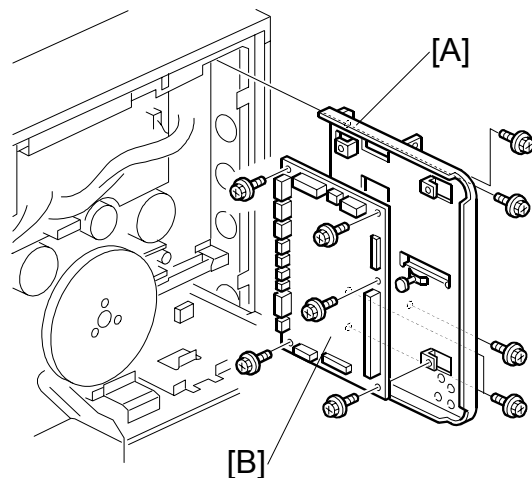
2. All ☛ (12)

3. 1 flat cable



4. BCU board base [A] (☛ x 5)

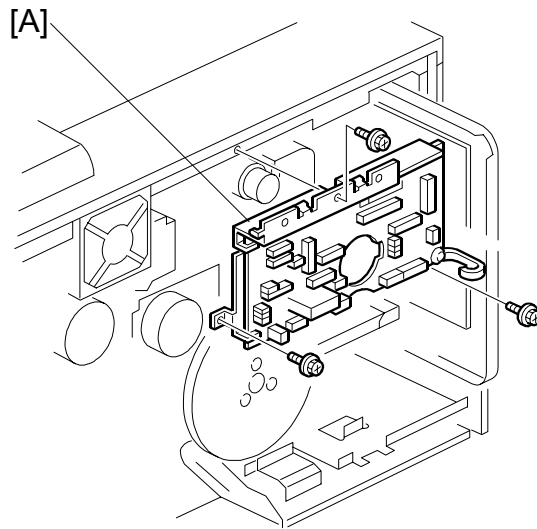
5. BCU board [B] (☛ x 5)

NOTE: Remove the NVRAM from the old BCU board, and install it on the new one.









3.3.4 I/O BOARD

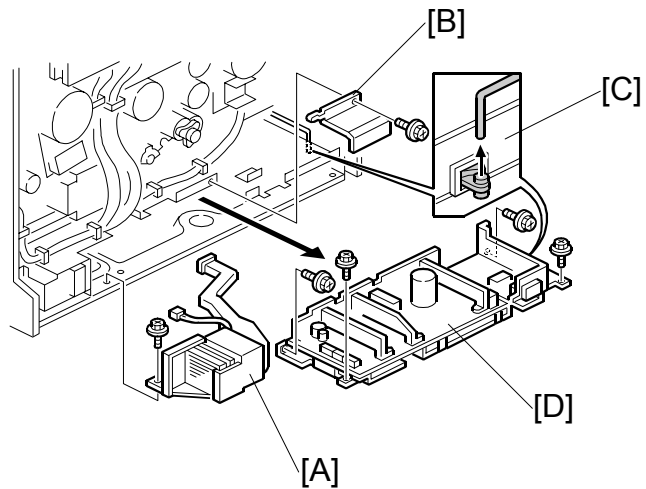
1. Controller box (☛ 3.3.2)
2. All  (33)
3. I/O board [A] ( x 4)



Replacement
Adjustment

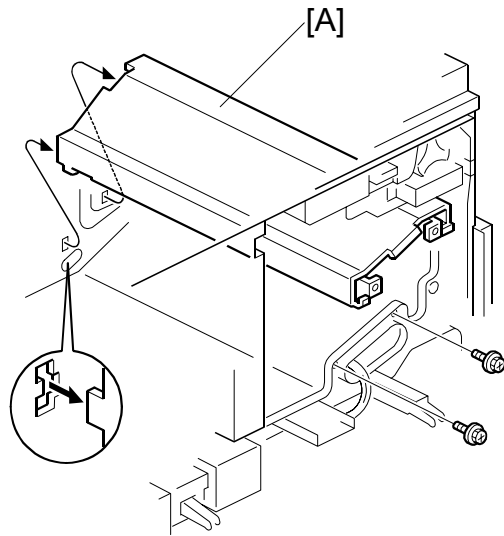
3.3.5 PSU

1. Controller box (☛ 3.3.2)
2. Flywheel ( x 3) (☛ 3.4.1)
3. Duct [A] ( x 1,  x 1)
NOTE: When removing and reassembling the fan, install it with the label facing the outside.
4. PSU protector [B] ( x 1)
5. Unlink the main switch [C].
6. PSU base ( x 8,  x 4)
NOTE: 1) Remove the PSU [D] with the PSU base.
 2) When reassembling, check that the main switch is linked to the PSU.



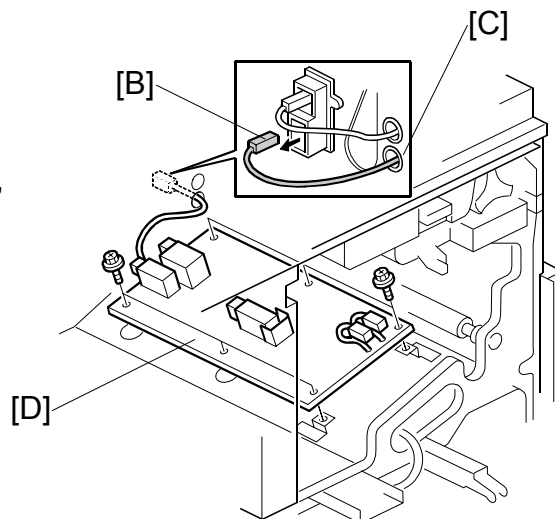
3.3.6 HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY BOARD

1. Photoconductor unit (☞ 3.7)
2. Right inner cover (☞ 3.10.2)
3. Photoconductor unit rail [A] (⚙ x 2)



Replacement
Adjustment

4. ⚙ [B] x 1
5. Bushing [C] x 1
6. High voltage supply board [D] (⚙ x 17,
⚙ x 6)



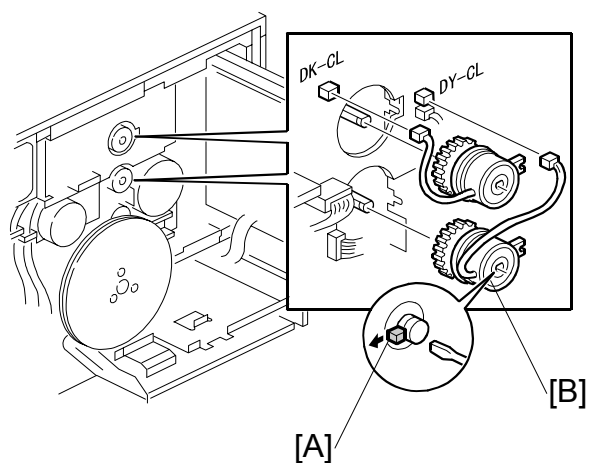
3.4 DRIVE UNITS

3.4.1 DEVELOPMENT CLUTCHES

1. Controller box (☛ 3.3.2)

K/Y Development Units

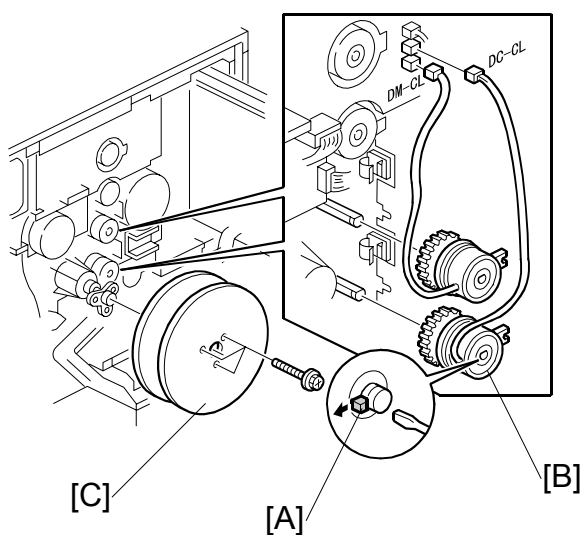
1. Unhook the lock [A] and pull out the clutch [B] (☛ x 1).




Replacement
Adjustment

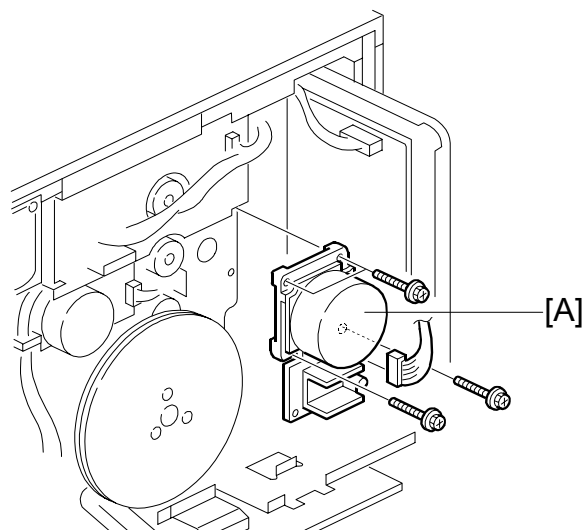
C/M Development Units

1. Flywheel [A] (☛ x 3)
2. Unhook the lock [B] and pull out the clutch [C] (☛ x 1).





3.4.2 DEVELOPMENT MOTOR

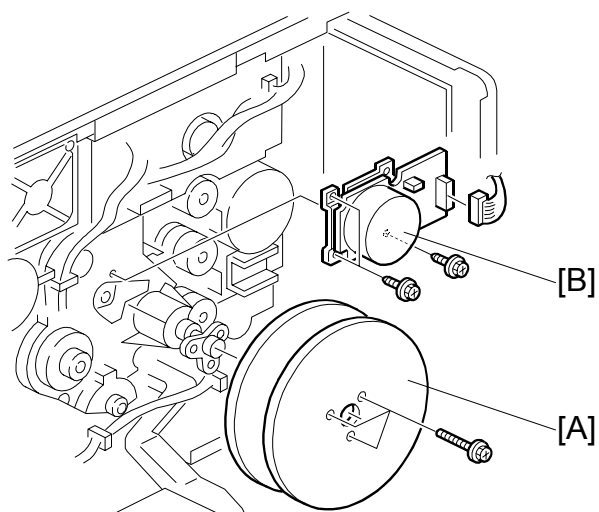
1. Controller box (☛ 3.3.2)
2. Development motor [A] (☛ x 1,  x 3)



Replacement
Adjustment

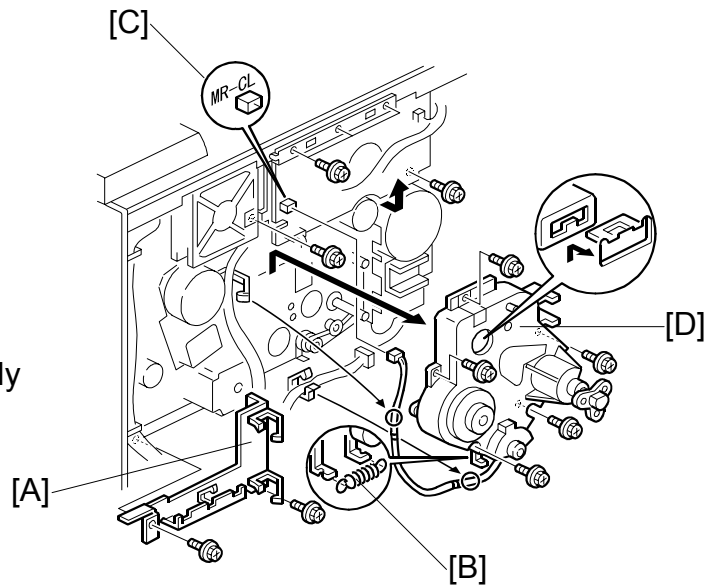
3.4.3 MAIN MOTOR

1. Controller box (☛ 3.3.2)
2. Flywheel [A] ( x 3)
3. Main motor [B] (☛ x 1,  x 3)



3.4.4 PCU GEAR BOX AND OPC BELT CLEANING CLUTCH

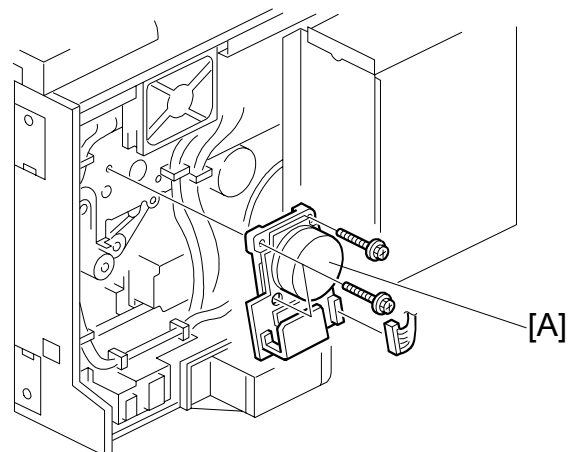
1. I/O board (☛ 3.3.4)
2. Main motor (☛ 3.4.3)
3. C/M development unit clutch (☛ 3.4.1)
4. Bracket [A] (🔩 x 2)
5. Tension spring [B]
6. 📏 x 1 [C]
7. Gear box and clutch assembly [D] (🔩 x 5)



Replacement
Adjustment

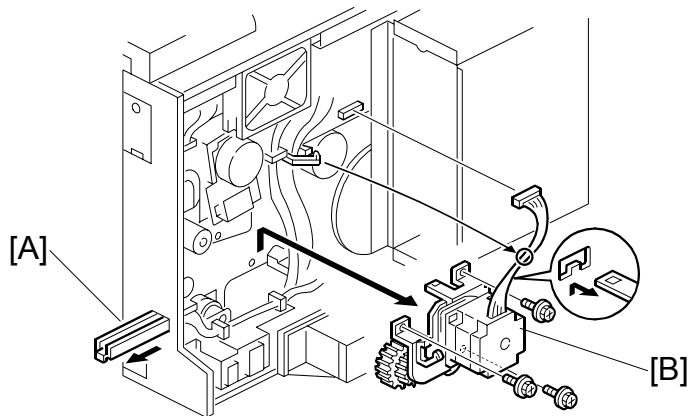
3.4.5 FUSING UNIT MOTOR

1. Rear cover (☛ 3.2.1)
2. Fusing unit motor (📏 x 1, 🔩 x 3) [A]



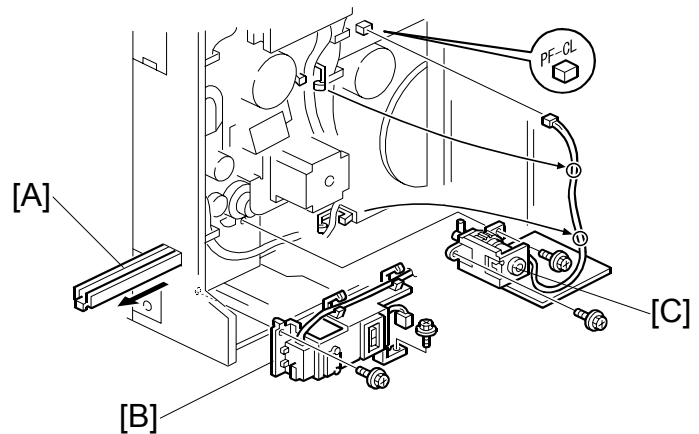
3.4.6 PAPER FEED MOTOR

1. Rear cover (☛ 3.2.1)
2. Pull out the handle [A].
3. Paper feed motor [B] (☛ x 1,
⚙ x 3)



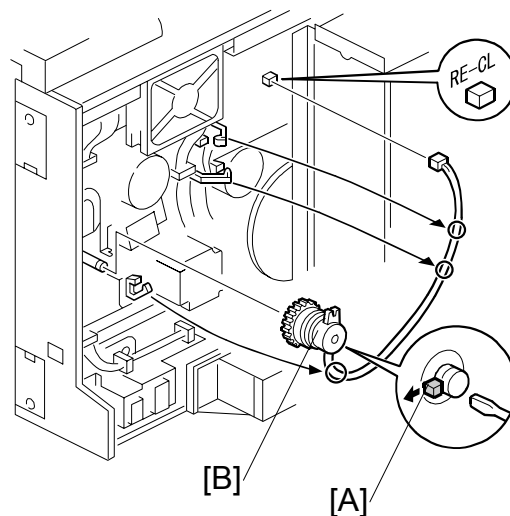
3.4.7 PAPER FEED CLUTCH

1. Rear cover (☛ 3.2.1)
2. Pull out the handle [A].
3. Connector bracket [B] (☛ x 6,
⚙ x 2)
4. Paper feed clutch [C] (☛ x 1,
⚙ x 2)



3.4.8 REGISTRATION CLUTCH

1. Rear cover (☛ 3.2.1)
2. Unhook the lock [A] and pull the clutch out [B] (☛ x 1).

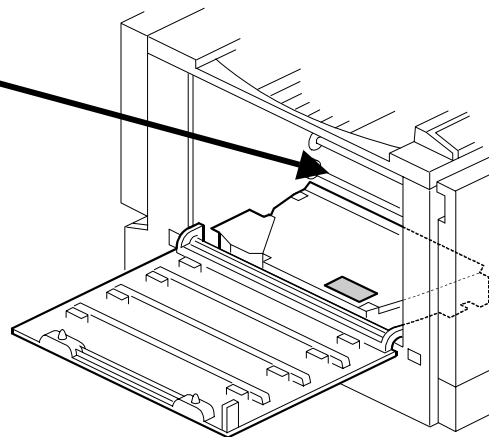


3.5 LASER OPTICS SECTION

WARNING

Turn off the main switch and unplug the machine before beginning any of the procedures in this section. Laser beams can cause serious eye injury.

3.5.1 CAUTION DECAL LOCATION



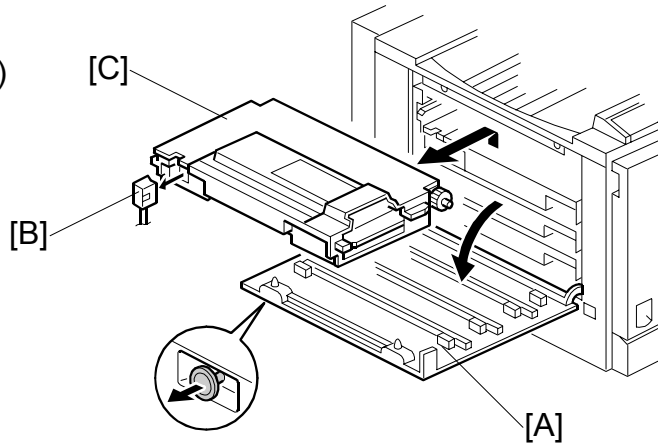
Replacement
Adjustment

DANGER

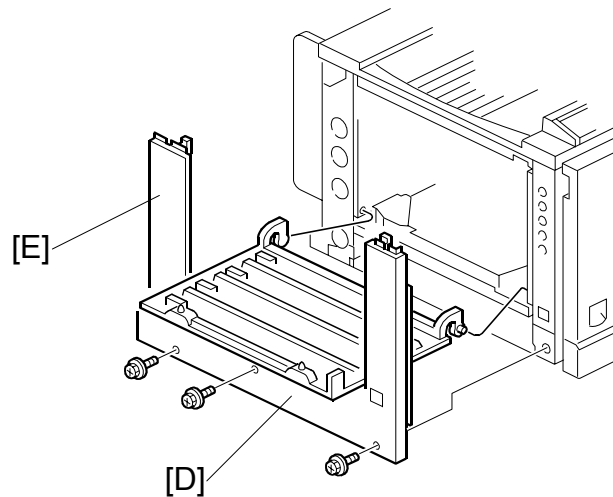
Turn off the main switch and disconnect the power plug from the power outlet before beginning any disassembly or adjustment of the laser unit. This printer uses a class-1 laser beam with a wavelength of 650 nm and an output of 7 mW. The laser can cause serious eye injury.

3.5.2 LASER OPTICS HOUSING UNIT

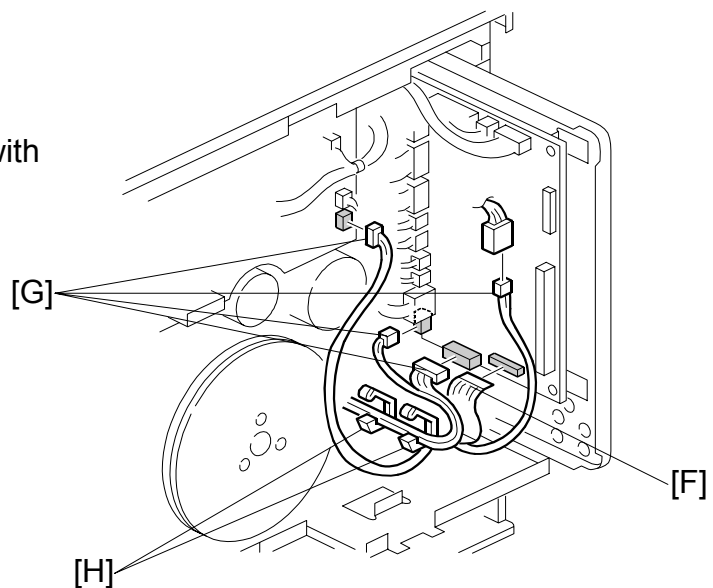
1. Open the left cover [A].
2. ID chip connectors [B] (⏏ x 4)
3. Development units [C] x 4



4. Rear cover (☛ 3.2.1)
5. Left cover [D]
6. Lower left cover [E] (⏏ x 3)



7. Controller box (☛ 3.3.2)
8. Flat cable [F]
NOTE: When reassembling,
connect the flat cable with
the blue side up.
9. ⏏ x 4 [G]
10. Harness clamps [H]

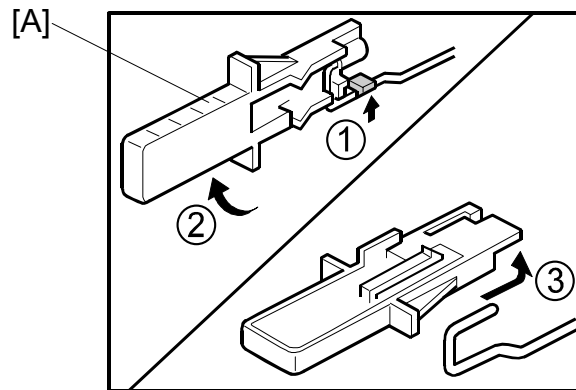


Replacement
Adjustment

11. Open the front cover.

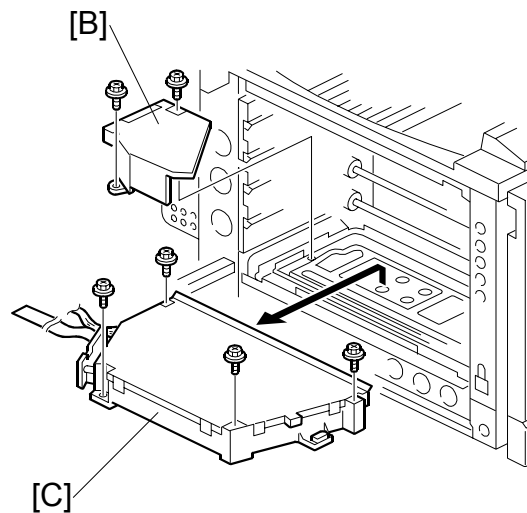
12. Remove the dust shield glass cleaner lever [A] from the dust shield glass cleaner.

NOTE: The dust shield glass cleaner lever is the blue lever at the right side of the main switch.



13. LD cover [B] (⌀ x 2)

14. Laser optics housing unit [C] (⌀ x 4)

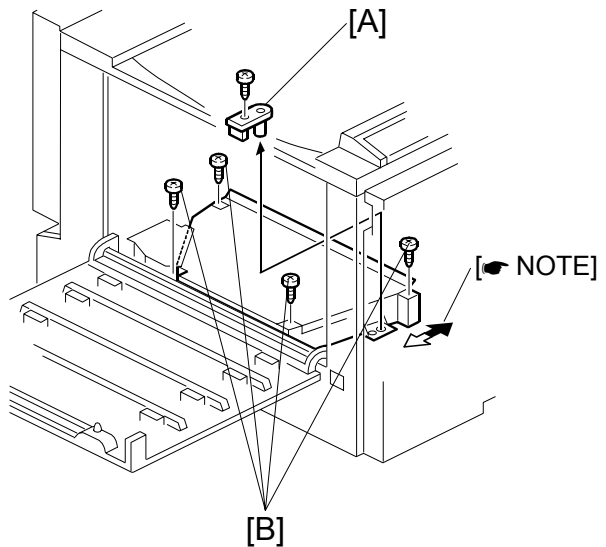


Replacement
Adjustment

Adjusting for Image Skew

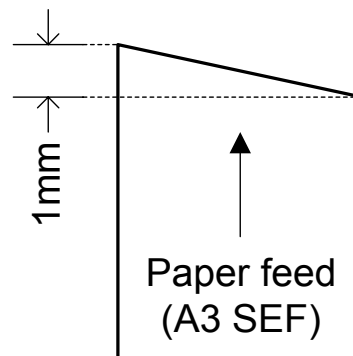
1. Positioning pin [A] (⌘ x 1)
2. Loosen ⌘ (x 4) [B].
3. Adjust the position of the laser optics housing unit [➡ NOTE].
4. Fasten ⌘ (x 4) [B].

NOTE: After changing the position of the laser optics housing unit, do not reinstall the positioning pin. Keep the pin in a safe place.



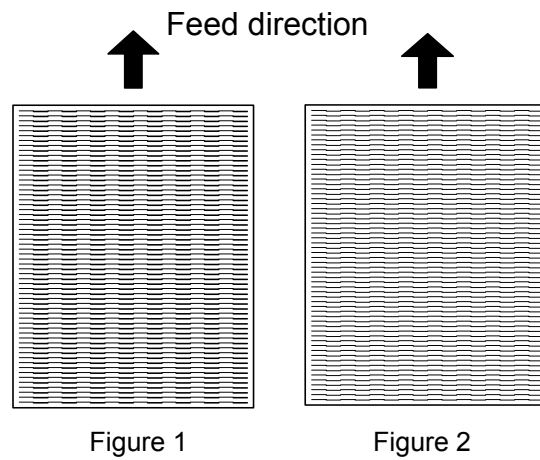
Replacement
Adjustment

NOTE: When the image skews as shown, move the unit 1 mm in the direction of the black arrow as shown in the **upper** diagram.

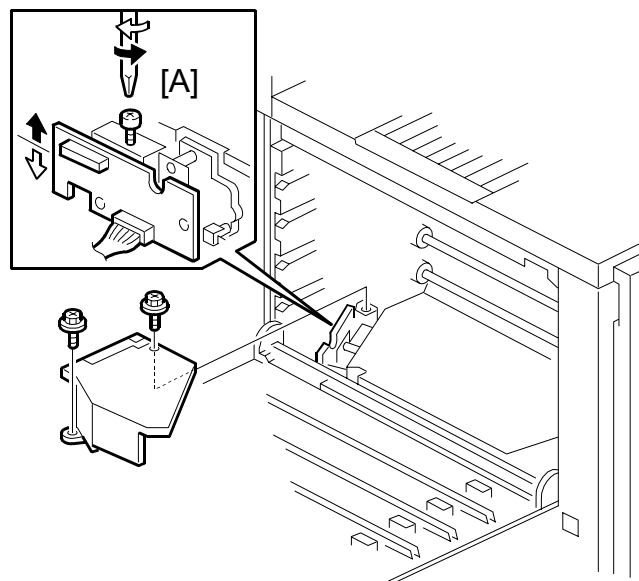


Laser Beam Pitch Adjustment

1. Select test pattern 15 with SP5-955-1 (Test Pattern – Pattern).
2. Check if vertical black stripes can be seen.
 - a) If stripes cannot be seen (Figure 2), laser beam pitch adjustment is not required.
 - b) If stripes can be seen (Figure 1), laser beam pitch adjustment is required. Go on to the next step.


 Replacement
Adjustment

3. To adjust the laser beam pitch, tighten or loosen the screw [A] on the LD unit holder.
4. Set SP 2-917 (Test Pattern) to 'On'. Then send a one-page job to the printer, or print an SMC list (SP 5-990-6, SP Print mode – Non default).
5. Repeat steps 2 through 4 until the black stripes disappear (Figure 2).

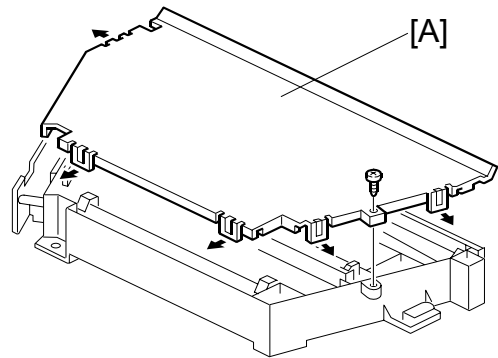


3.5.3 POLYGONAL MIRROR MOTOR AND LSD

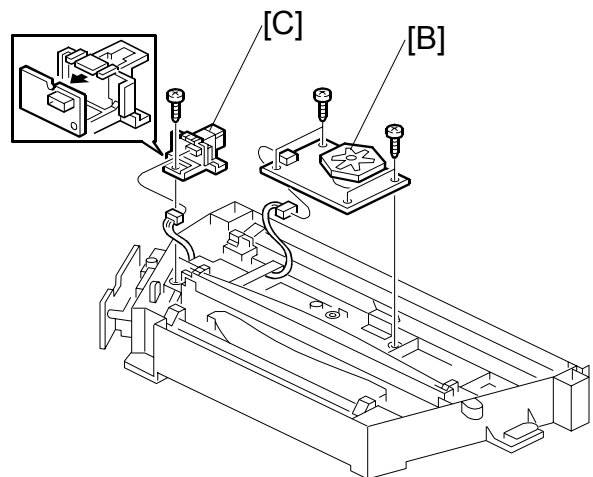
⚠ WARNING

Do not touch any edges of the polygon mirror, spring, or bracket. These edges can cause serious injury.

1. Development units, LD cover (☞ 3.5.2)
2. Cover [A] (🔩 x 1)
NOTE: Before removing the cover, clean the cover to prevent toner from entering into the unit.



3. Polygonal mirror motor [B]
 (🔩 x 1, 🛠 x 4)
NOTE: Do not touch the surface of the polygonal motor.
4. Synch. detection board (LSD) [C]
 (🔩 x 1, 🛠 x 1)



Replacement
Adjustment

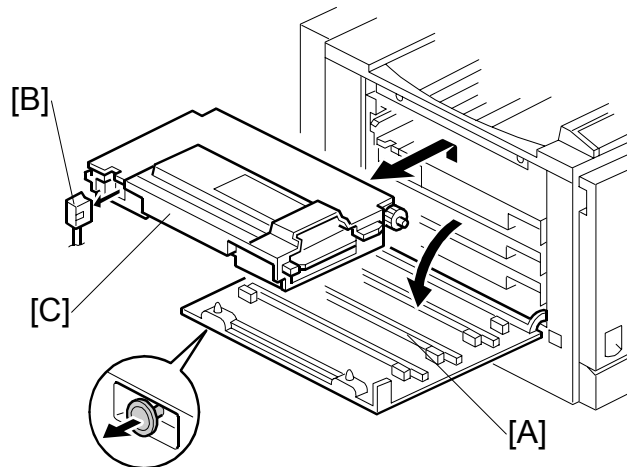
3.6 DEVELOPMENT UNIT

⚠ CAUTION

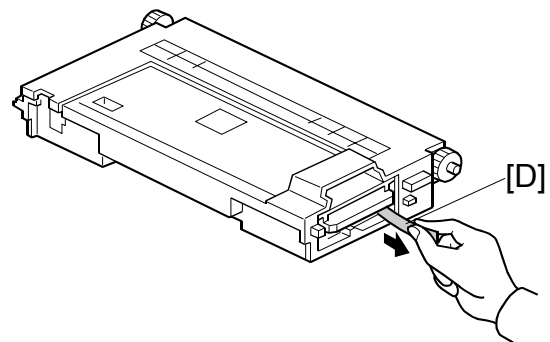
Do not touch the development unit sleeves or ID chip terminals.

1. Open the left cover [A].
2. ID chip connector [B]
3. Lift up the development unit [C] slightly, and pull it out of the machine.

NOTE: Remove the units in the order K, Y, C, M. For example, before removing the M unit, remove the K, Y, and C units first.



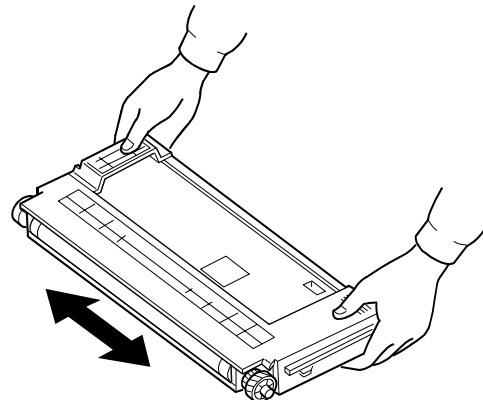
4. Peel off the toner cartridge seal [D].
5. Reinstall the toner cartridge in the development unit.



6. Keep the development unit level and shake the development unit about 10 times from side to side.

NOTE:

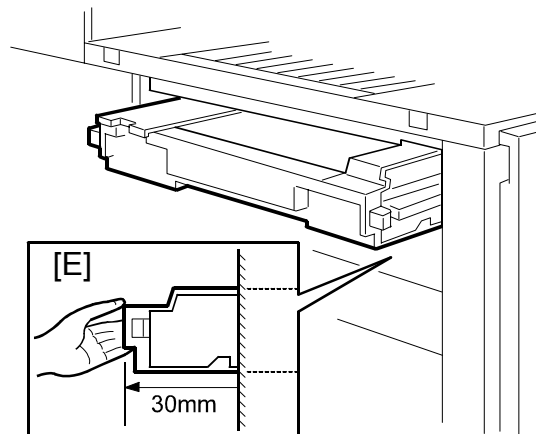
- 1) Do not touch the development roller or the development roller gear.
- 2) Use caution not to drop the cartridge or to damage it.
- 3) If the cartridge has not been shaken well, the machine takes a longer time to initialize the development unit, or an error message or SC350 is displayed. When either of them is displayed, turn the main switch off and on.



Replacement
Adjustment

7. Install the development unit in the machine.
8. After installing the development unit, print out the "development unit check" sheet to confirm the correct installation of the development unit (Menu — Maintenance — Devp.UnitCheck).

NOTE: A white line or band may appear on one end of the paper if a development is incorrectly installed. To correct this, pull out the development unit partially (about 30 mm) [E] and slowly reinstall it.

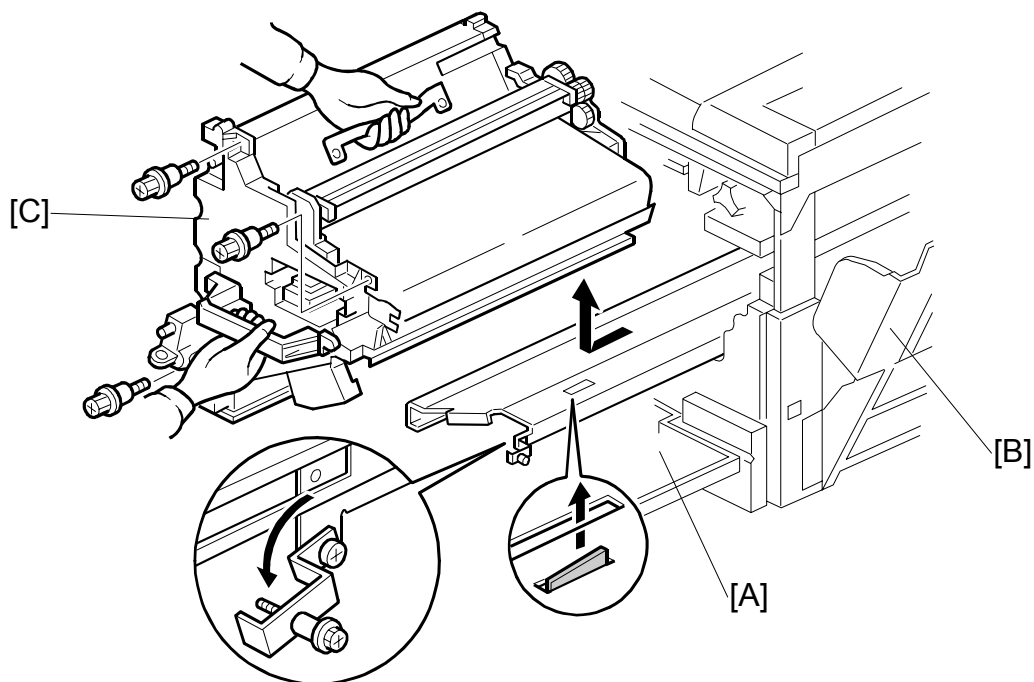



Replacement
Adjustment

3.7 PHOTOCONDUCTOR UNIT (PCU)

3.7.1 MAIN UNIT

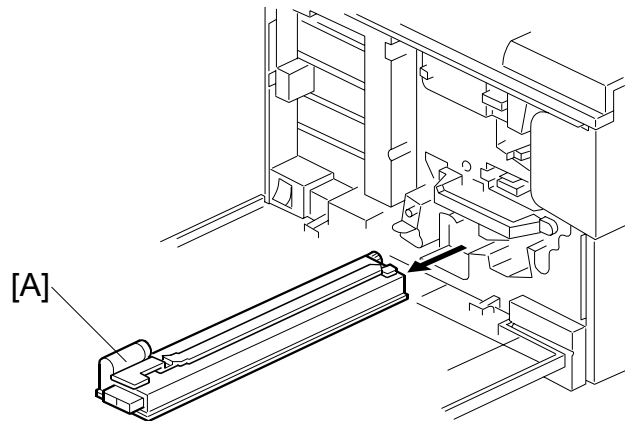
NOTE: 1) Before replacing any of the parts or consumables in this section, cover the floor with cloth or some sheets of paper.
 2) Never tilt the unit. The toner may come out of the unit.
 3) When handling the unit, grasp the brown (front) and green (top) grips. Never touch the OPC (left) or transfer (right) belts.
 4) After removing the photoconductor unit, cover it with a light-proof sheet. Keep it in a dark place.



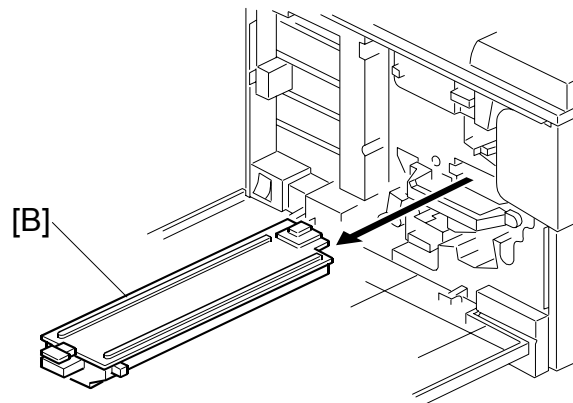
1. Open the front cover [A].
2. Open the right cover [B].
3.  x 4
4. Pull the OPC unit [C] out of the machine.
5. Grasp the brown and green grips.
6. Lift the unit and remove it.

3.7.2 WASTE TONER BOTTLES

1. O/B waste toner bottle [A]




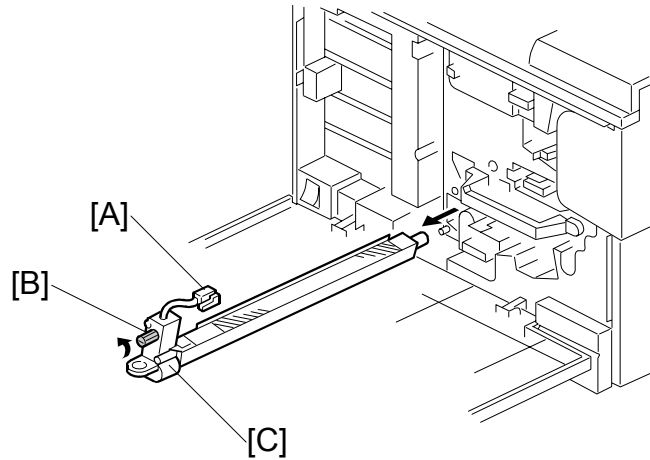
2. T/B waste toner bottle [B]




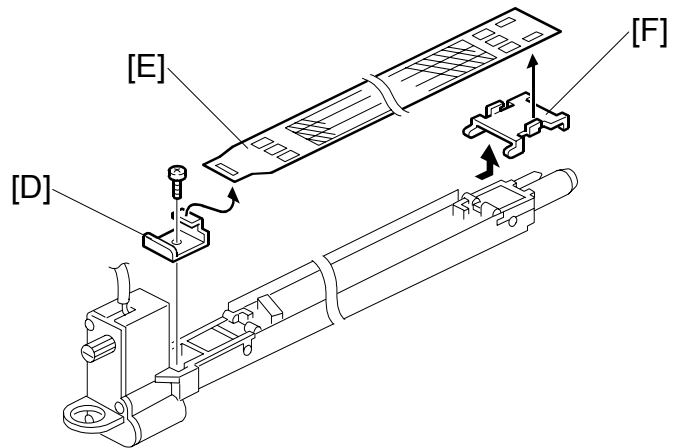
Replacement
Adjustment

3.7.3 CHARGE CORONA WIRE

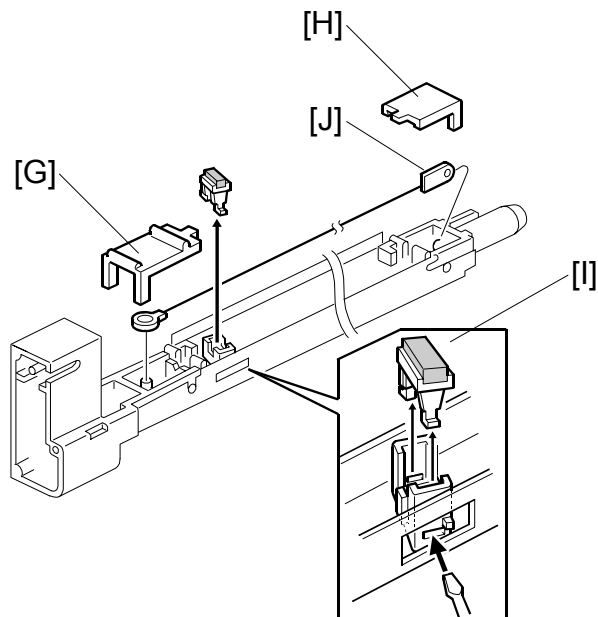
1. Modular cable [A]
2. Loosen  (x 1) [B]
3. Charge corona unit [C]



4. Front bracket ( x 1) [D]
5. Grid [E]
6. Rear bracket [F]



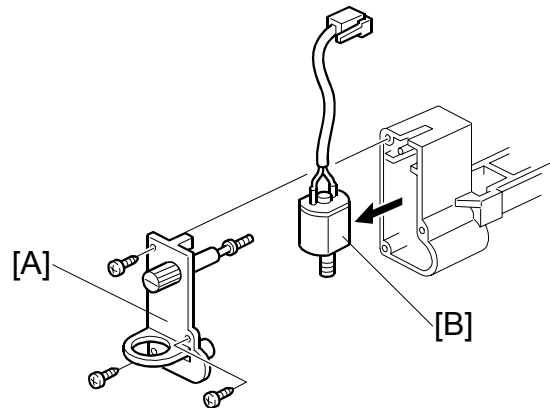
7. Front wire cover [G]
8. Rear wire cover [H]
9. Wire cleaner [I]
10. Unhook the corona wire [J].



Replacement
Adjustment

3.7.4 CHARGE CORONA WIRE CLEANER MOTOR

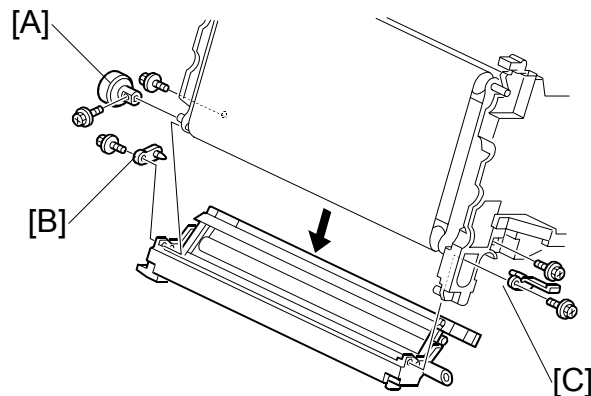
1. Charge corona unit (☛ 3.7.3)
2. Front motor cover [A] (⚙ x 3)
3. Motor [B]



3.7.5 OPC BELT CLEANING UNIT

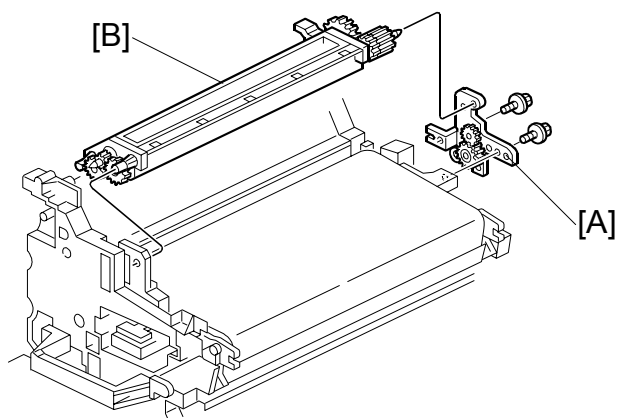
1. Photoconductor unit (☛ 3.7.1)
2. Charge corona unit (☛ 3.7.3)
3. Drive gear [A] (⚙ x 1)
4. Rear brace [B] (⚙ x 1)
5. Front brace [C] (⚙ x 1)
6. OPC belt cleaning unit [D] (⚙ x 2)

NOTE: Hold up the photoconductor unit while removing the OPC belt cleaning unit.



3.7.6 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT CLEANING UNIT

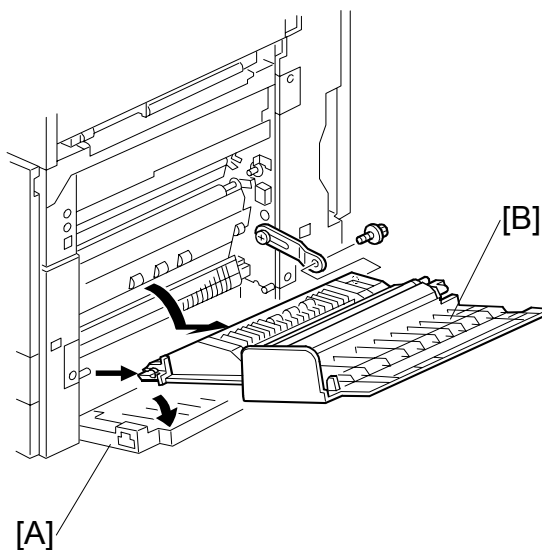
1. Photoconductor unit (☛ 3.7.1)
2. Bracket [A] (⚙ x 2)
3. Image transfer belt cleaning unit [B]



3.8 PAPER TRANSFER UNIT

3.8.1 VERTICAL TRANSPORT UNIT

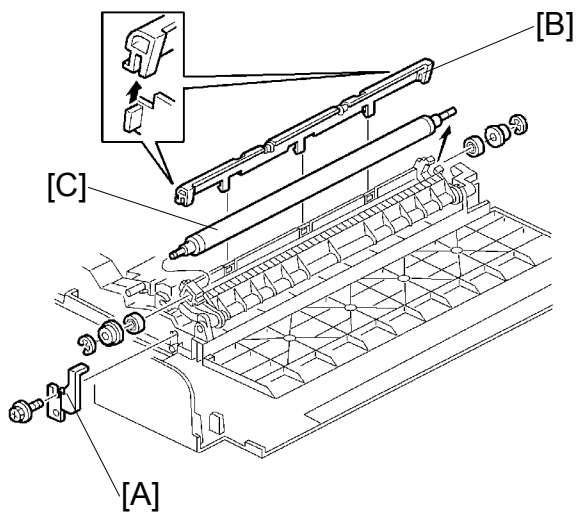
1. Open the right lower cover [A].
2. Right cover [B] (⌘ x 1)



Replacement
Adjustment

⇒ 3.8.2 TRANSFER ROLLER

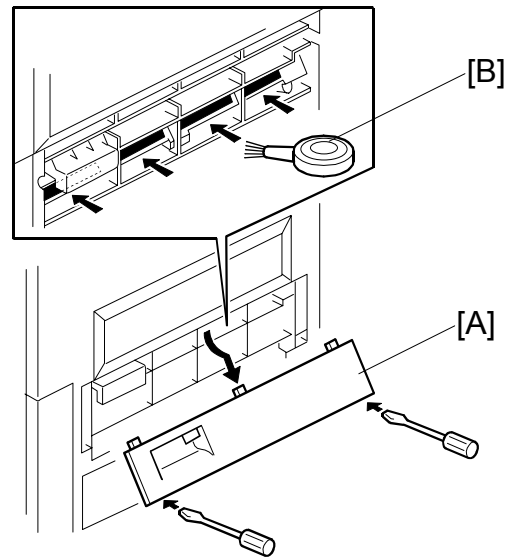
1. Brace [A] (⌘ x 1)
 2. Guide [B]
 3. Transfer roller [C]
(⌘ x 2, Bushing x 2, Bearing x 2)
- NOTE:** To remove the screws, turn the roller unit on its pivot.



Cleaning the Paper Dust Mylar

–Quick Method–

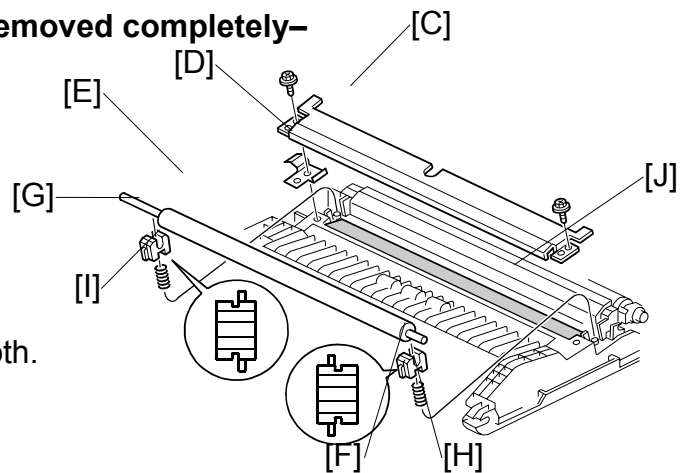
1. Cover [A]
2. Sweep away paper dust with a blower brush [B].



Replacement
Adjustment

–When the paper dust has to be removed completely–

1. Bracket [C] (⌀ x 2)
2. Plate spring [D]
3. Metal roller [E]
4. Bearing [F][G]
5. Spring [H][I]
6. Clean the mylar [J] with a dry cloth.



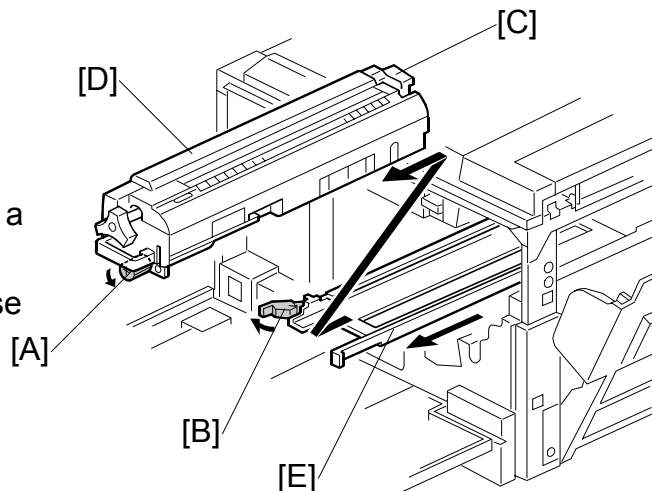
3.9 FUSING/PAPER EXIT

⚠ CAUTION

Turn off the main switch and wait until the fusing unit cools down before beginning any of the procedures in this section. The fusing unit can cause serious burns.

3.9.1 FUSING UNIT

1. Loosen the knob screw [A].
2. Pull the unit out of the machine.
3. Unhook the bottom stopper [B].
4. Grasp the rear end (marked with a green label) [C].
5. Release the unit [D] from the base plate [E].

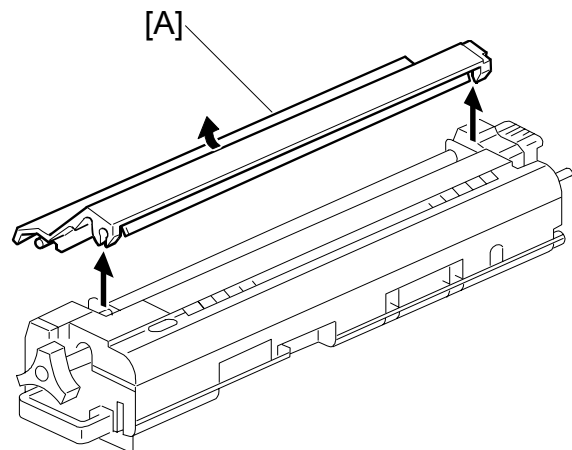


Replacement
Adjustment

3.9.2 OIL SUPPLY UNIT

NOTE: When removing either of the lamps (☛ 3.9.3), remove the knob screw (☛ 3.9.1) before removing the oil supply unit.

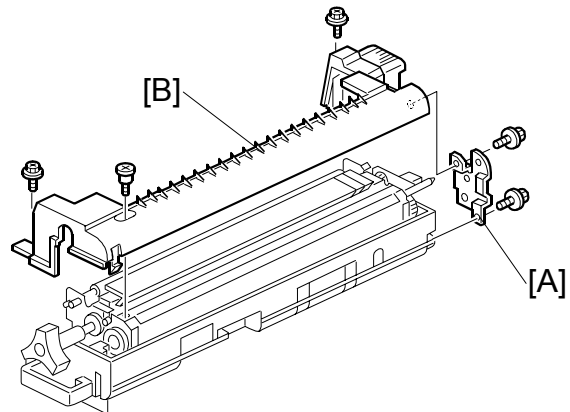
1. Fusing unit (☛ 3.9.1)
2. Put the fusing unit on a level place.
3. Oil supply unit [A]



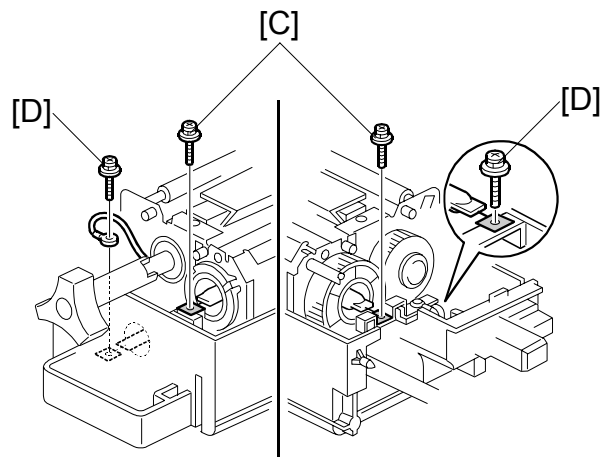
NOTE: 1) Do not touch the oiling felt.
2) When reassembling, push the top of the oil supply unit so that the front and rear hinges are correctly set.

3.9.3 LAMPS

1. Oil supply unit (☞ 0)
2. Gear bracket [A] (⚙ x 2)
3. Upper cover [B] (⚙ x 2, shoulder screw x 1)

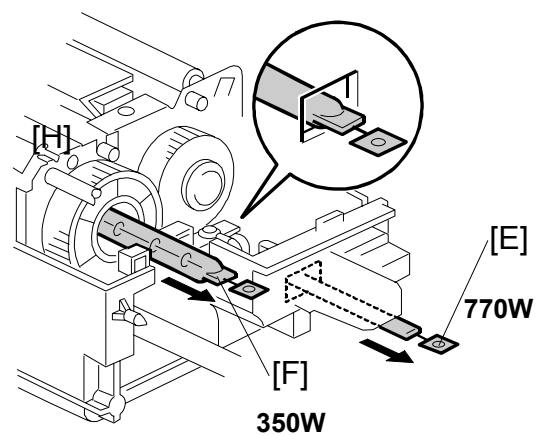


4. Terminals [C], [D] (⚙ x 5)
NOTE: [C]: Pressure roller lamp terminals
[D]: Heating roller lamp terminals



5. Pull out the lamp (350 W) [E].
6. Pull out the lamp (770 W) [F].

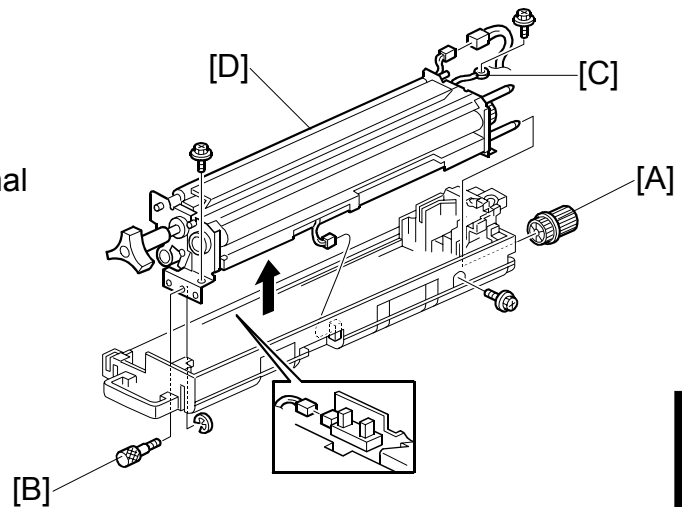
NOTE: “350 W” and “770 W” are etched on the respective terminals.



Replacement
Adjustment

3.9.4 FUSING INNER UNIT

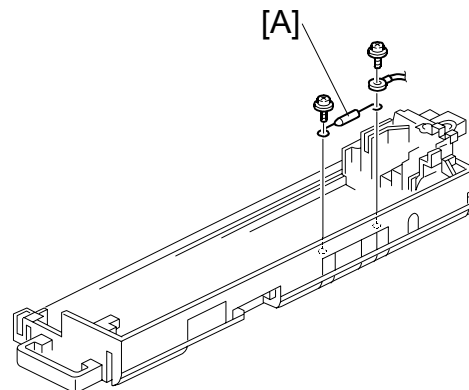
1. Lamps (☛ 3.9.3)
2. Drive gear [A]
3. Knob screw [B] (☞ x 1)
4. Heating roller lamp harness terminal [C] (☛ x 1)
5. Fusing inner unit [D] (☛ x 2, ☞ x 3)



Replacement
Adjustment

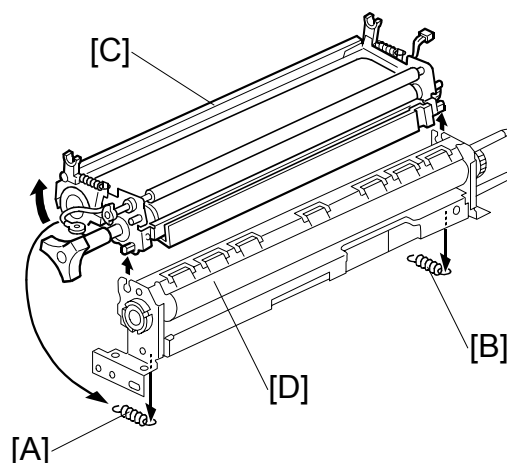
3.9.5 PRESSURE ROLLER THERMOFUSE

1. Fusing inner unit (☛ 3.9.4)
2. Pressure roller thermofuse [A] (☛ x 2)



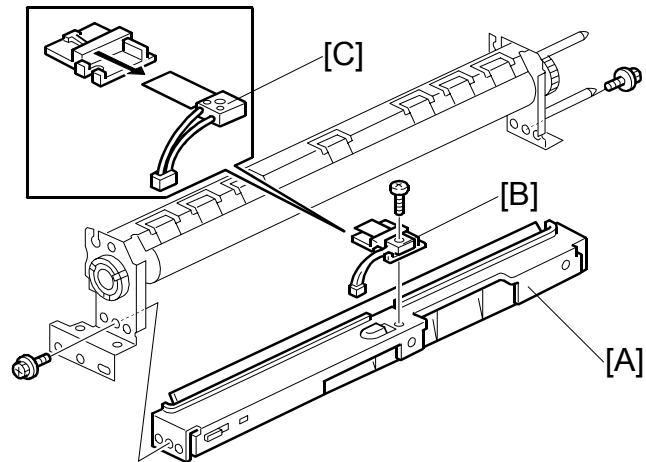
3.9.6 FUSING BELT UNIT AND PRESSURE ROLLER UNIT

1. Fusing inner unit (☛ 3.9.4)
2. Springs [A] [B]
3. Separate the fusing belt unit [C] and pressure roller unit [D].



3.9.7 PRESSURE ROLLER THERMISTOR

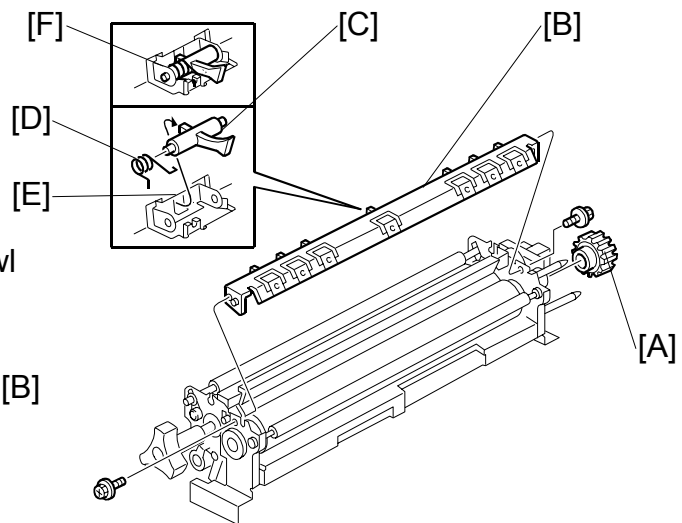
1. Pressure roller unit (☞ 3.9.6)
2. Pressure roller lower stay [A] (⚙ x 2)
3. Pressure roller thermistor holder [B] (⚙ x 1)
4. Pressure roller thermistor [C]



Replacement
Adjustment

3.9.8 HOT ROLLER STRIPPERS

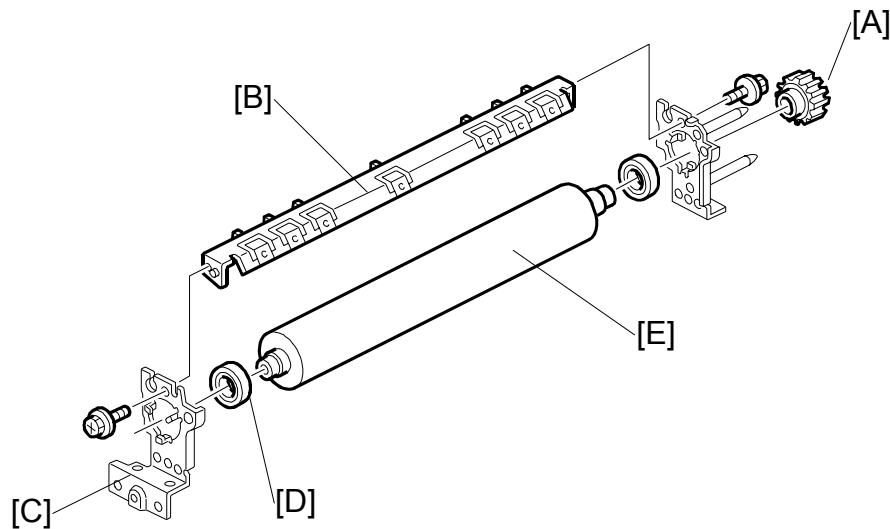
1. Oil supply unit (☞ 3.9.2)
2. Fusing lamps (☞ 3.9.3)
3. Fusing inner unit (☞ 3.9.4)
4. Gear [A]
NOTE: Remove the gear before removing the stripper pawl assembly; otherwise, the gear may be damaged.
5. Hot roller stripper pawl assembly [B] (Spring x 1, ⚙ x 2)
6. Hot roller stripper pawl [C]



Reassembling

1. Put the spring [D] on the pawl.
2. Put the left end of the pawl in the square opening [E].
3. Put the front and rear ends of the pawl in the holder [F].
4. Confirm that the pawl moves correctly.

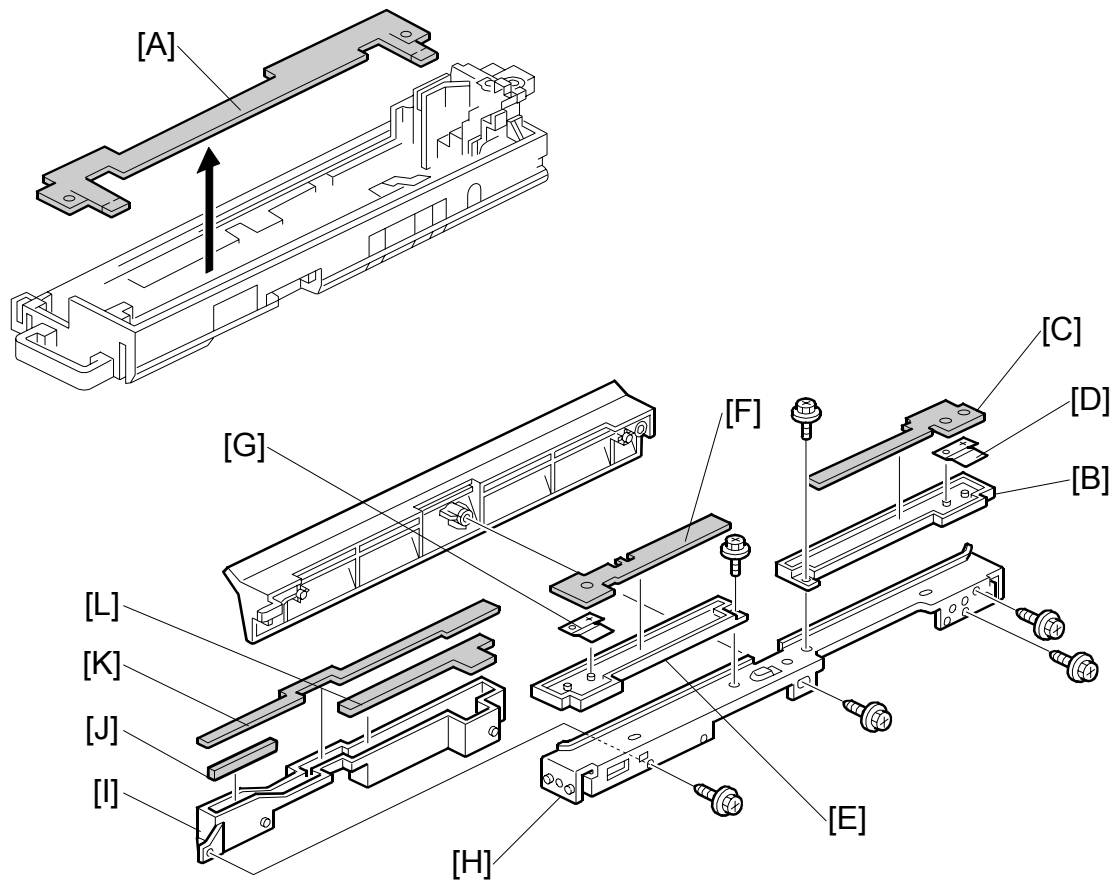
3.9.9 PRESSURE ROLLER



Replacement
Adjustment

1. Pressure roller unit (☛ 3.9.6)
2. Gear [A]
3. Hot roller stripper assembly [B] (☛ x 2)
4. Front bracket [C] (☛ x 1)
5. Bearing [D]
6. Pressure roller [E]

3.9.10 OIL ABSORBERS



Replacement
Adjustment

1. Fusing inner unit (☛ 3.9.4)
2. Absorber 1 [A]
3. Pressure roller unit (☛ 3.9.6)
4. Absorber holder [B] (⚙ x 1)
5. Absorber 2 [C]
6. Spring [D]
7. Absorber holder [E] (⚙ x 1)
8. Absorber 3 [F]
9. Spring [G]
10. Base bracket [H] (⚙ x 2)
11. Absorber holder [I] (⚙ x 1)
12. Absorber 4 [J]
13. Absorber 5 [K]
14. Absorber 6 [L]

3.9.11 PAPER EXIT UNIT AND PAPER EXIT/OVERFLOW SENSOR

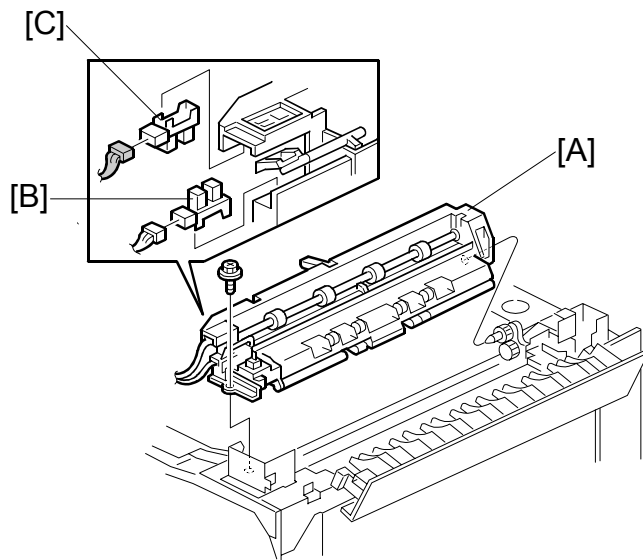
⚠ CAUTION

Turn off the main switch and wait until the paper exit unit cools down before beginning any of the procedures in this section. The paper exit unit can cause serious burns.

1. Paper exit cover (☛ 3.2.3)
2. Paper exit unit [A] (☛ x 3,
⚙ x 1)

NOTE: Remove 2 connectors before removing the unit. To remove the last connector, remove the unit and turn it. The connector is on the bottom side.

3. Paper exit sensor [B]
4. Paper overflow sensor [C]

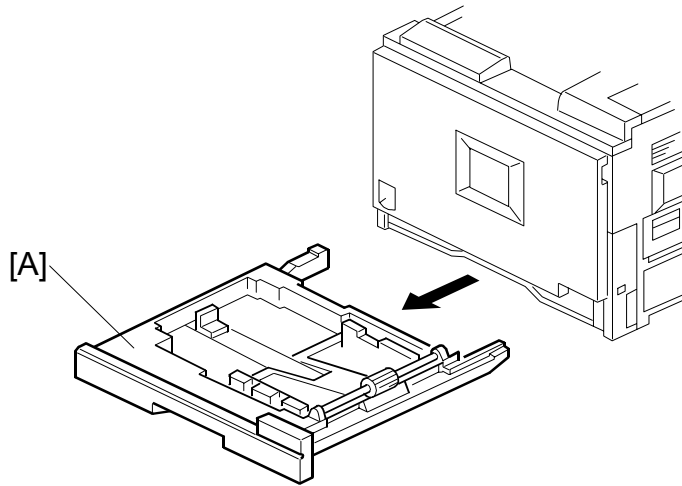


Replacement
Adjustment


3.10 PAPER FEED AND TRANSPORT

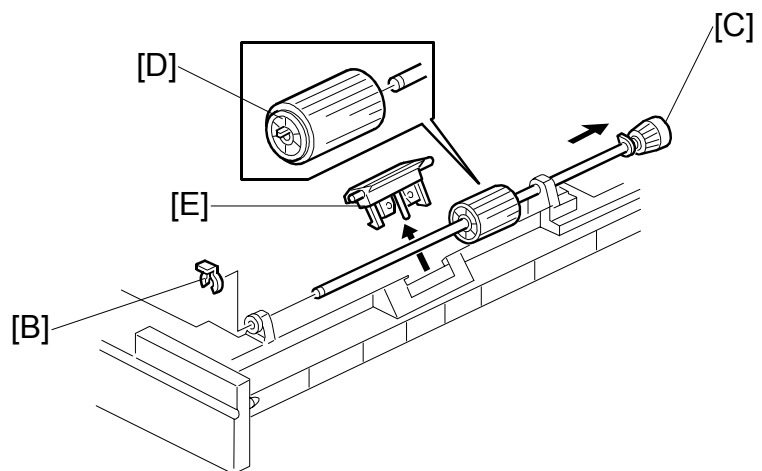
3.10.1 FEED ROLLER AND FRICTION PAD

1. Paper tray [A]



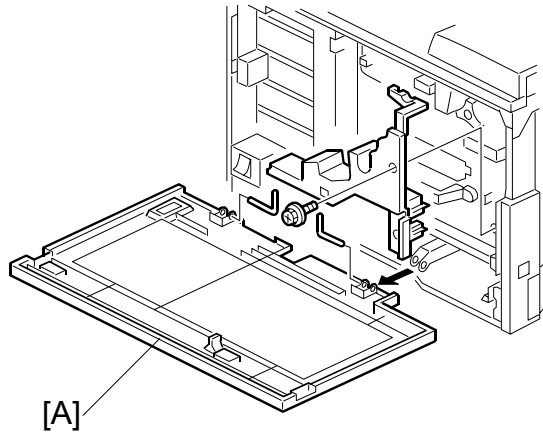
Replacement
Adjustment

2.  x 1 [B]
3. Slide the shaft [C].
4. Feed roller [D] (1 hook)
5. Friction pad [E]

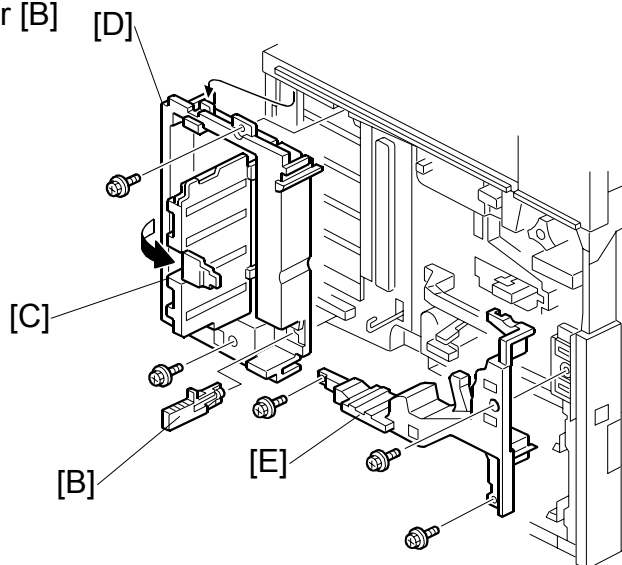


3.10.2 REGISTRATION SENSOR

1. Front cover [A] (L-shaped-pin x 2)
2. Rear cover (☛ 3.2.1)
3. Upper cover (☛ 3.2.3)
4. Lower left cover (☛ 3.5.2)



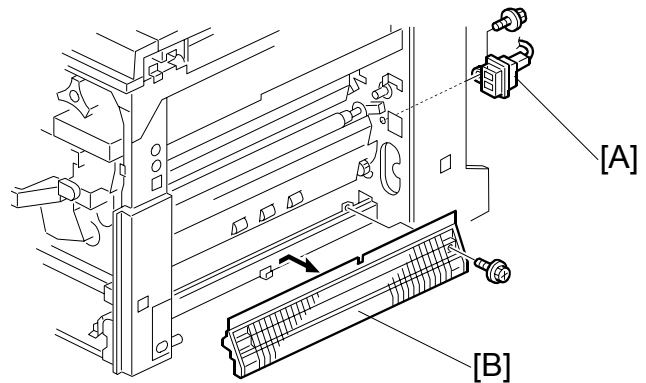
5. Dust shield glass cleaning lever [B] (☛ 3.5.2)
6. Charge corona unit (☛ 3.7.3)
7. Right cover (☛ 3.8.1)
8. Left inner cover door [C]
9. Left inner cover [D] (⚙ x 2)
10. Right inner cover [E] (⚙ x 3)



11. Terminal [A] (⚙ x 1)

NOTE: You have to remove the terminal to lift the transport stay (➡ step 14).

12. Transport guide [B] (⚙ x 1)

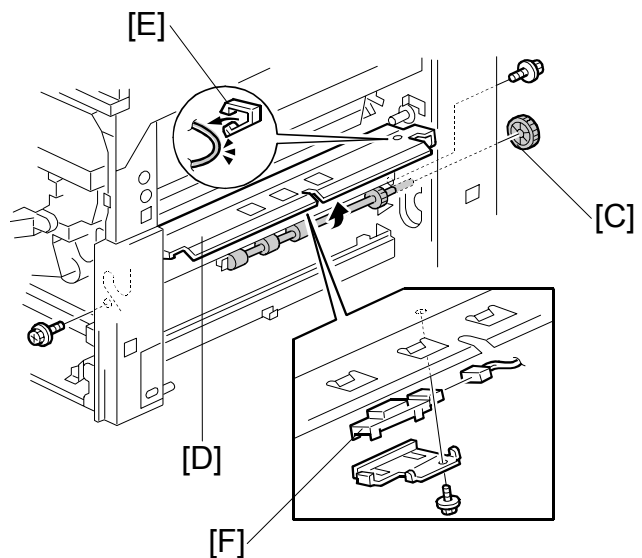


13. Drive gear [C] (1 hook)

14. Lift the transport stay [D] (⚙ x 2) and release the wire [E].

NOTE: You can see the wire clip from the rear of the machine.

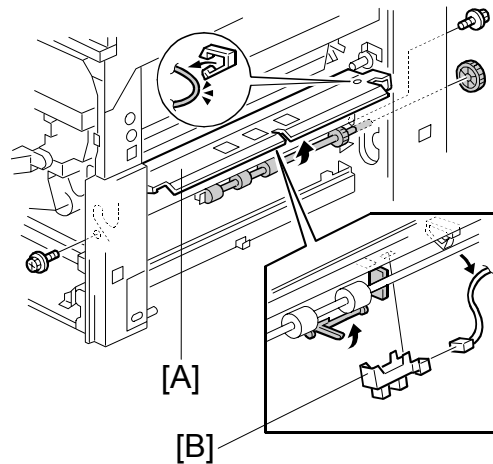
15. Registration sensor [F] (⚙ x 1, ⚙ x 1)



Replacement
Adjustment

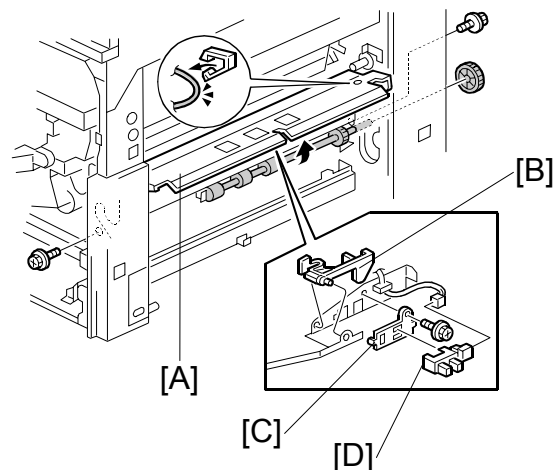
3.10.3 PAPER FEED SENSOR

1. Lift the transport stay [A] (☛ 3.10.2)
2. Paper feed sensor [B] (☛ x 1)
NOTE: Unhook the rear two pawls first, move the feeler, and unhook the front pawl.



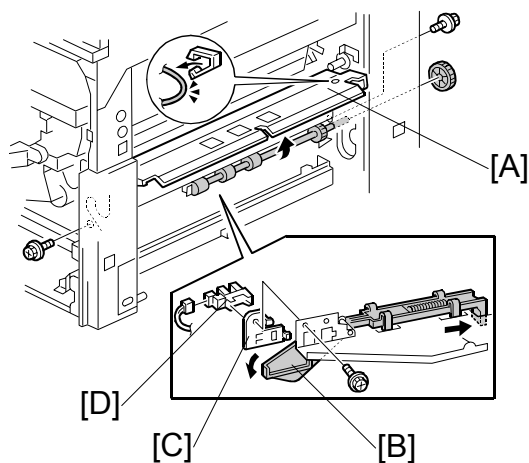
3.10.4 PAPER NEAR-END SENSOR

1. Lift the transport stay [A] (☛ 3.10.2)
2. Feeler [B]
3. Sensor bracket [C] (☛ x 1)
4. Paper near-end sensor [D] (☛ x 1)



3.10.5 PAPER END SENSOR

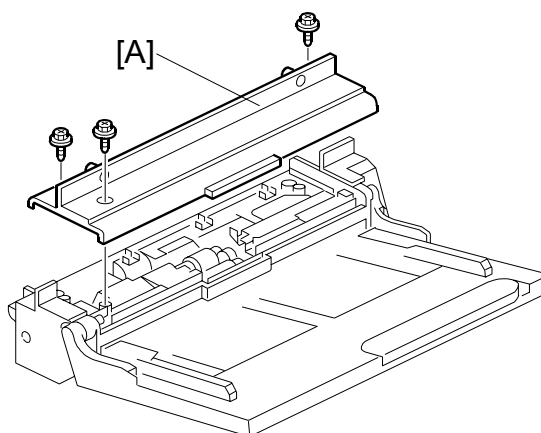
1. Lift the transport stay [A] (☛ 3.10.2)
2. Feeler [B]
3. Sensor bracket [C] (☛ x 2)
4. Paper end sensor [D] (☛ x 1)



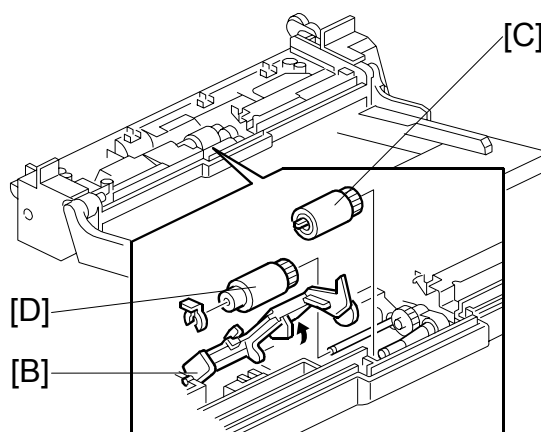
3.11 BYPASS TRAY

3.11.1 PICKUP/FEED ROLLER

1. Bypass tray (⌘ x 3)
2. Upper cover [A] (⌘ x 3)



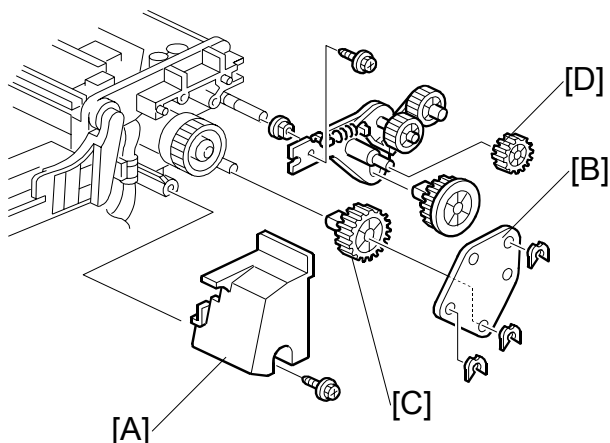
3. Lift the paper end sensor feeler [B].
4. Pick-up roller [C] (1 hook)
5. Paper feed roller [D] (⌘ x 1)



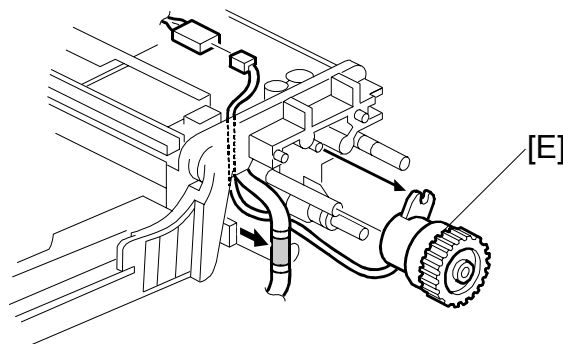
Replacement
Adjustment

3.11.2 PAPER FEED CLUTCH

1. Upper cover (☛ 3.11.1)
2. Rear cover [A] (🔩 x 1)
3. Gear holder [B] (🔩 x 3)
4. Gears [C][D]



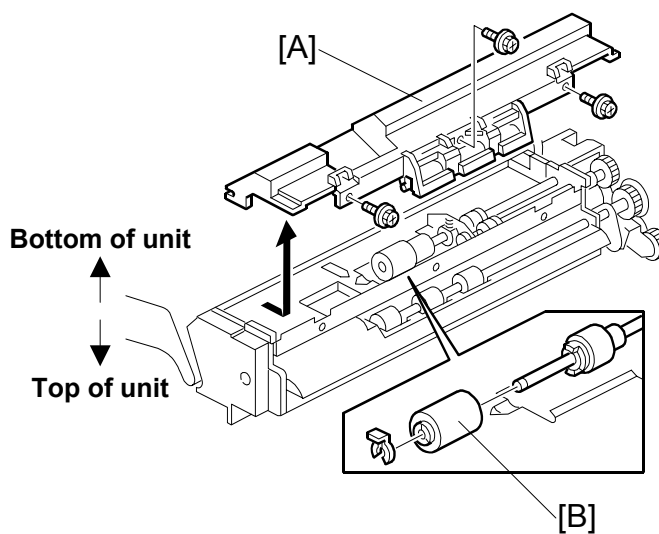
5. Clutch [E] (🔩 x 1)



Replacement
Adjustment

3.11.3 REVERSE ROLLER

1. Bypass tray (☛ 3.11.1)
2. Turn the unit upside down.
3. Bottom cover [A] (🔩 x 3)
4. Reverse roller [B] (🔩 x 1)



TROUBLESHOOTING

4. TROUBLESHOOTING

4.1 SERVICE CALL

4.1.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

Level	Definition	Reset Procedure
A	Fusing unit SCs displayed on the operation panel. The machine is disabled. The user cannot reset the SC.	Turn the main switch off then on before entering SP mode. Reset the SC (set SP5-810 [SC_Reset] to 1), then turn the main switch off then on again.
B	SCs that disable only the features that use the defective item. Although these SCs are not shown to the user under normal conditions, they are displayed on the operation panel only when the defective feature is selected.	Turn the main power switch off and on.
C	SCs that are not shown on the operation panel. They are internally logged.	Logging only
D	Turning the operation switch or main power switch off then on resets the SC. The SC is displayed on the operation panel. It is redisplayed if it occurs after the main power switch is turned on again.	Turn the main power switch off and on.

- NOTE:**
- 1) All SCs are logged.
 - 2) When an electrical circuit board has a problem, check the connections before replacing the PCBs.
 - 3) When a motor has a problem, check the mechanical load before replacing the motor or sensor.

4.1.2 SC TABLE

No. Definition		Symptom	Possible Cause
201	D	Polygon motor error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Defective polygon motor Defective harness
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The polygon motor starts operating. → The lock signal is not detected within 20 seconds. The polygon motor starts operating. → The lock signal is detected within 20 seconds. → After a 3-second waiting time, no lock signal is detected within 20 seconds. The polygon motor stops operating. → The lock signal is not detected within 20 seconds. The polygon motor is operating. → The lock signal remains undetected for 0.5 seconds. 	
		1st beam synchronization error	
		A polygon motor lock is detected; the LD door is closed; the LD remains on. → The LD error (1st beam synchronization error) continues for 0.5 seconds.	
		2nd beam synchronization error	
220	D	A polygon motor lock is detected; the LD door is closed; the LD remains on. → The LD error (2nd beam synchronization error) continues for 0.5 seconds.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disconnected synchronization detector board Defective LD unit Defective BCU
221	D	2nd beam synchronization error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disconnected synchronization detector board Defective LD unit Defective BCU
		A polygon motor lock is detected; the LD door is closed; the LD remains on. → The LD error (2nd beam synchronization error) continues for 0.5 seconds.	
230	D	FGATE on error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Defective BCU
		A transfer belt mark is detected. → No FGATE on signal is detected within 175+50 milliseconds.	
231	D	FGATE off error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Defective BCU
		A FGATE assert signal is detected. → The FGATE negate signal is not detected within 30 seconds.	
241	D	LD error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Defective LD unit
		An LD error continues for 0.5 seconds. (After an LD error is detected, an LD error release is written to the GAVD chip during monitoring.)	
280	D	Image transfer belt mark detection error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Defective BCU Poor electrical connection Noise
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> An imaging process starts. → No belt mark is detected in 1 revolution. A color imaging process starts. → A mono color image is transferred. → FGATE becomes active. → No belt mark is detected in 1 revolution. Thick paper or OHP film is used. → The belt slows down. → No belt mark is detected in 1 revolution. 	
281	D	GAPCI communication error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Defective BCU
		Data is transferred. → The CPU does not detect the communication ACK signal from GAPCI.	
282	D	GAVD communication error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Defective BCU
		Data is transferred. → The CPU does not detect the communication ACK signal from GAVD.	

No. Definition		Symptom	Possible Cause
300	D	Charge corona unit electrical leak	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Short circuit in the charge corona unit • Defective high voltage supply board • Defective harness (BCU - high voltage supply board)
		The charge corona unit keeps outputting; the unit is operating at the minimum PWM duty value. → 4.5 Volt (or more) is returning for 60 milliseconds.	
301	D	Charge corona unit disconnection	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defective PCU installation • Defective high voltage supply board • Defective harness (BCU - high voltage supply board)
		The charge corona unit keeps outputting. → The unit is operating at the maximum PWM duty value for 60 milliseconds.	
302	D	Charge grid electrical leak	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Short circuit in the charge grid • Defective high voltage supply board • Defective harness (BCU - high voltage supply board)
		The charge grid keeps outputting. → The returning voltage exceeds the target by 0.5 Volt or more for 120 milliseconds.	
305	D	Charge corona unit cleaner error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defective cleaner
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cleaning starts. → The lock signal is not detected within 30 seconds. • Cleaning starts. → The cleaner turns. → The lock signal is detected within 6 seconds. • The lock signal is detected while the unit is moving away from the HP. → The next lock signal is detected within 6 seconds after the unit has turned toward the HP. 	
350	D	Development error 1 (K/Y)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Short circuit in the development unit • Defective high voltage supply board • Defective harness (BCU - high voltage supply board)
		A development process starts. → The returning voltage exceeds the target by 0.5 Volt or more for 60 milliseconds.	
351	D	Development error 2 (C/M)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Short circuit in the development unit • Defective high voltage supply board • Defective harness (BCU - high voltage supply board)
		A development process starts. → The returning voltage exceeds the target by 0.5 Volt or more for 60 milliseconds.	
352	D	Development motor error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defective development motor
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The development motor starts or changes speed. → The motor does not detect a 1-second lock signal within 3 seconds. • The development motor starts. → The lock signal is detected during normal operation. → The lock signal is interrupted for 1 second or more. 	

SERVICE CALL

No. Definition		Symptom	Possible Cause
400	D	1st transfer (image transfer) electric leakage (+)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Short circuit in the image transfer unit • Defective image transfer belt • Defective high voltage supply board • Defective harness (BCU - high voltage supply board)
		Image transfer starts. → The process operates at the minimum PWM duty value. The returned current exceeds 1.8 V for 180 milliseconds.	
401	D	1st transfer (image transfer) electric leakage (–)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Short circuit in the image transfer belt • Defective high voltage supply board • Defective harness (BCU - high voltage supply board)
		Image transfer starts. → The negative (–) output is at the maximum PWM duty value for 60 milliseconds.	
410	D	2nd transfer (paper transfer) electric leakage (+)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Short circuit in the paper transfer unit • Defective high voltage supply board • Defective harness (BCU - high voltage supply board)
		Paper transfer starts. → The positive (+) output is at the minimum PWM duty value. → The returning voltage stays at 2.7 V or more for 60 milliseconds.	
411	D	2nd transfer (paper transfer) electric leakage (–)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Short circuit in the paper transfer unit • Defective high voltage supply board • Defective harness (BCU - high voltage supply board)
		Paper transfer starts. → The negative (–) output is at the minimum PWM duty value. → The returning voltage stays at 4.5 V or more for 60 milliseconds.	
412	D	2nd transfer (paper transfer) disconnection (+)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Right cover not closed • Defective transfer roller contact mechanism • Defective high voltage supply board • Defective harness (BCU - high voltage supply board)
		Paper transfer starts. → The positive (+) output is at the maximum PWM duty value for 60 milliseconds.	
413	D	2nd transfer (paper transfer) disconnection (–)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Right cover not closed • Defective transfer roller contact mechanism • Defective high voltage supply board • Defective harness (BCU - high voltage supply board)
		Paper transfer starts. → The negative (–) output is at the maximum PWM duty value for 60 milliseconds.	

No. Definition		Symptom	Possible Cause
420	D	Discharge error (fusing bias)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Discharge pin short circuit Defective high voltage supply board Defective harness (BCU - high voltage supply board) Scratched fusing belt
		The discharge circuit is operating at the maximum PWM duty value for 60 milliseconds.	
421	D	Discharge plate error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Short circuit in the discharge plate Defective high voltage supply board Defective harness (BCU - high voltage supply board)
		During discharging, the leakage detection signal is low for 60 milliseconds.	
430	D	Transfer belt cleaning error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Short circuit in the transfer belt cleaning unit Defective high voltage supply board Defective harness (BCU - high voltage supply board)
		Cleaning is operating at the maximum PWM duty value for 60 milliseconds.	
440	D	Main motor error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Defective main motor
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The main motor starts or changes speed. → The lock signal does not continue for 1 second within 3 seconds. The main motor starts. → The lock signal is detected and operation proceeds normally. → The lock signal is interrupted for 1 second. 	
460	D	Temperature sensor error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Short circuit in the temperature sensor Defective circuit Defective connector
		The output is 4.5 V (or higher) or 0.3 V (or lower) for 12 seconds.	
461	D	Humidity sensor error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Short circuit in the humidity sensor Defective circuit Defective connector
		The output is 4.5 V (or higher) or 0.3 V (or lower) for 12 seconds.	
480	D	ID sensor error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Defective ID sensor Defective connector
		The ID sensor is being calibrated (process control, step 1) → While the LED is off, the output voltage is 0.5 V or lower.	
481	D	Transfer belt mark detection error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Defective main motor Image transfer belt out of position Belt mark blurred or absent
		The main motor is operating; and the lock signal is detected. → The belt mark sensor signal does not change for 120 milliseconds.	
502	B	2nd tray error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Defective paper height sensor Defective tray lift motor
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The tray lift motor turns on. → The top of the paper stack is not detected for 13 seconds. The tray is set. → The top of the paper stack is detected. → The bottom plate is lowered. → The stack detection is not cleared within 5 seconds. → These steps are repeated 4 times. 	

SERVICE CALL

No. Definition		Symptom	Possible Cause
503	B	3rd tray error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Defective paper height sensor Defective tray lift motor
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The tray lift motor turns on. → The top of the paper stack is not detected for 13 seconds. The tray is set. → The top of the paper stack is detected. → The bottom plate is lowered. → The stack detection is not cleared within 5 seconds. → These steps are repeated 4 times. 	
515	D	Duplex unit communication error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Defective duplex unit board Defective BCU Defective IOB Defective connection (Main unit - Duplex unit)
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A connection error occurs. The signal is sent from the printer to the duplex unit every 3 seconds while paper is not transported by the unit. However, the duplex unit does not respond within 5 seconds. 	
520	D	Paper feed motor error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Defective paper feed motor
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The motor starts or changes speed. → The lock signal does not continue for 1 second within a 3-second interval. The motor starts. → The lock signal is detected and operation proceeds normally. → The lock signal is interrupted for 1 second. 	
541	A	Thermistor disconnection (heating roller)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Defective thermistor Thermistor loose connection Defective connector
		The fusing unit starts warm up to the print ready temperature. → The temperature does not reach 7°C for 10 seconds.	
542	A	Fusing warm-up timeout (heating roller)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Defective lamp (loose connection, thermostat failure, PSU, thermostat) Incorrect detection (loose thermistor connection, fusing - drawer loose connection)
		The main switch is turned on or a cover is closed. → The heating roller does not reach the warm-up temperature within 50 seconds.	
543	A	Overheat error (heating roller)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Short circuit Defective BCU board Defective PSU
		The heating roller thermistor detects 220°C for 5 seconds.	
544	A	Low temperature error (heating roller)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Defective lamp (loose connection, thermostat failure, PSU, thermostat) Incorrect detection (loose thermistor connection, fusing - drawer loose connection)
		During standby or operation, the heating roller thermistor detects 100 °C or less for 5 seconds.	
545	A	Full power error (heating roller)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Thermistor loose connection Fusing - drawer loose connection
		Fusing unit warm-up is complete. → The heating roller stops turning. → The heating roller lamp keeps outputting the maximum power for 30 seconds.	

No. Definition		Symptom	Possible Cause
546	A	Unstable temperature (heating roller)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Thermistor loose connection • Fusing - drawer loose connection
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The heating roller thermistor detects unstable temperature increases or decreases within 60 seconds. 	
551	A	Thermistor disconnection (pressure roller)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Thermistor loose connection • Defective harness • Defective connector
		The pressure roller thermistor detects 7°C or lower for 30 seconds.	
552	A	Warm-up time over (pressure roller)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defective lamp (loose connection, thermostat failure, PSU, thermostat) • Incorrect detection (thermistor loose connection, fusing - drawer loose connection)
		The main switch is turned on or a cover is closed. → The fusing pressure roller does not reach the ready temperature within 200 seconds.	
553	A	Overheat error (pressure roller)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Loose connection • Defective BCU board • Defective PSU
		The pressure roller thermistor detects 220°C for 5 seconds.	
554	A	Low temperature error (pressure roller)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defective lamp (loose connection, thermostat failure, PSU, thermostat) • Incorrect detection (thermistor loose connection, fusing - drawer loose connection)
		During standby or operation, the pressure roller thermistor detects 80°C or less for 5 seconds.	
555	A	Full power error (pressure roller)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Thermistor loose connection • Fusing - drawer loose connection
		Fusing unit warm-up is complete. → The fusing pressure roller stops turning. → The pressure roller lamp keeps outputting the maximum power for 200 seconds.	
556	A	Unstable temperature (pressure roller)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Thermistor loose connection • Fusing - drawer loose connection
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The pressure roller thermistor detects unstable temperature increases or decreases within 60 seconds. 	
560	D	Zero cross error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defective relay circuit • Defective PSU • Incorrect power supply
		The main switch is turned on; the fusing relay turns on. → 50 Hz or 60 Hz is not detected within 5 seconds.	
670	D	No response from BCU at power on	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Loose connection • Defective controller • Defective BCU
680	D	EEPROM error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Incorrect EEPROM connection
		The main switch is turned on. → EEPROM is not connected.	

SERVICE CALL

No. Definition		Symptom	Possible Cause
687	D	PER command error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Poor connection between BCU and controller Defective BCU Defective controller
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Some image data is transferred. → The controller does not report the necessary memory address. The PES command is issued. → The controller does not issue the necessary memory report (PER) command within 6 seconds.. 	
730	D	Four-bin mail box communication error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Defective mail box control board Defective BCU Defective IOB Incorrect installation
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A connection error occurs. The UART reports a communication error. In other cases than paper transport, after an every-3-second command is sent, the mail box does not respond within 5 seconds. 	
740	D	Finisher communication error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Defective finisher control board Defective board Defective BCU Defective IOB Incorrect installation
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A connection error occurs. The UART reports a communication error. In other cases than paper transport, after an every-3-second command is sent, the finisher does not respond within 5 seconds. 	
741	D	Finisher jogger motor error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Defective jogger motor Defective jogger home position sensor
		The jogger home position sensor (on/off) is not detected in a given time.	
742	D	Finisher stapler unit error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Defective stapler unit
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The stapler does not return to home position within 1 second. 	
743	D	Finisher output tray motor error	
		The stack height and lever sensors do not detect paper.	
744	D	Finisher output tray motor lock	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Defective motor
		The tray is locked for 10 seconds.	
745	D	Finisher paper detection error	
		The stack height and lever sensors do not correctly detect paper.	
750	D	1st paper tray unit communication error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Defective paper tray unit control board Defective BCU Defective IOB Defective connection (Paper tray - main unit)
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A connection error occurs. The UART reports a communication error. In other cases than paper transport, after an every-3-second command is sent, the paper tray unit does not respond within 5 seconds. 	
751	D	2nd paper tray unit communication error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Defective paper tray unit control board Defective connection (1st - 2nd paper tray)
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> After the 1st paper tray has recognized the 2nd paper tray, the trays cannot communicate with each other. After the 1st paper tray has recognized the 2nd paper tray, an ATM (CPU reset) is sent from the 2nd paper tray. 	

4.2 CONTROLLER ERROR TABLE

The table lists the controller error codes. If an error occurs, the code is displayed when the main switch is turned on or after the startup self-diagnostics.

NOTE: For the startup self-diagnostics, see section 5.3.

Code	Description	Required Action
640	BCU – Controller communication error (no response)	Turn the main switch off and on. Replace the controller. Replace the BCU.
641	BCU – Controller communication error (no response)	Turn the main switch off and on. Check the connection between BCU and controller. Replace the controller. Replace the BCU.
800	Video output error (K)	Data transfer starts to the BCU, but the transfer completion command does not return to the controller within the required time. Defective controller board
801	Video output error (Y)	
802	Video output error (M)	
803	Video output error (C)	
818	Watchdog error	Turn the main switch off and on. Replace the controller. See NOTE at the end of this table
819	Fatal error	Turn the main switch off and on. Check and/or replace the RAM DIMM. Check and/or replace the ROM DIMM. Replace the controller. See NOTE at the end of this table
820	Self-diagnostics error: CPU [XXXX]: Detailed error code	Turn the main switch off and on. Reinstall the controller system firmware. Replace the controller.
821	Self-diagnostics error: ASIC	Turn the main switch off and on. Reinstall the controller system firmware. Replace the RAM DIMM. Replace the controller board.
822	Self-diagnostics error: HDD (Hard Disk Drive) [XXXX]: Detailed error code	Turn the main switch off and on. Check that the HDD is properly connected to the controller. Replace the HDD. Replace the controller.
823	Self-diagnostics error: NIB [XXXX]: Detailed error code	Turn the main switch off and on. Replace the controller.
824	Self-diagnostics error: Standard NVRAM	Turn the main switch off and on. Check that the standard NVRAM is firmly inserted into the socket. Replace the NVRAM. Replace the controller.
827	Self-diagnostics error: Standard SRAM DIMM [XXXX]: Detailed error code	Turn the main switch off and on. Replace the SRAM DIMM. Replace the controller.

CONTROLLER ERROR TABLE

Code	Description	Required Action
828	Self-diagnostics error : ROM [XXXX]: Detailed error code	Turn the main switch on and off. Replace the ROM DIMM. Replace the controller.
829	Self-diagnostics error: optional RAM [XXXX]: Detailed error code	Turn the main switch off and on. Replace the RAM DIMM. Replace the controller board.
835	Self-diagnostics error: Centronics interface [XXXX]: Detailed error code	Turn the main switch off and on. Check the connection between the Centronics connector and loop-back connector. Reconnect the loop-back connector. Replace the controller.
836	Self-diagnostics error: Font ROM (standard)	Turn the main switch off and on. Replace the standard ROM-DIMM.
838	Self-diagnostics error: Font ROM (clock generator)	Replace the controller.
850	Network interface error	Turn the main switch off and on. Replace the controller.
851	IEEE1394 interface error	Turn the main switch off and on. Replace the IEEE1394 interface board. Replace the controller.
853	IEEE802.11b error - card not detected (power-on)	Check the wireless LAN card connection. Replace the wireless LAN card.
854	IEEE802.11b error - card not detected (during operation)	Check the wireless LAN card connection. Replace the wireless LAN card.
855	IEEE802.11b error	Check the wireless LAN card connection. Replace the wireless LAN card.
856	IEEE802.11b interface board error	Check the wireless LAN interface board connection. Replace the interface board.
857	USB interface error detected.	Check the USB connections, make sure that they are securely connected. Replace the controller board.
860	HDD: Error detected at power up (partition error, unformatted disk, incorrect disk type)	Turn the main switch off and on. Reformat the HDD (SP 5-832-1 [HDD Init]). Replace the HDD.
861	HDD: Reboot error	Turn the main switch off and on. Check the connection between HDD and controller. Check and replace the cables. Replace the HDD. Replace the controller.
862	Defective sector management maximum	Replace the HDD.
863	HDD: Read error	Turn the main switch off and on. Replace the HDD. Replace the controller.
864	HDD: CRC error	Turn the main switch off and on. Replace the HDD.
865	HDD: Access error	Turn the main switch off and on. Replace the HDD.

CONTROLLER ERROR TABLE

Code	Description	Required Action
900	Electrical counter error	Turn the main switch off and on. Check the connection between NVRAM and controller. Replace the NVRAM. Replace the controller.
990	Software performance error	Turn the main switch off and on. Reinstall the controller and/or engine main firmware. See NOTE at the end of this table.
991	Unexpected software error	The machine does not stop and the SC code is not displayed. The machine automatically recovers. However, the SC code is logged in the engine summary sheet (SMC).
998	Application start error	Turn the main switch off and on. Check that the RAM DIMM and ROM DIMM are properly connected. Reinstall the controller system firmware. Replace the controller.
999	Program installation error	Controller DIP SW1 setting incorrect. Defective software on IC card. Controller software download error. Replace the controller.

NOTE: If a problem always occurs in a specific situation (for example, same printer driver settings, same image file), the problem may be caused by a software error. In this case, send the following data and information to your product specialist.

- Symptom/Possible causes/Action taken
- Summary sheet (SP mode '1 Service', [Print Summary])
- SMC All (SP5-990-2, SP print mode - All)
- Logged data (SP5-990-4, SP print mode - Logging)
- Printer driver settings used when the problem occurs
- All data displayed on the screen (SC code, error code, and program address where the problem is logged.)
- Image file which causes the problem, if possible

4.3 BLOWN FUSE CONDITIONS

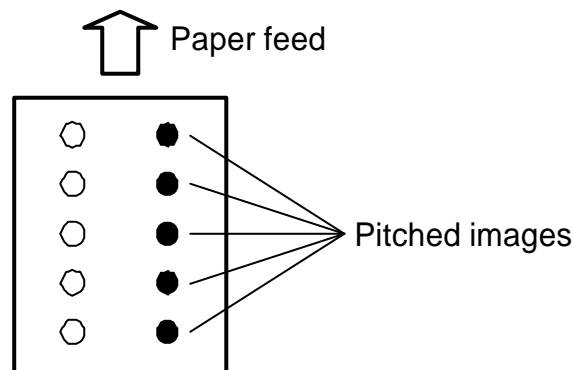
Fuse	Rating		Symptom when turning on the main switch
	115V	220 ~ 240V	
Power Supply Board			
FU1 (N.A.)/ CB1 (Eur./Asia)	15A/125V	8A/250V	No response
FU2	6.3A/250V	3.15A/250V	No response
FU3	4A/125V	4A/125V	“Tray 2 Hardware Problem” is displayed. The optional tray does not operate.* ¹
FU4	4A/125V	4A/125V	“Ready” is displayed. The interchange unit (and the finisher and/or the 4-bin mail box and/or duplex) does not operate.* ²

*¹: Vaa (+24V) for the optional tray is cut.

*²: Vaa (+24V) for the interchange unit is cut.

4.4 CHECK POINTS FOR IMAGE PROBLEMS AT REGULAR INTERVALS

Symptoms for image problems at regular intervals depend on the circumference of certain components. The following diagram shows the possible symptoms (black or white dots at regular intervals).



Color spots at 2.1 inches (54-mm) intervals: Development roller in the development unit

Abnormal image at 2.7 inches (68-mm) intervals: Transfer roller

Abnormal image at 7.4 inches (188-mm) intervals: Fusing belt in the fusing unit

Abnormal image at 5 inches (125-mm) intervals: Pressure roller in the fusing unit

SERVICE TABLES

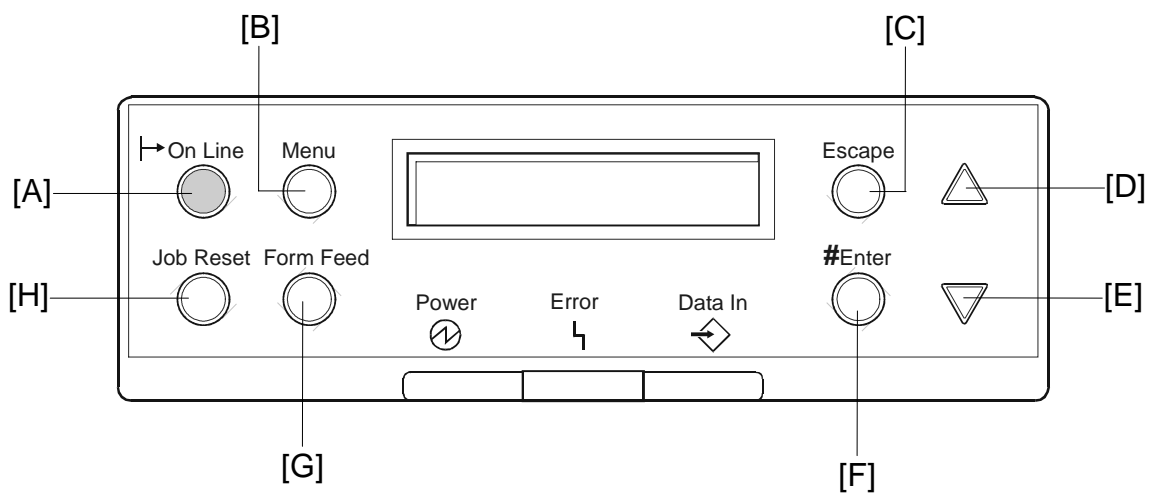
5. SERVICE TABLES

5.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE

⚠ CAUTION

Before starting a service program, check that no data is coming into the printer. If data is coming in, wait until the data is completely processed.

5.1.1 OPERATION PANEL KEYS



[A]: Online
[B]: Menu
[C]: Escape
[D]: Up arrow

[E]: Down arrow
[F]: Enter
[G]: Form feed
[H]: Reset

5.1.2 STARTING SERVICE PROGRAM MODE

You can enter service mode with either of the following procedures.

Procedure 1

1. Turn the main switch off.
2. Press the online key and the escape key at the same time, and hold them.
3. Turn the main switch on.
4. Wait until "SYSTEM ver V.x.xx. 1. Service" is displayed.

NOTE: "ver V.x.xx." indicates the machine's firmware version.

Procedure 2

1. Press the up arrow key and the down arrow key at the same time, and hold them for about 5 seconds.

NOTE: At this moment, the display does not change.

2. Press the enter key. "SYSTEM ver V.x.xx. 1. Service" is displayed.

NOTE: "ver V.x.xx." indicates the machine's firmware version.

5.1.3 MAIN MENU

1. The main menu has three sub menus (see below). Press the up arrow key or the down arrow key to scroll through these sub menus.
 - 1) Service: Goes to the controller service modes
 - 2) Engine: Goes to the engine service modes
 - 3) End: Exits from the main menu
2. Press the enter key.
3. Press the up arrow key or the down arrow key to scroll through the items in the selected sub menu.
4. To exit from the sub menu, press the escape key.

5.1.4 SPECIFYING A VALUE OR SETTING

1. Select the required item from the sub menu. The current setting is displayed.
2. Use the up arrow key or down arrow key to specify a new setting.
3. Press the enter key.
NOTE: If you do not press the enter key, the previous setting remains valid.
4. To exit from the sub menu item, press the escape key.

5.1.5 LEAVING SERVICE MODE

1. Select "3. End."
2. Press the enter key.

NOTE: You cannot exit from the main menu by pressing the escape key.

5.2 SP MODE TABLES

NOTE: In the Function/[Setting] column:

- The related pop-up screen name and function name (if any) appear in parenthesis following the function description.
- Comments are in *italics*.
- The setting range is enclosed in brackets, with the default setting written in **bold**.
- An asterisk (*) after the mode number means that this mode's value is stored in the NVRAM. If you do a RAM reset, all these SP modes will be returned to their factory settings.
- **DFU** stands for **D**esign/**F**actory **U**se only. Values marked **DFU** should not be changed.

5.2.1 SERVICE (CONTROLLER SERVICE MODES)

⇒

Mode No. (Class 1 and 2)		Function / [Setting]
Bit Switch		
1	Bit Switch 1	(See “Bit Switch Settings”.)
2	Bit Switch 2	
3	Bit Switch 3	
4	Bit Switch 4	
Clear Setting		
1	Clear Setting	Initializes the settings in the “System” menu of the user tools.
Print Summary		
1	Print Summary	Prints the service summary sheet (a summary of all the controller settings).
DispVersion		
1	Disp Version	Displays the version of the controller firmware.
ToneCtlSet		
1	Tone (Factory)	Recalls the gamma settings. Select the factory, previous, or current setting.
2	Tone (Prev.)	
3	Tone (Current)	
ToneCtlSet		
1	*600 x 600 x 2 Photo	Selects the printing mode (resolution) for the printer gamma adjustment. When selecting a print mode, an asterisk (*) is displayed in the front of the mode.
2	600 x 600 x 2 Graph	
3	600 x 600 Text	
4	600 x 600 x 2 Text	
5	600 x 600 Photo	
PrnColorSheet		
1	ToneCtlSheet	Prints the test page to check the color balance before and after the gamma adjustment.
2	ColorChart	

Mode No. (Class 1 and 2)		Function / [Setting]
TonerCtlValue		
1	Black/Cyan/Magenta/Yellow 1	Adjusts the printer gamma for the mode selected with the "Tone Ctl Set" setting. [0 to 255 / 16 / 1/step]
2	Black/Cyan/Magenta/Yellow 2	[0 to 255 / 32 / 1/step]
3	Black/Cyan/Magenta/Yellow 3	[0 to 255 / 48 / 1/step]
4	Black/Cyan/Magenta/Yellow 4	[0 to 255 / 64 / 1/step]
5	Black/Cyan/Magenta/Yellow 5	[0 to 255 / 80 / 1/step]
6	Black/Cyan/Magenta/Yellow 6	[0 to 255 / 96 / 1/step]
7	Black/Cyan/Magenta/Yellow 7	[0 to 255 / 112 / 1/step]
8	Black/Cyan/Magenta/Yellow 8	[0 to 255 / 128 / 1/step]
9	Black/Cyan/Magenta/Yellow 9	[0 to 255 / 144 / 1/step]
10	Black/Cyan/Magenta/Yellow 10	[0 to 255 / 160 / 1/step]
11	Black/Cyan/Magenta/Yellow 11	[0 to 255 / 176 / 1/step]
12	Black/Cyan/Magenta/Yellow 12	[0 to 255 / 192 / 1/step]
13	Black/Cyan/Magenta/Yellow 13	[0 to 255 / 208 / 1/step]
14	Black/Cyan/Magenta/Yellow 14	[0 to 255 / 224 / 1/step]
15	Black/Cyan/Magenta/Yellow 15	[0 to 255 / 240 / 1/step]
ToneCtlSave		
1	ToneCtlSave	Stores the print gamma adjusted with the "Toner Ctl Value" menu item as the current setting. Before the machine stores the new "current setting", it moves the data currently stored as the "current setting" to the "previous setting" memory storage location.
Toner Limit		
1	TonerLimitPhot	Adjusts the maximum toner amount for image development. [100 to 400 / 260 / 1%/step]
2	TonerLimitText	[100 to 400 / 260 / 1%/step]

Bit Switch Settings**NOTE:** These bit switches are all for use in Japan only.**How to Change Bit Switch Settings**

1. Select "1. Service".

NOTE: "ver V.x.xx." indicates the machine's firmware version.

```
SYSTEMver V.X.xx
1.Service
```

2. Press the enter key 2 times.

```
<Bit Switch>
Bit Switch 1
```

3. Press the up arrow key or down arrow key to display bit switches 1 through 4.

```
Bit Switch>
Bit Switch 4
```

4. Press the enter key.

```
Sw#4      00000000
bit0      _
```

5. Press the up arrow key or down arrow key to select a column.

```
Sw#4      00000000
bit0      _
```

6. Press the enter key. The current value appears in the column.

```
Sw#4      00000000
bit0      0
```

7. Press the up arrow key or down arrow key to change the value.

```
Sw#4      00001000
bit0
```

8. Press the enter key. The changed value is stored.

```
Sw#4      00000000
bit0
```

9. Press the escape key 3 times.

```
SYSTEMver V.0.24
1.Service
```

10. Select "3. End".

```
SYSTEMver V.0.24
3.End
```

Bit Switch 1

Bit	Function	Default
0	Key protect [0: Not activated, 1: Activated] DFU	0
1	(Not used.) DFU	0
2	(Not used.) DFU	0
3	(Not used.) DFU	0
4	(Not used.) DFU	0
5	(Not used.) DFU	0
6	(Not used.) DFU	0
7	Emulation print area (RPCS only). [0: Not printed, 1: Printed] DFU	0

Bit Switch 2

Bit	Function	Default
1	Overlap job mode (njob) [0: Not activated, 1: Activated] DFU	1
3	PDL Sniffing- See PUB(C)-051 for details. 0: Enabled , 1: Disabled	0
4	"Letterhead mode" display in UP mode (*NOTE) [0: Not activated, 1: Activated]	0

NOTE: In addition to 2-4 Bit Switch setting, press the following keys to enter the hidden menu display mode.

#Enter → Escape → Menu

The hidden indication "Letterhead mode" appears at the bottom of "system" menu. You can select the letterhead mode in this menu.

Bit Switch 3

Bit	Function	Default
0	PS Fonts Download- See PUB(C)-045 for details. 1: ON, 0: OFF	0

Bit Switch 4

Bit	Function	Default
0	Background areas of simple graphics (RPDL, R16, R55, R98) [0: Not painted, 1: Painted] DFU	0
1	Unknown 2-byte characters (R98) [0: Cleared, 1: Not cleared] DFU	0
2	Specifies portrait/landscape reset (R16) [0: Reset by the reset command, 1: Not reset by the reset command] DFU	0
3	Changes line thickness adjustment mode [0: Mode 1, 1: Mode 2] DFU	0
4	Displays or not displays error messages No. 84 through DF (RPDL, R16, R55, R98, GL/GL2). [0: Displays, 1: Not displays] DFU	0
5	Displays or not displays error messages No. E1 and higher (RPDL, R16, R55, R98, GL/GL2). [0: Displays, 1: Not displays] DFU	0
6	Changes the tray setting (GL/GL2). [0: LP, 1: MFP] DFU	0
7	Changes the default tray. [0: LP (Tray 1), 1: MFP (System default)] DFU	0

SP MODE TABLES

Gamma Adjustment

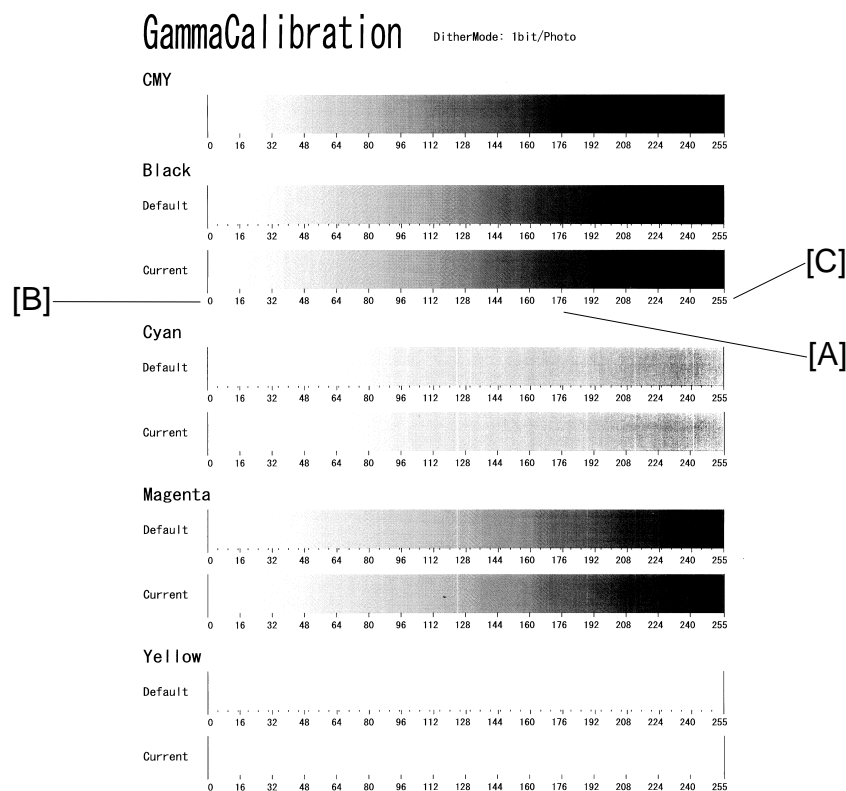
NOTE: To solve color quality problems, clean and/or replace related parts first. If adjustments are required, follow the procedure in this section.

Summary

To adjust the printer gamma:

- Select the print mode that needs calibrating
- Print a color calibration test sheet
- Make the gradation scales on the printout smooth from the lowest to the highest density. Adjust the CMY gradation scale at the top of the chart by balancing the density of the C, M, and Y gradation scales – the CMY gray scale should change smoothly from minimum to maximum, and there should be no coloration.

The color adjustment sheet is as follows.



For each color, you can adjust 15 points (example [A]) between 0 (lowest density) [B] and 255 (highest density) [C]. For each point, you can adjust the density within 0 and 255.

The gradation scales marked 'Default' are printed according to the default gamma settings in the flash ROM in the controller. The gamma adjustment changes the densities at the adjustable points in the gradation scale. The gradation scale marked "Current" shows the current settings.

During the adjustment procedure, compare the "Current" gradation scale with the 'Default'. Select the density for each of the 15 adjustable points, excluding points 0 and 255, from the 'Default' gradation scale.

The NVRAM holds three sets of controller gamma settings:

- Those saved this time: ToneCtlSet - Tone (Current)
- Those saved in the previous adjustment: ToneCtlSet - Tone (Prev)
- The factory settings: ToneCtlSet - Tone (Factory).

Adjustment Procedure

1. Enter the controller service mode.
2. Use the down arrow key to select "ToneCtlSet" (the second of the two) and press the Enter key.
3. Use the up/down key to select the mode that requires calibrating, then press the Escape key until you get back to the controller service mode menu.
4. Use the down arrow key to select "PrnColorSheet" and press the Enter key.
5. Use the up/down key to select "ToneCtlSheet" (normally this is displayed by default) and press the Enter key.
6. When "Execute?" is displayed, press the Enter key to print out the "color calibration test sheet".
7. When "Execute OK" is displayed, press the Escape key 2 times to exit from the menu. (You return to "PrnColorSheet" in the controller service menu.)
8. Use the down arrow key to select "ToneCtlValue" and press the enter key.

SP MODE TABLES

9. Use the up/down arrow key to select the setting you are adjusting, then press the enter key. The three digits in the display (example '016') indicate a position on the color calibration test sheet.

Operation Panel Display	Color Calibration Test Sheet
Set Black 1	Default Value 16
Set Black 2	Default Value 32
Set Black 3	Default Value 48
⋮	⋮
Set Black 13	Default Value 208
Set Black 14	Default Value 224
Set Black 15	Default Value 240
Set Cyan 1 ~ 15	See Set Black 1 ~ 15
Set Magenta 1 ~ 15	See Set Black 1 ~ 15
Set Yellow 1 ~ 15	See Set Black 1 ~ 15

Adjust the color density at each of the 15 points for each of the four colors.

NOTE: 1) To decide what density value to input, do the following.

- 2) Look at the color adjustment sheet.
- 3) For the color you are adjusting, look at the gradation scale entitled 'Default'.
- 4) Go along the scale until you reach the density that you wish to input.
- 5) Read off the value on the scale and store it in the machine.
 - a) Use the up/down key to move the cursor along the three-digit display, then press the Enter key.
 - b) Use the up/down key to change the digit at the cursor, then press the Enter key.
 - c) Press the Escape key to exit from the menu.
- 6) Do the same for all 15 points.

10. When the density setting is complete for all colors, print out a color adjustment sheet again and make sure that the gradation scale for each printed color is smooth and that the CMY gradation scale is gray. Repeat the adjustment if there is an anomaly (normally, repeat this procedure 3 to 5 times).
11. When the adjustment results are satisfactory, do the following:
 - 1) Use "ToneCtlSave" in the controller service menu, to store the new settings in the controller.
 - 2) Reset the controller (press the **[Reset]** key when the machine is off line") to use the new settings.

NOTE: The new settings will not be saved in the controller NVRAM unless you reset the controller.

5.2.2 ENGINE SERVICE MODES

The SP numbers do not appear on the screen, but they may appear on reports.

NOTE: The Service Program Mode is for use by service representatives only, so that they can properly maintain product quality. If this mode is used by anyone other than service representatives for any reason, data might be deleted or settings might be changed. In such case, product quality cannot be guaranteed any more.

SP1-XXX: (Feed)

1	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
001*	Lead_Edge_Reg.	
	1 Tray: Plain	Adjusts the leading edge registration by changing the registration clutch operation timing for each mode. [-4.0 ~ 4.0 / 0.0 / 0.1 mm/step] • <i>The user mode cannot adjust the settings for thick paper or OHP sheets.</i>
	2 Tray: Thick	
	3 Tray: OHP	
	4 Bank1	
	5 Bank2	
	6 By-pass: Plain	
	7 By-pass: Thick	
	8 By-pass: OHP	
	9 Duplex	
002*	S-to-S_Reg.	
	1 By-pass	Adjusts the side-to-side registration by changing the laser main scan start position for each mode. [-4.0 ~ 4.0 / 0.0 / 0.1 mm/step]
	2 Tray1	
	3 Bank1	
	4 Bank2	
	5 Duplex	
003*	Paper_Buckle	
	1 Tray: Plain	Adjusts the amount of paper buckle at the registration roller by changing the paper feed timing. [-9 ~ 9 / 0 / 1 mm/step]
	2 Tray: Thick	[-9 ~ 9 / -2 / 1 mm/step]
	3 Tray: OHP	[-9 ~ 9 / -2 / 1 mm/step]
	4 Tray: SmallSize	[-9 ~ 9 / -2 / 1 mm/step] (Small size: A4/LT or narrower)
	6 By-pass: Plain	[-9 ~ 9 / 0 / 1 mm/step]
	7 By-pass: Thick	[-9 ~ 9 / -2 / 1 mm/step]
	8 By-pass: OHP	[-9 ~ 9 / -2 / 1 mm/step]
	9 Duplex	[-9 ~ 9 / 0 / 1 mm/step]
⇒ 105*	Fusing_Temp.	
	1 H: Pre	Sets the temperature at which the heating roller starts idling. [100 ~ 180 / 140 / 1°C/step]
	2 H: _Ready	Sets the temperature at which the heating roller enters the print ready condition. [100 ~ 180 / 155 / 1°C/step]

1	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
⇒ 105*	3	H: _Standby	Sets the heating roller temperature for the ready (standby) condition. After the main switch has been turned on, the machine enters this condition when the heating roller temperature reaches the temperature specified in this SP mode. When the machine is recovering from energy saver or auto off mode, the machine becomes ready when both heat and pressure roller temperatures reach the specified temperature. Pressure roller: SP1-105-16 [100 ~ 180 / 160 / 1°C/step]
	4	H: Plain/1C	Sets the heating roller temperature for plain paper in single-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 155 / 1°C/step]
	5	H: Plain/FC	Sets the heating roller temperature for plain paper in full-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 160 / 1°C/step]
	6	H: M-Thick/1C	Sets the heating roller temperature for medium thickness paper in single-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 165 / 1°C/step]
	7	H: M-Thick/FC	Sets the heating roller temperature for medium thickness paper in full-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 170 / 1°C/step]
	8	H: Thick/1C	Sets the heating roller temperature for thick paper in single-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 165 / 1°C/step]
	9	H: Thick/FC	Sets the heating roller temperature for thick paper in full-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 170 / 1°C/step]
	10	H: OHP/1C	Sets the heating roller temperature for OHP sheets in single-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 165 / 1°C/step]
	11	H: OHP/FC	Sets the heating roller temperature for the OHP sheets in full-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 175 / 1°C/step]
	12	H: Duplex/1C	Sets the heating roller temperature for duplex printing (both sides) in single-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 150 / 1°C/step]
	13	H: Duplex/FC	Sets the heating roller temperature for duplex printing (both sides) in full-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 155 / 1°C/step]
	14	P: Pre	Sets the temperature at which the pressure roller starts idling. [30 ~ 100 / 10 / 1°C/step]
	15	P: _Ready	Sets the temperature at which the pressure roller becomes ready for printing. [60 ~ 150 / 65 / 1°C/step]



1	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
105*	16	P: _Standby	Sets the pressure roller temperature for the ready (standby) condition. After the main switch has been turned on, the machine enters this condition when the pressure roller temperature reaches the temperature specified in this SP mode. When the machine is recovering from energy saver or auto off mode, the machine becomes ready when both heat and pressure roller temperatures reach the specified temperature. Heating roller: SP1-105-3 [60 ~ 150 / 110 / 1°C/step]
	27	H: OFFSET+	Sets the heating roller temperature correction for when room temperature is 15°C or lower. [0 ~ 20 / 5 / 1°C/step]
	28	P: OFFSET+	Sets the pressure roller temperature correction for when room temperature is 15°C or lower. [0 ~ 20 / 0 / 1°C/step]
	29	H: OFFSET-	Sets the heating roller temperature correction for when room temperature is 30°C or higher. [0 ~ 20 / 5 / 1°C/step]
	30	P: OFFSET-	Sets the pressure roller temperature correction for when room temperature is 30°C or higher. [0 ~ 20 / 0 / 1°C/step]
106	Temp. _Display		
	1	H_Roller	Displays the current temperature of the heating or pressure roller. [0 ~ 255 / 0 / 1/step]
	2	P_Roller	
109	Fusing_Nip		
	1	ExecuteMode	Checks the fusing nip width using an OHP sheet. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>The OHP sheet stops in the fusing unit for the specified time (☛ SP1-109-2).</i> • <i>The nip width should be 9 ± 0.5 mm at front and rear. If this requirement is not met, change the fusing unit.</i>
	2	Stop_Duration	Adjusts the stoppage time for the OHP sheet in the fusing unit (☛ SP1-109-1). [0 ~ 100 / 10 / 1 s/step]
902*	PaperSize		
	1	B4/LG	Specifies how the machine interprets the paper size sensor output for the main unit tray. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For Europe: 0: B4 SEF, 1: LG SEF • For N. America: 0: LG SEF, 1: B4 SEF
	2	A3/DLT	Specifies how the machine interprets the paper size sensor output for the main unit tray. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For Europe: 0: A3 SEF, 1: DLT SEF • For N. America: 0: DLT SEF, 1: A3 SEF



1	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
902*	3	A4/LT	Specifies how the machine interprets the paper size sensor output for the main unit tray. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For Europe: 0: A4 SEF, 1: LT SEF • For N. America: 0: LT SEF, 1: A4 SEF
	4	B5/Executive	Specifies how the machine interprets the paper size sensor output for the main unit tray. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For Europe: 0: B5 SEF, 1: Executive (10.5" x 7.25") SEF • For N. America: 0: B5 SEF, 1: Executive (10.5" x 7.25") SEF
905	1	Pressure Roller Type	0: New Pressure Roller Type (2.1mm) 1: Old Pressure Roller Type (1.5mm) The New Pressure Roller (2.1mm) has been applied from first mass production of the machine.
910	Empty Rev		Specifies the settings for when fusing idling is done after printing on A4/LT LEF or smaller paper sizes. [0 ~ 2 / 0 / 1/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>After printing on small-width paper (A4 LEF/LT LEF or smaller), fusing idling evens the oil thickness on the roller surface.</i> • 0 (Int): <i>Enables printing during fusing idling.</i> • 1 (NoRev): <i>Disables this type of fusing idling.</i> • 2 (NoInt): <i>Disables printing during fusing idling.</i>
920	Paper Feed Motor Delay Timing		
	1	Tray: Plain	Adjust the timing of the paper feed motor when the registration roller feeds the paper by the fusing motor. This adjusts the paper buckle at the registration by the start timing of the paper feed motor. Normally, the paper buckle is adjusted by SP1-003. It is not necessary to adjust in the field. (The copier version has clutch to control the timing. This adjustment is only for printer model.) [0 ~ 50 / 15 / 5/step] DFU
	2	By-pass: Plain	
	3	Tray: Small Size	[0 ~ 50 / 0 / 5/step] DFU (Small size: A4/LT or narrower)

SP2-XXX: (Drum)

2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
001*	Charge_Bias		
	1	[M]	Adjusts the charge corona unit grid voltage. [300 ~ 800 / 500 / 1 Volt/step] Only effective is SP3-003 (Lub_Interval) is set to 0.
	2	[C]	
	3	[Y]	
	4	[K]	
	5	NoImageArea	
	6	ChargerCurrent	Adjusts the charge corona unit current. [400 ~ 800 / 500 / 1 μ A/step]
100*	Mag._Adjust		
	1	MainDirection	Adjusts the magnification in the main scan direction. [-12.8 ~ 12.7 / 0.0 / 0.1%/step]
101*	Mag._Adjust		
	1	SubDirection	Adjusts the magnification in the sub scan direction. [-12.8 ~ 12.7 / 0.2 / 0.1%/step]
201*	DevelopBiasAdj		
	1	[M]	Adjusts the development bias. [0 ~ 500 / 220 / 1 Volt/step] Only effective is SP3-003 (Lub_Interval) is set to 0.
	2	[C]	
	3	[Y]	
	4	[K]	
208	Forced_Toner		
	1	[K]	Forces toner to be supplied to the development unit. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step]
	2	[C]	
	3	[M]	
	4	[Y]	
	5	AllColor	
301	TransBeltBias		
	1	1C/1st/1	Adjusts the transfer belt current. [3.0 ~ 14.0 / 8.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>The front side image of 1-color duplex printing</i>
	2	1C/2nd/2	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 8.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>The rear side image of 1-color duplex printing</i>
	3	2C/--/1	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 13.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>The first color toner image of 2-color printing</i>
	4	3C/--/1	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 13.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>The first color toner image of 3-color printing</i>
	5	4C/--/1	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 7.5 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>The first color toner image of 4-color printing</i>
	6	2C/--/2	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 13.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>The second color toner image of 2-color printing</i>
	7	3C/--/2	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 13.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>The second color toner image of 3-color printing</i>

2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
301	8	4C/--/2	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 13.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>The second color toner image of 4-color printing</i>
	9	3C/--/3	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 13.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>The third color toner image of 3-color printing</i>
	10	4C/--/3	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 13.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>The third color toner image of 4-color printing</i>
	11	4C/--/4	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 13.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>The fourth color toner image of 4-color printing</i>
	12	--/--/1	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 7.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>After the first color toner image</i>
	13	--/--/2	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 7.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>After the second color toner image</i>
	14	--/--/3	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 7.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>After the third color toner image</i>
	15	--/--/last	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 7.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>After the final color toner image</i>
	16	DevStart	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 7.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>Development start</i>
	17	DevEnd	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 7.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>Development end</i>
	18	1C/1st/--	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 7.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>Waiting for thick paper or OHP before creating the front side image for 1-color printing</i>
	19	1C/2nd/--	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 7.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>Waiting for thick paper or OHP before creating the rear side image for 1-color duplex printing</i>
	20	2C/--/--	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 7.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>Waiting for thick paper or OHP before creating an image for 2-color printing</i>
	21	3C/--/--	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 7.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>Waiting for thick paper or OHP before creating an image for 3-color printing</i>
	22	4C/--/--	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 7.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>Waiting for the thick paper or OHP before creating an image for 4-color printing</i>
	23	PowerOnRecovery	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 7.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>Machine start and jam recovery</i>
303*	TransBeltEnv		
	1	1	Adjusts the environmental threshold for the transfer belt. [0 ~ 100.0 / 3.5 / 0.1 g/m ³ /step] DFU
	2	2	[0 ~ 100.0 / 19.0 / 0.1 g/m ³ /step] DFU
305*	TransBeltStart		
	1	BiasOnOff	Sets the bias for the image transfer start to on or off. [0 ~ 1 / 1 / 1/step] DFU <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0: Bias off 1: Bias on

2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
306	TransBeltFirst		
	1	1C	This value is added to the transfer current for the first page to improve insufficient transfer of solid images. [3.0 ~ 14.0 / 9.0 / 0.1 μ A/step]
	2	2C-4C	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 13.0 / 0.1 μ A/step]
⇒ 310*	PaperTrans_LL1 (Paper Transfer LL1) The display indicates: Paper Weight/Side 1 or 2/Paper Width (mm)		
	1	Nrml/1st/-297	Sets the paper transfer current when absolute humidity AH (g/m^3) is in the following range: 0 < AH \leq 3.5 (this is the 'LL1' humidity range) Adjust only if there are problems with insufficient transfer in the image area of the copy for a particular paper type or mode, or in response to field problems as directed by technical support staff. [0 ~ 70.0 / 25.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	2	Nrml/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 25.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	3	Nrml/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 25.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	4	Nrml/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 25.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	5	Nrml/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 25.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	6	Mid/1st/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 26.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	7	Mid/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 26.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	8	Mid/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 26.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	9	Mid/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 26.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	10	Mid/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 26.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	11	Thk/1st/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	12	Thk/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	13	Thk/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 16.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	14	Thk/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 18.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	15	Thk/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 20.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	16	Nrml/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	17	Nrml/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	18	Nrml/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	19	Nrml/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	20	Nrml/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	21	Mid/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	22	Mid/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]

⇒	2		Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
	310			
		23	Mid/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		24	Mid/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		25	Mid/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		26	Thk/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 12.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		27	Thk/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 16.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		28	Thk/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 20.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		29	Thk/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 24.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		30	Thk/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		31	OHP/297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 16.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		32	OHP/210	[0 ~ 70.0 / 20.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
⇒	311*	PaperTrans_LL2 (Paper Transfer LL2) The display indicates: Paper Weight/Side 1 or 2/Paper Width (mm)		
		1	Nrml/1st/-297	Sets the paper transfer current when absolute humidity AH (g/m^3) is in the following range: 3.5 < AH ≤ 8.0 (this is the 'LL2' humidity range) See SP2-310 for comments. [0 ~ 70.0 / 27.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		2	Nrml/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		3	Nrml/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		4	Nrml/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		5	Nrml/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 27.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		6	Mid/1st/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		7	Mid/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		8	Mid/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		9	Mid/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		10	Mid/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		11	Thk/1st/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		12	Thk/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		13	Thk/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		14	Thk/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 16.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		15	Thk/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 17.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		16	Nrml/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		17	Nrml/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		18	Nrml/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		19	Nrml/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		20	Nrml/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		21	Mid/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		22	Mid/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		23	Mid/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		24	Mid/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		25	Mid/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		26	Thk/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 13.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]

⇒	2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
⇒	311*	27	Thk/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 16.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		28	Thk/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 19.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		29	Thk/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 23.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		30	Thk/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		31	OHP/297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 17.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		32	OHP/210	[0 ~ 70.0 / 21.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
⇒	312*	PaperTrans_NN1 (Paper Transfer NN1) The display indicates: Paper Weight/Side 1 or 2/Paper Width (mm)		
		1	Nrml/1st/-297	Sets the paper transfer current when absolute humidity AH (g/m^3) is in the following range: 80 < AH \leq 14 (this is the 'NN1' humidity range) See SP2-310 for comments. [0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		2	Nrml/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		3	Nrml/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 32.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		4	Nrml/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		5	Nrml/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		6	Mid/1st/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		7	Mid/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		8	Mid/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 33.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		9	Mid/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 32.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		10	Mid/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		11	Thk/1st/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		12	Thk/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		13	Thk/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		14	Thk/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		15	Thk/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		16	Nrml/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 27.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		17	Nrml/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		18	Nrml/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		19	Nrml/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		20	Nrml/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		21	Mid/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		22	Mid/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		23	Mid/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		24	Mid/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		25	Mid/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		26	Thk/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		27	Thk/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 16.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		28	Thk/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 17.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		29	Thk/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 23.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		30	Thk/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		31	OHP/297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 17.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		32	OHP/210	[0 ~ 70.0 / 21.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]

2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
⇒ 313*	PaperTrans_NN2 (Paper Transfer NN2) The display indicates: Paper Weight/Side 1 or 2/Paper Width (mm)	
	1	Nrml/1st/-297 Sets the paper transfer current when absolute humidity AH (g/m ³) is in the following range: 14 < AH ≤ 19 (this is the 'NN2' humidity range) See SP2-310 for comments. [0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	2	Nrml/1st/257-296 [0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	3	Nrml/1st/210-256 [0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	4	Nrml/1st/129-209 [0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	5	Nrml/1st/-128 [0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	6	Mid/1st/-297 [0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	7	Mid/1st/257-296 [0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	8	Mid/1st/210-256 [0 ~ 70.0 / 32.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	9	Mid/1st/129-209 [0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	10	Mid/1st/-128 [0 ~ 70.0 / 39.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	11	Thk/1st/-297 [0 ~ 70.0 / 16.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	12	Thk/1st/257-296 [0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	13	Thk/1st/210-256 [0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	14	Thk/1st/129-209 [0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	15	Thk/1st/-128 [0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	16	Nrml/2nd/-297 [0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	17	Nrml/2nd/257-296 [0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	18	Nrml/2nd/210-256 [0 ~ 70.0 / 33.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	19	Nrml/2nd/129-209 [0 ~ 70.0 / 32.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	20	Nrml/2nd/-128 [0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	21	Mid/2nd/-297 [0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	22	Mid/2nd/257-296 [0 ~ 70.0 / 32.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	23	Mid/2nd/210-256 [0 ~ 70.0 / 34.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	24	Mid/2nd/129-209 [0 ~ 70.0 / 33.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	25	Mid/2nd/-128 [0 ~ 70.0 / 32.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	26	Thk/2nd/-297 [0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	27	Thk/2nd/257-296 [0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	28	Thk/2nd/210-256 [0 ~ 70.0 / 17.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	29	Thk/2nd/129-209 [0 ~ 70.0 / 23.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	30	Thk/2nd/-128 [0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	31	OHP/297 [0 ~ 70.0 / 18.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	32	OHP/210 [0 ~ 70.0 / 22.0 / 0.2 μA/step]



2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
314*	PaperTrans_HH (Paper Transfer HH). The display indicates: Paper Weight/Side 1 or 2/Paper Width (mm)	
	1	Nrml/1st/-297 Sets the paper transfer current when absolute humidity AH (g/m ³) is in the following range: 19 < AH (this is the 'HH' humidity range) See SP2-310 for comments. [0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	2	Nrml/1st/257-296 [0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	3	Nrml/1st/210-256 [0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	4	Nrml/1st/129-209 [0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	5	Nrml/1st/-128 [0 ~ 70.0 / 26.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	6	Mid/1st/-297 [0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	7	Mid/1st/257-296 [0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	8	Mid/1st/210-256 [0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	9	Mid/1st/129-209 [0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	10	Mid/1st/-128 [0 ~ 70.0 / 27.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	11	Thk/1st/-297 [0 ~ 70.0 / 16.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	12	Thk/1st/257-296 [0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	13	Thk/1st/210-256 [0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	14	Thk/1st/129-209 [0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	15	Thk/1st/-128 [0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	16	Nrml/2nd/-297 [0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	17	Nrml/2nd/257-296 [0 ~ 70.0 / 33.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	18	Nrml/2nd/210-256 [0 ~ 70.0 / 36.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	19	Nrml/2nd/129-209 [0 ~ 70.0 / 34.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	20	Nrml/2nd/-128 [0 ~ 70.0 / 32.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	21	Mid/2nd/-297 [0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	22	Mid/2nd/257-296 [0 ~ 70.0 / 34.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	23	Mid/2nd/210-256 [0 ~ 70.0 / 37.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	24	Mid/2nd/129-209 [0 ~ 70.0 / 35.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	25	Mid/2nd/-128 [0 ~ 70.0 / 33.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	26	Thk/2nd/-297 [0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	27	Thk/2nd/257-296 [0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	28	Thk/2nd/210-256 [0 ~ 70.0 / 16.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	29	Thk/2nd/129-209 [0 ~ 70.0 / 22.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	30	Thk/2nd/-128 [0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	31	OHP/297 [0 ~ 70.0 / 18.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	32	OHP/210 [0 ~ 70.0 / 22.0 / 0.2 μA/step]

2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
320*	PaperTrans_Col (Paper Transfer Correction) The display indicates: Paper Type/Side 1 or 2/Printing mode	
	1	Nrml/1st/1C Corrects the electric current for paper transfer. DFU [0 ~ 100 / 45 / 1%/step]
	2	Nrml/1st/2C [0 ~ 100 / 90 / 1%/step]
	3	Nrml/1st/3C [0 ~ 100 / 100 / 1%/step]
	4	Nrml/2nd/1C [0 ~ 100 / 45 / 1%/step]
	5	Nrml/2nd/2C [0 ~ 100 / 90 / 1%/step]
	6	Nrml/2nd/3C [0 ~ 100 / 100 / 1%/step]
	7	Thick/1st/1C [0 ~ 100 / 45 / 1%/step]
	8	Thick/1st/2C [0 ~ 100 / 90 / 1%/step]
	9	Thick/1st/3C [0 ~ 100 / 100 / 1%/step]
	10	Thick/2nd/1C [0 ~ 100 / 45 / 1%/step]
	11	Thick/2nd/2C [0 ~ 100 / 90 / 1%/step]
	12	Thick/2nd/3C [0 ~ 100 / 100 / 1%/step]
	13	OHP/1C [0 ~ 100 / 60 / 1%/step]
	14	OHP/2C [0 ~ 100 / 90 / 1%/step]
	15	OHP/3C [0 ~ 100 / 100 / 1%/step]
400*	ClnBiasLL1	
	1	1C Adjusts the transfer belt cleaning bias voltage when absolute humidity AH (g/m ³) is in the following range: 0 < AH ≤ 3.5 (this is the 'LL1' humidity range) DFU [0 ~ 2000 / 1200 / 10 Volt/step]
	2	2C-4C [0 ~ 2000 / 1200 / 10 Volt/step]
	3	HalfSpeed/1C [0 ~ 2000 / 1200 / 10 Volt/step]
	4	HalfSpeed/2C-4C [0 ~ 2000 / 1200 / 10 Volt/step]
	5	Ppattern [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	6	NoImageArea [0 ~ 2000 / 1400 / 10 Volt/step]
	7	JamRecovery [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
401*	ClnBiasLL2	
	1	1C Adjusts the transfer belt cleaning bias voltage when absolute humidity AH (g/m ³) is in the following range: 3.5 < AH ≤ 8.0 (this is the 'LL2' humidity range) DFU [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	2	2C-4C [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	3	HalfSpeed/1C [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	4	HalfSpeed/2C-4C [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	5	Ppattern [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	6	NoImageArea [0 ~ 2000 / 1400 / 10 Volt/step]
	7	JamRecovery [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	8	OPC Lubrication Time [0 ~ 2000 / 1400 / 10 Volt/step] **

⇒ ** **NOTE:** Requires Main Unit firmware version 2.28 and BICU firmware version 1.44A or later.

2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒	402*	ClnBiasNN1	
	1	1C	Adjusts the transfer belt cleaning bias voltage when absolute humidity AH (g/m ³) is in the following range: 8.0 < AH ≤ 14 (this is the 'NN1' humidity range) DFU [0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	2	2C-4C	[0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	3	HalfSpeed/1C	[0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	4	HalfSpeed/2C-4C	[0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	5	Ppattern	[0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	6	NoImageArea	[0 ~ 2000 / 1400 / 10 Volt/step]
	7	JamRecovery	[0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	8	OPC Lubrication Time	[0 ~ 2000 / 1400 / 10 Volt/step] ** See page 5-22
⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒	403*	ClnBiasNN2	
	1	1C	Adjusts the transfer belt cleaning bias voltage when absolute humidity AH (g/m ³) is in the following range: 14 < AH ≤ 19 (this is the 'NN2' humidity range) DFU [0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	2	2C-4C	[0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	3	HalfSpeed/1C	[0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	4	HalfSpeed/2C-4C	[0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	5	Ppattern	[0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	6	NoImageArea	[0 ~ 2000 / 1400 / 10 Volt/step]
	7	JamRecovery	[0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	8	OPC Lubrication Time	[0 ~ 2000 / 1400 / 10 Volt/step] ** See page 5-22
⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒	404*	ClnBiasHH	
	1	1C	Adjusts the transfer belt cleaning bias voltage when absolute humidity AH (g/m ³) is in the following range: 19 < AH (this is the 'HH' humidity range) DFU [0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	2	2C-4C	[0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	3	HalfSpeed/1C	[0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	4	HalfSpeed/2C-4C	[0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	5	Ppattern	[0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	6	NoImageArea	[0 ~ 2000 / 1400 / 10 Volt/step]
	7	JamRecovery	[0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	8	OPC Lubrication Time	[0 ~ 2000 / 1400 / 10 Volt/step] ** See page 5-22
⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒	500*	FusingBias (Discharge pin)	
	1	Nrml/1C/1st	Adjusts the discharge pin voltage (paper separation) and fusing bias voltage. DFU [4000 ~ 1000 / 3000 / 100 Volt/step] • Same bias voltage is applied to the fusing unit and the discharge pin.
	2	Nrml/1C/2nd	[4000 ~ 1000 / 3000 / 100 Volt/step]
	3	Nrml/FC/1st	[4000 ~ 1000 / 2500 / 100 Volt/step]
	4	Nrml/FC/2nd	[4000 ~ 1000 / 2500 / 100 Volt/step]
	5	Thk/1C/1st	[4000 ~ 1000 / 3000 / 100 Volt/step]
	6	Thk/1C/2nd	[4000 ~ 1000 / 3000 / 100 Volt/step]
	7	Thk/FC/1st	[4000 ~ 1000 / 2500 / 100 Volt/step]
	8	Thk/FC/2nd	[4000 ~ 1000 / 2500 / 100 Volt/step]

2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
510*	Fu_Bias_SW		
	1	Fu_Bias_SW	Switches the fusing and discharge pin bias control on or off. [0 ~ 1 / 1 / 1/step] DFU <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0: Control off 1: Control on
801*	ChrgClnIntval		
	1	ChrgClnIntval	Sets the charge corona unit cleaning interval. [0 ~ 5000 / 600 / 100 counts/step] Refer to section 6 for details.
	2	ChrgClnIntval - 2	Sets the charge corona unit cleaning interval. The charge corona cleaning is carried out after 600 (SP2-801-1) development counts, at job end or after 700 (=the sum of the settings in SP2-801-1 and -2) development counts (stops in the middle of the job) [0 ~ 5000 / 100 / 100 counts/step]
802	ChargerCln		
	1	Charger Cln	Executes a forced charge corona unit cleaning. Set to 1 to start cleaning. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step]
⇒ 803	Charge Cleaning Off Time		
	1	Charge Cleaning Off time Requires MCU v2.26 and BICU v1.40 firmware.	[0 ~ 200 / 60 / 10 seconds/step] A 60-second interval already exists for performing an idle discharge after corona wire cleaning, this SP mode allows the interval to be adjusted. The idle discharge is to maintain an even charge wire surface, ensuring proper charging.
901*	EnvControl		
	1	EnvControl	Switches environment control on or off. [0 ~ 1 / 1 / 1/step] DFU <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0: Control off (The paper transfer and cleaning bias environments are set to NN1. The image transfer bias environment is set to MM.) 1: Control on
903	PaperTrans_Low		
	1	LL1/Nrml	Adjusts the paper transfer current applied when the machine is at low temperature. [0.0 ~ 70.0 / 1.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] The specified value is subtracted from the value specified by SP2-310 (PaperTrans_LL1) under the following conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The machine is in the LL1 environment. 400 images or less are created after the machine starts
904	1CBiasAdj		
	1	[M]	Adjusts the development bias applied during the mono-color mode. DFU [0 ~ 100 / 50 / 1 V/step]
	2	[C]	[0 ~ 100 / 0 / 1 V/step]
	3	[Y]	[0 ~ 100 / 0 / 1 V/step]
	4	[K]	[0 ~ 100 / 0 / 1 V/step]

2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
⇒	905 Paper Transfer Roller Type	<p>This SP has add with firmware version V2.18 (1st release) due to the shape modification to the paper transfer roller to increase transferability.</p> <p>When updating from V2.18 to V2.19 or later, please check SP2-310-001 thru SP2-314-032 (paper transfer currents) and SP2-903-01 (paper transfer Adjustment) as the defaults for these values have been changed.</p> <p>0: New paper transfer roller type (Drum Type) 1: Old paper transfer roller type (straight type)</p>
	⇒	<p>Temp_HumDisp</p> <p>1 Temp Displays the temperature measured by the temperature sensor inside the machine. [−127 ~ 127 / 0 / 1°C/step]</p> <p>2 Humidity_1 Displays the humidity measured by the humidity sensor inside the machine. [0 ~ 255 / 0 / 1%/step]</p> <p>3 Humidity_2 Displays the absolute humidity calculated from the temperature/humidity sensor readings. [0 ~ 65535 / 0 / 0.1 g/m³/step]</p> <p>4 EnvLevel Displays the current humidity level calculated from the absolute humidity. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • LL1: 0 < AH ≤ 3.5 • LL2: 3.5 < AH ≤ 8.0 • NN1: 8.0 < AH ≤ 14 • NN2: 14 < AH ≤ 19 • HH: 19 < AH <p>* AH = absolute humidity</p>
	917 Test Pattern	<p>1 Test Pattern Allows you to print out the test pattern. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1: Print out the test patterns listed in SP5-955 (Test Pattern – Pattern). <p>To print the selected chart, change the setting from 0 to 1, then print out the demo sheet (user tool) or send a print job from a PC.</p>
	930* TrimAdjust	<p>1 Front Adjusts the white margin on printouts. [0 ~ 65535 / 0 / 1/step]</p> <p>2 Back [0 ~ 65535 / 0 / 1/step]</p> <p>3 Lead [0 ~ 65535 / 20 / 1/step]</p> <p>4 Trail [0 ~ 65535 / 20 / 1/step]</p>

2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
938	OPC Reverse Interval		
	1	OPC Reverse Interval	<p>[0 ~ 100 / 10 / 10 counts /step]</p> <p>The Main motor rotates the OPC belt backwards for 500 ms at the end of every job, in order to remove foreign particles between the OPC belt and OPC cleaning blade. However, this does not need to be performed so often. In addition, reducing the frequency of OPC belt reverse rotation improves the cleaning blade performance. This SP adjusts the counter for the OPC belt reverse rotation, and is incremented as follows: LT/A4 LEF or smaller: 1, larger than LT/A4 LEF: 2. When this SP reaches its set maximum, reverse rotation is performed for 500ms at job end.</p> <p>NOTE: Requires main unit controller version 2.27, and BICU firmware version 1.42 or later.</p>
939	OPC_Lub_Int		
	1	OPC_Lub_Int	<p>Executes/does not execute OPC lubrication by interrupting the job. DFU</p> <p>[0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Off • 1: On <p><i>SP2-942-1 (OPC_Lub_Intrvl) specifies the lubrication interval.</i></p>
940	OPC_Lub_Mode		
	1	OPC_Lub_Mode	<p>Executes a forced OPC lubrication to reduce the friction on the OPC belt. DFU</p> <p>[0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The OPC belt and the lubricant brush operate for 2 minutes.
941	OPC_Lub_Time		
	1	job end	<p>Determines how long the OPC belt is lubricated for after the end of every job.</p> <p>[6 ~ 30 / 14 / 1 s/step]</p> <p>NOTE: Requires main unit controller version 2.28, and BICU firmware version 1.44A or later.</p>
	2	OPC_Lub_Int	<p>Determines how long the OPC belt is lubricated at the forced lubrication. (See NOTE for SP2-941-1)</p> <p>[6 ~ 60 / 10 / 1 s/step]</p>
942	OPC_Lub_Intrvl		
	1	OPC_Lub_Intrvl	<p>[10 ~ 200 / 50 / 10/step] DFU</p> <p><i>When SP2-939 (OPC_Lub_Int) is set to on, the machine lubricates the OPC belt and image transfer belt at the interval (number of prints) set with this SP. Incoming print jobs do not interrupt the lubrication.</i></p>
943	Discharge Tsld (Discharge Threshold)		
	1	Discharge Tsld	<p>Adjusts the threshold of discharge. DFU</p> <p>[9.0 ~ 22.0 / 15.0 / 1.0 g/m³/step]</p>



2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
944	OPCLub:Lrg Area	
	1	Int Enables/disables OPC lubrication after a certain amount of images are printed. The lubrication timing depends on SP2-944-2 to -5. When high coverage images are continuously printed, cleaning of the OPC may not be enough. To correct this, OPC lubrication is carried out during printing (lubrication time: around 34 seconds). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On • Off When "on" is set, OPC lubrication is executed under either of the following conditions: Condition 1. The number of printouts since the previous lubrication reaches the value in SP2-944-4; and the average pixel coverage of those printouts exceeds the value in SP2-944-2. Conditions 2. The number of printouts since the previous lubrication reaches the value in SP2-944-5; and the average pixel coverage of those printouts exceeds the value in SP2-944-3.
	2	ImgAreaValue1 Adjusts the average pixel. [50 ~ 800 / 500 / 10 /step]
	3	ImgAreaValue2 [50 ~ 800 / 350 / 10 /step]
	4	Sheets1 [10 ~ 80 / 30 / 1 /step]
	5	Sheets2 [10 ~ 80 / 60 / 1 /step]
950	S_Reg._Adj.	
	1	M(2:P1b) Colour registration adjustment: adjusts the start timing of imaging for each color. DFU [-3 ~ 3 / -1 / 2 line/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2 lines = 0.047566 ms (about 85 μm) • +: Delays the start timing. • -: Advances the start timing. • The start timing is adjusted only in plain paper mode, and when one of the following conditions is satisfied: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Between the two images on the transfer belt (when two images are developed on the OPC at the same time (● 6.2)) 2) B4 SEF or larger (multi-print job)
	2	C(2:P1b) [-3 ~ 3 / 0 / 2 line/step]
	3	Y(2:P1b) [-3 ~ 3 / 0 / 2 line/step]



2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
950	4	K(2:P1b)	[−3 ~ 3 / 0 / 2 line/step]
	5	M(1:P1b)	[−3 ~ 3 / −1 / 2 line/step]
	6	C(1:P1b)	[−3 ~ 3 / 0 / 2 line/step]
	7	Y(1:P1b)	[−3 ~ 3 / 0 / 2 line/step]
	8	K(1:P1b)	[−3 ~ 3 / 0 / 2 line/step]
	9	M(P1a)	For use in Japan only. [−3 ~ 3 / 0 / 2 line/step]
	10	C(P1a)	
	11	Y(P1a)	
	12	K(P1a)	
960 *	Tray_Heater		
	1	Tray_Heater	Optional tray heaters installed or not [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] 0: No, 1: Yes
970	OilClearMode		
	1	Mode	Enables/disables the settings of SP2–970–2 through 4. [0 ~ 1 / 1 / 1 /step] <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0: Does not clear• 1: Clears Oil on duplex copies gets on the transfer belt, and this can cause uneven image density. To remove this oil, printing stops, the PCU turns, and the cleaning unit removes the oil.
	2	Print_Int	Enables/disables interruption of the oil removal process. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1 /step] <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0: Users cannot interrupt• 1: Users can interrupt If interruption is enabled, the user does not need to wait until the oil removal process ends, but the output image may be poor.
	3	Repetition_Num	Specifies how many times the oil removal process is repeated. [1 ~ 20 / 5 / 1 /step] The more times the oil removal is repeated, the better the output images are; but the longer it takes
	4	Dup_Sheets	Specifies how often the oil removal process is done. The unit is the number of duplex prints. The counter counts down once every narrow (A4 SEF or less) duplex sheet, and counts back up 1 for every other type of sheet. [1 ~ 50 / 10 / 1 /step]

SP3-XXX: (Process)

3	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
001	ProcessCtrl		
	1	ProcessCtrl	<p>Does a forced process control, and displays the result as one of the following codes. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Normal termination • 103: Error (ID sensor inactive → Defective ID sensor, Defective circuit, Defective BCU board) • 104: Error (ID sensor unable to receive light → Defective OPC belt, Dirty OPC belt, Defective ID sensor, Defective circuit, Defective BCU board) • 105: Error (ID sensor unable to receive reflection from OPC → Same as "104") • 254: Execution impossible (Executed while not in the ready status) • 255: Execution aborted (due to an SC or a cover opened)
003*	Lub_Interval		
	1	Lub_Interval	<p>Sets the process control interval. [0 ~ 1000 / 200 / 10 sheet/step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Disables automatic process control
004*	EnvChange		
	1	Temp	<p>Sets the temperature/humidity change that triggers process control (process control is done if temperature or humidity has changed by this amount since the previous process control). [0 ~ 255 / 15 / 1°C/step]</p>
	2	Humidity	[0 ~ 65535 / 15.0 / 1.0 g/m ³ /step]
005*	ProconPreRound		
	1	ProconPreRound	<p>PCU and development unit idling is done before process control. This value determines the amount of idling rotation. [1 ~ 5 / 1 / 1 turn/step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1 turn: A3 length
006*	DensityAdjust		
	1	M/A AdjustLevel	<p>Select the toner density compensation level for process control. [0 ~ 3 / 0 / 1/step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: None • 1: Weak • 2: Medium • 3: Strong <p>The higher the value, the darker the prints will be.</p>
	2	Vh_ AdjustLevel	

3	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
910*	DoctorIntval	
	1	print(FC) Sets the doctor roller reverse rotation interval. [0 ~ 50 / 50 / 1 sheet/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The value indicates how many sheets are output before the doctor roller is reversed. (Sheet counts are converted into equivalent A4-LEF sheet counts.) • Reversing the roller removes toner blockages. • The sheet count is reset after reverse rotation. • Decrease the value when vertical white lines appear on prints.
	2	print(MC) [0 ~ 65535 / 50 / 1 sheet/step]
	3	job end [0 ~ 65535 / 20 / 1 sheet/step]
⇒ 920*	Lub._CL_Time	
	1	Lub._CL_Time Sets the OPC belt lubrication period. DFU [0 ~ 100 / 50 / 10%/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When 100 is specified, the OPC belt cleaning clutch is always on whenever the OPC is turning, so the OPC gets lubricated. When 50 is specified, the clutch is only on half the time that the motor is on. NOTE: Requires main unit controller version 2.27, and BICU firmware version 1.42 or later.
⇒ 921	Lubricant Clutch OFF	
	1	1 C [0 ~ 11 / 6 / 1s /step]
	2	2C/3C/4C Allows the image transfer belt cleaning clutch off timing to be adjusted. The setting determines the number of seconds after image transfer belt cleaning roller charging that the clutch is turned off. With previous versions, the clutch is always running while the development roller motor rotates. NOTE: Requires main unit controller version 2.27, and BICU firmware version 1.42 or later.
940	JobEnd_Int	
	1	JobEnd_Int The OPC belt is lubricated after the end of every job. This SP determines whether the lubrication is interrupted when a job arrives at the printer. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Interrupted • 1: Not interrupted
941	OPC_Ide_PwrOn	
	1	Idling_Time The image transfer belt tends to curl after a long period without rotation. To correct this, image transfer belt idling is done if the fusing temperature is not high enough to print <u>just after the main switch is turned on</u> . This SP determines how long the idling rotation is done. [3 ~ 5 / 3 / 1 minute/step]
	2	PrintingReady Select when the machine can accept a print job after the idling starts. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Immediately • 1: After idling has been done for 1 minute • 2: After idling finishes. [0 ~ 2 / 0 / 1/step]

3	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
942	OPC_Ide_E_Svr	
	1 Idling_Time	<p>The image transfer belt has curl tendency after long period without rotation.</p> <p>The image transfer belt tends to curl after a long period without rotation.</p> <p>To correct this, image transfer belt idling is done if the fusing temperature is not high enough to print <u>when returning from energy saver mode</u>.</p> <p>This SP determines how long the idling rotation is done. [3 ~ 5 / 3 / 1 minute/step]</p>
	2 PrintingReady	<p>Select when the machine can accept a print job after the idling starts.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Immediately • 1: After idling has been done for 1 minute • 2: After idling finishes. <p>[0 ~ 2 / 0 / 1/step]</p>
970	ImgAreaRate	
	1 M	<p>Specifies the minimum image area (expressed as a percentage of an A4 page) required to maintain optimum development unit condition (☛ Toner Revitalization: SP3-971 [AutoTnrConsume]).</p> <p>[0 ~ 10.0 / 2.0 / 0.1 %/step]</p> <p><i>After 20 sheets over a number of small jobs (or after 50 sheets in one job), if the developed area is less than the value of this SP mode, toner is transferred to the image transfer belt and cleaned off. This is performed during the doctor roller reverse rotation.</i></p>
	2 C	[0.0 ~ 10.0 / 2.0 / 0.1 %/step]
	3 Y	[0.0 ~ 10.0 / 2.0 / 0.1 %/step]
	4 Bk	[0.0 ~ 10.0 / 3.0 / 0.1 %/step]
971	AutoTnrConsume	
	1 AutoTnrConsume	<p>Enables/disables the toner revitalization.</p> <p>[0 or 2 / 2 / 1 /step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Disables • 2: Enables <p><i>Continuous printing with a relatively low coverage ratio (CMYK less than 5% each) tends to reduce the charge potential of the toner, because the toner remains in the hopper for a long time. This can lead to spots on the copy. Toner revitalization removes this defective toner periodically.</i></p>
980	EmptyRev(Bk)	
	1 EmptyRev(Bk)	<p>Activates/deactivates 1-color idling after paper transfer.</p> <p>[0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Deactivates • 1: Activates <p><i>Set this to 1 if the user complains about diagonal lines in solid areas of prints that only use one toner color (M, C, or Y). It is especially noticeable in black areas.</i></p>

SP5-XXX: (Mode)

5	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
009*	Language		
	1		<p>Selects the language for the operation panel. After changing the setting, turn the main switch off and on for initialization. [2 ~ 16 / 2 / 1 /step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2: <i>British</i> • 3: <i>American</i> • 4: <i>French</i> • 5: <i>German</i> • 6: <i>Italian</i> • 7: <i>Spanish</i> • 8: <i>Dutch</i> • 9: <i>Norwegian</i> • 10: <i>Danish</i> • 11: <i>Swedish</i> • 12: <i>Polish</i> • 13: <i>Portuguese</i> • 14: <i>Hungarian</i> • 15: <i>Czech</i> • 16: <i>Finnish</i>
024	mm/inch Display		
	1	mm/inch Display	<p>Changes the unit on the display. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: <i>mm</i> • 1: <i>inch</i>
045*	Counter Method		
	1	Counter Method	<p>Switches the counter display. The setting can only be changed once. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: <i>Developments</i> • 1: <i>Prints</i>
046*	RomUpdateDisp		
	1	ROM Update	<p>Enables or disables the ROM Update utility. When enabled, this utility will be displayed in the user program mode. [0 ~ 1 / 1 / 1/step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: <i>Enabled</i> • 1: <i>Disabled</i>
101*	Energy Saver		
	3	Level 1	<p>Sets the energy saver timers. [0 ~ 60 / 0 / 10 s/step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>To enable Energy Saver, use the user program mode. When Energy Saver Level 1 is enabled, the value is initialized to 30 seconds.</i> • 0: <i>Energy saver level 1 is disabled</i>
	4	Level 2	<p>[0 ~ 3600 / 1800 / 60 s/step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>To enable Energy Saver, use the user program mode. When Energy Saver Level 2 is enabled, the value is initialized to 1,800 seconds.</i> • 0: <i>Energy saver level 2 is disabled</i>

5	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
104*	Double Count		
	1	Double Count	The counters count double for A3/11" x 17". [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0: Normal count 1: Double count
305*	ES Level 2 set		
	1	ES Level 2 set	Activates energy saver level 2. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0: Enables 1: Disables
401*	ULimitAutoSet		
	44	ULimitAutoSet	Activates the auto user code registration function (prints are counted and logged for each user code and the counts can be viewed with SmartNetMonitor). [0 ~ 1 / 1 / 1/step]0: Inactivated <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1: Activated
801	Memory Clear		
	1	All	Clears the settings from the NVRAM and initializes the settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enter key: Clears Escape key: Does not clear
	2	ENG_All	Clears the engine settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enter key: Clears Escape key: Does not clear
	3	SCS (System Control Service)	Clears the system settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enter key: Clears Escape key: Does not clear
	4	IMH (Image Memory Handler)	Clears IMH data. DFU <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enter key: Clears Escape key: Does not clear
	5	MCS (Memory Control Service)	Clears MCS data. DFU <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enter key: Clears Escape key: Does not clear MCS is for network settings.
	8	PRT	Clears the user tool settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enter key: Clears Escape key: Does not clear
	11	NCS	Clears the network settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enter key: Clears Escape key: Does not clear
803	InputCheck (See section 5.3.2.)		
804	OutputCheck (See section 5.3.3.)		
810	SC_Reset		
	1	SC_Reset	Resets a fusing-related SC. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] Resets a type A service call condition. NOTE: Turn the main switch off and on after using this SP.

5	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
811	MachineSerial		
	2	Display	Displays the machine serial number. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step]
812*	FAX TEL No.		
	2	FAX TEL No.	Sets the fax or telephone number for a service representative by using the enter key and the down arrow key. [0 ~ 0 / 0 / 0/step] • <i>Both numbers and alphabetic characters can be input.</i>
813*	HV_SC_Sens		
	1	HV_SC_Sens	Activates/deactivates detection of SC conditions for the high voltage power supplies. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] • 0: <i>Activated</i> • 1: <i>Deactivated</i> • <i>The following SCs are affected: SC300, 301, 302, 350, 351, 400, 410, 411, 412, 413, 420, 421, 430</i>
814*	Jam_OFF/ON		
	1	Jam_OFF/ON	Activates/deactivates jam detection. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] • 0: <i>Jam sensor activated</i> • 1: <i>Jam sensor deactivated</i>
816*	RMS Setting		
	1	RMS Setting	Enables/disables the RMS function. DFU [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] • 0: <i>Disable</i> • 1: <i>Enable</i>
828	Network		
	66	HD job Clear	Clears/prints the jobs spooled on the HDD (before the main power was turned off) after initialization. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] • 0: <i>Clears</i> • 1: <i>Prints</i>
	67	JobSpool(LPR)	Spools/does not spool jobs. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] • 0: <i>Does not spool</i> • 1: <i>Spools</i>
	68	JopSpool(IPP)	Spools/does not spool jobs. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] • 0: <i>Does not spool</i> • 1: <i>Spools</i>
832	HDD Init		
	1	HDD Init.	Initializes the hard disk. [0 ~ 0 / 0 / 0/step] <i>Use this SP mode only for hard disk error recovery.</i>

5	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
833*	JobLog ON/OFF	
	7	JobLog ON/OFF Saves the results of jobs in the job log. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1 /step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If this mode is enabled, the result data is written on the HDD. If no HDD is installed, this feature is disabled even if this SP is set to "enabled". • 0: Disabled • 1: Enabled
839	IEEE 1394	
	4	Device Name Displays the host name.
	7	Cycle Master Activates/deactivates the cycle master function. [0 ~ 1 / 1 / 1 /step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Deactivates • 1: Activates
	8	BCR mode Specifies the setting of the broadcast channel register (BCR). [0 ~ 3 / 3 / 1 /step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Does not operate until IRM writes data • 1: Wait awhile; copies the BCR of IRM if IRM does not write data • 2: (Reserved) • 3: Always validates the BCR
	9	IRM 1394a Check Executes/does not execute the 1394a check of IRM (1 bit). [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1 /step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Does not execute • 1: Executes
	10	Unique ID Shows/does not show node unique IDs. [0 ~ 1 / 1 / 1 /step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Does not show • 1: Shows
	11	Logout Specifies how the initiators are handled. [0 ~ 1 / 1 / 1 /step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Rejects the initiator if it tries to log in once again after having logged off • 1: Rejects the initiator if it tries to log on once again after having logged off; then forcefully makes the initiator log in
	12	Login Validates/invalidates exclusive logon processing. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1 /step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Invalidates exclusive logon processing • 1: Validates exclusive logon processing
	13	Login MAX Specifies the maximum number of initiators that are able to log on. [0 ~ 63 / 8 / 1 /step]
	IEEE 802.11b	
840	4	Current SSID Displays the current SSID.
	6	Channel Max Specifies the maximum number of channels. [0 ~ 14 / 0 / 1 /step]
	7	Channel Min Specifies the minimum number of channels. [0 ~ 14 / 0 / 1 /step]
	11	WEP key number Displays the WEP key number.



5	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
844	USB	
	1	TransferRate Specifies the transfer rate. • HS/FS Auto • FS Fixation
	2	Vendor ID Specifies the vendor ID. [0000 ~ FFFF / 05CA / 1 /step]
	3	Product ID Specifies the vendor ID. [0000 ~ FFFF / 0403 / 1 /step]
	4	DevReleaseNum (Device Release Number) Specifies the device release number. [0 ~ 9999 / 100 / 1 /step]
851	Bluetooth	
	1	Bluetooth Selects the Bluetooth mode. DFU • Public • Private
907	Plug/Play	
	1	Plug/Play Specifies the Plug and Play setting. [0 ~ 6 / 0 / 1 /step] • 0: Ricoh Asia & EU • 1: Ricoh US • 2: SAVIN • 3: GES • 4: NRG • 5: Infotec • 6: LANIER
930*	Meter_Charge	
	1	Meter_Charge Activates the meter charge function. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1 /step] • 0: Off • 1: On
931	PM_Display	
	1	Charger Specifies whether the PM warning for the charge corona unit is displayed when the replacement time arrives. • 1: Displayed • 0: Not displayed
	2	PCU Specifies whether the PM warning for the PCU is displayed when the replacement time arrives. • 1: Displayed • 0: Not displayed
	3	Bank_Feed Specifies whether the PM warning for the feed rollers in the optional paper feed unit is displayed when the replacement time arrives. • 1: Displayed • 0: Not displayed

5	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
955*	Test Pattern	
	1	Pattern Selects the test pattern. ⇒ Enable with SP2-917 (Test Pattern), then send a job from a PC or print an SMC list. [0 ~ 255 / 0 / 1 /step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Normal operation • 1: Vertical 1 dot & 1 line • 2: Horizontal 1 dot & 1 line • 3: Vertical 2 dots & 1 line • 4: Horizontal 2 dots & 1 line • 5: Grid – 1 dot & 1 line • 6: Grid – 1 dot & dual lines • 7: Independent dot pattern • 8: 2 independent dots pattern • 9: Black • 10: Belt pattern • 11: Trimmed area • 12: 2 dots & 1 trimmed area • 13: Slant grid • 14: 2 dots & a slant grid • 15: Horizontal (dots & a stitch pattern) • 16: Check Flag • 19: 4 independent dots • 20: Horizontal 1 dot & a line (LD 1/2 reversals) • 21: Grid – 1 dot & a line (LD 1/2 reversals) • 22: Grid – 1 dot & dual lines (LD 1/2 reversals) • 23: Independent 1 dot pattern (LD 1/2 reversals) • 24: 3 line gray scale • 25: Horizontal gray scale • 26: Vertical gray scale • 29: Horizontal gray scale extended • 30: Vertical gray scale extended • 31: Horizontal gray scale 600 dpi • 32: Vertical gray scale 600 dpi • 35: Horizontal gray scale with white spots • 36: Vertical gray scale with white spots • 38: Horizontal gray scale extended with white spots • 39: Vertical gray scale extended with white spots • 40: Horizontal gray scale 600 dpi with white spots • 41: Vertical gray scale 601 dpi with white spots • 43: White - for process evaluation • 50: Vertical stitch & dot pattern • 51: 2 beam density pattern • 52: Trimmed area & cross pattern • 53: Grid – 1 dot & 1 line (2) • 54: Grid – 1 dot & dual lines (2) • 55: Independent 2 dot pattern – 40 mm sub scan • 56: Independent 2 dot pattern – 102.5 mm sub scan • 57: Process control pattern Reset to 0 after finishing the tests.
	2	Density Adjusts the test pattern density [0 ~ 255 / 255 / 1 /step]

5	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
970	DebugSerial		
	1	DebugSerial	[0 ~ 0xff / 0x00 / 0 /step] DFU
990*	SP print mode		
	1	SP all print	Prints SP setting data. [0 ~ 255 / 0 / 0 /step] <ul style="list-style-type: none">• SP all print: All items printed out with SPs 5-990-2, -4, -6, and -7.• All: All SP mode settings• Non-Default: SP settings that have been changed from the defaults
	2	All	
	4	Loging	
	6	Non-Default	
	7	NIB Summry	
998	ColorAdjExe		
	1	ColorAdjExe	Executes charge corona wire cleaning and forced process control. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1 /step]

SP7-XXX: (Data Log)

7	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
003*	M/C Counter		
	1	P: Total	Displays the values of the color counters. [-3000 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1/step]
	7	P: B&W	[0 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1/step]
	8	P: Full Color	[0 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1/step]
	10	D: Color	[-3000 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1/step] <i>This SP mode is development counter for meter charge mode.</i>
	11	D: B&W	[-2000 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1/step] <i>This SP mode is development counter for meter charge mode.</i>
	20	P: Full color	[-1000 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1/step] <i>This SP mode is used for the Japanese market only.</i>
	21	P: B&W/Single	[-2000 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1/step] <i>This SP mode is used for the Japanese market only.</i>
	22	P: Single	[-2000 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1/step] <i>This SP mode is used for the Japanese market only.</i>
	23	P: B&W	[-2000 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1/step] <i>This SP mode is used for the Japanese market only.</i>
	25	P: Full Color	[-1000 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1/step] <i>This SP mode is used for the Japanese market only.</i>
	28	P: Color (except for B&W)	[-1000 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1/step] <i>This SP mode is print counters for meter charge mode. This SP mode is used in all markets.</i>
	29	P: B&W	[-2000 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1/step] <i>This SP mode is print counters for meter charge mode. This SP mode is used in all markets.</i>
	30	P: Color Total	[-1000 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1/step] <i>This SP mode is print counters for meter charge mode. This SP mode is used in all markets.</i>
007*	Other Counter		
	1	Duplex	Displays counter values. [0 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 0 sheet/step]
	2	A3/DLT/Over420	
	3	Staple	
101*	Size Counter		
	4	A3	Displays the counter values for each paper size. [0 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 0 sheet/step]
	5	A4	
	6	A5	
	13	B4	
	14	B5	
	32	11" x 17"	
	36	8 1/2" x 14"	
	38	8 1/2" x 11"	
	44	5 1/2" x 8 1/2"	
	128	Other	
106*	WasteTnrFull		
	1	OPC	Displays the waste toner bottle counter. [0 ~ 65535 / 0 / 1 /step]
	2	Belt	[0 ~ 65535 / 0 / 1 /step]

7	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
107*	OilCounter		
	1	EndCounter	Displays the oil supply unit counter. [0 ~ 65535 / 0 / 1 /step]
	2	NearEndCounter	
204*	Feed Counter		
	1	Tray1	Displays the number of sheets fed from each paper feed station. [0 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 0 sheet/step]
	2	Tray2	
	3	Tray3	
	5	By-pass	
	6	Duplex	
502*	Total Jam		
	1	Total Jam	Displays the total number of jams detected. [0 ~ 9999 / 0 / 0 /step]
504*	Jam Location		
	3	Tray1:NonFeed	Displays the number of jams according to the location. where they were detected. [0 ~ 9999 / 0 / 0 /step]
	4	Tray2:NonFeed	
	5	Tray3:NonFeed	
	6	Bypass:NonFeed	
	8	VerticalTrans1	
	9	VerticalTrans3	
	12	Regist.1	
	13	Regist.3	
	14	Fusing_Unit1	
	16	Exit1	
	17	Relay1	
	19	EntDuplex1	
	20	EntDuplex:Rev1	
	23	ExitDuplex1	
	40	Ent.Fin.	
	41	Exit_Fin.	
	42	Base_Fin.	
	52	Tray2: OFF	
	53	Tray3: OFF	
	58	VerticalTrans1	
	59	VerticalTrans2	
	60	VerticalTrans3	
	63	Regist.2	
	64	Regist.4	
	66	Exit2	
	67	Relay2	
	69	EntDuplex2	
	70	EntDuplex:Rev2	
	73	ExitDuplex2	
	100	Finisher entrance/Upper Mail box	
	101	Finisher Exit/Lower Mail box	
	102	Finisher Print removed	
	103	Finisher Base sensor	
	104	Finisher Staple Error	

7	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
504*	105	Finisher Tray Shift Error	Displays the number of jams according to the location. where they were detected. [0 ~ 9999 / 0 / 0 /step]
	106	Finisher Tray Lift Error	
	133	Finisher Exit: off	
506*	Jam Paper Size		Displays the number of jams according to paper size. [0 ~ 9999 / 0 / 1 /step]
	4	A3	
	5	A4	
	13	B4	
	14	B5	
	32	11" x 17"	
	36	8 1/2" x 14"	
	38	8 1/2" x 11"	
	44	5 1/2" x 8 1/2"	
	128	Other	
508*	Replace_Cnter		Displays how many times the parts/consumables have been replaced. [0 ~ 255 / 0 / 1 /step]
	1	PCU	
	2	Development: M	
	3	Development: C	
	4	Development: Y	
	5	Development: Bk	
	6	FusingUnit	
	7	Charger	
	8	Oil	
	9	WesteTnr: OPC	
	10	WesteTnr: Belt	
508*	11	Tonner: M	Displays how many times the parts/consumables have been replaced. [0 ~ 255 / 0 / 1 /step]
	12	Tonner: C	
	13	Tonner: Y	
	14	Tonner: Bk	
	15	Bank1_Feed	
	16	Bank2_Feed	
509*	Proc_Cont_Cnter		Displays the process control counter. [0 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1 /step]
	1	Proc_Cont_Cnter	
510*	Chgr_Cln_Cntr		Displays the charge corona unit cleaning counter. [0 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1 /step]
	1	Chgr_Cln_Cntr	

7	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
603*	Proc_ErrorLog	
	1 Log 1	Displays the process control error log. [0 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1 /step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 103: ID sensor unable to receive light Reasons: ID sensor failure or incorrect installation, BCU failure • 104: ID sensor unable to receive reflection Reasons: As for 103, plus: Uneven OPC belt surface, foreign material on OPC belt • 105: ID sensor unable to receive OPC reflection Reasons: As for 103, plus: Uneven OPC belt surface, foreign material on OPC belt • 110: ID sensor defective imaging – Cyan Reasons: Abnormal development bias, dirty bias terminal, development unit incorrectly installed, BCU failure • 111: ID sensor defective imaging – Magenta Reasons: As for 110 • 113: ID sensor defective imaging – Cyan Reasons: As for 110, plus: Laser writing failure, abnormal charge, loss of synchronization • 114: ID sensor defective imaging – Magenta Reasons: As for 110, plus: Laser writing failure, abnormal charge, loss of synchronization • 115: ID sensor defective imaging – Yellow Reasons: As for 110, plus: Laser writing failure, abnormal charge, loss of synchronization • 116: ID sensor defective imaging – Black Reasons: As for 110 • 118: Black not detected Reasons: As for 110 • 123: ID sensor defective imaging – Black Reasons: As for 110, plus: Laser writing failure, abnormal charge, loss of synchronization
	2 Log 2	
	3 Log 3	
803*	PM_Counter	
	1 PCU	Displays the number of sheets printed for each current unit. [0 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For clearing the counters, see SP7-804.
	2 Development: M	
	3 Development: C	
	4 Development: Y	
	5 Development: Bk	
	6 FusingUnit	
	7 Charger	
	8 Bank1_Feed	
	9 Bank2_Feed	
804	PM_Clear	
	6 FusingUnit	Clears the PM counters. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1 /step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For displaying the counter, see SP7-803.
	7 Charger	
	8 Bank1_Feed	
	9 Bank2_Feed	
	100 AllReset	

7	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
807	SC/Jam Clear		
	1	SC/Jam Clear	Clears the counters related to SC codes and paper jams. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 0 /step]
808	Counter Clear		
	1	Counter Clear	Clears all counters except for SP7-003 and -007. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 0 /step]
816	Tray Clear		
	1	Tray1	Clears the tray counters (SP7-204). [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 0 /step]
	2	Tray2	
	3	Tray3	
	5	BypassTray	
	6	Duplex	
819	OilCntRst		
	1	OilCntRst	Resets the oil counter values to "0." [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 0 /step] • 0: Does not clear • 1: Clears
825	Counter Reset		
	1	Counter Reset	Resets the total counter values to "0." [0 ~ 0 / 0 / 0 /step]
832*	Diag. Result		
	1	Diag. Result	Displays the result of the diagnostics. Refer to section 4.2 for the error codes. [0 ~ 0 / 0 / 0 /step]
833	Coverage		
	1	Last:M	Displays coverage ratios. [0.00 ~ 100.0 / 0.00 / 0.01 %step] <i>This SP mode displays the "coverage ratio" of the output, i.e. the ratio of the total pixel area of the image data to the total printable area on the paper.</i>
	2	Last:C	
	3	Last:Y	
	4	Last:Bk	
	5	Average: M	<i>Do not use this counter for billing purposes. This is because this value is not directly proportional to the amount of toner consumed, although of course it is one factor that affects this amount. The other major factors involved include: the type, total image area and image density of the original, toner concentration and developer potential.</i> <i>Last: This is the coverage for the previous sheet.</i> <i>Average: This is the average coverage for each sheet.</i>
	6	Average: C	
	7	Average: Y	
	8	Average: Bk	
834	TnrConsume		
	1	M	Displays the coverage ratios, including toner revitalization mode. [0 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1 /step] <i>This displays the average coverage ratio, including toner consumed during printing and toner consumed during toner revitalization mode (SP3-971).</i> <i>Do not use this counter for billing purposes</i>
	2	C	
	3	Y	
	4	Bk	

7	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
835	HighDutyCnt		Used for the toner revitalization process (SP3-971). Counts the number of developments made during the past 12 hours.
	1	M	
	2	C	
	3	Y	
	4	Bk	
836	Total Memory		Displays the memory capacity in the controller system.
	1	Total Memory	
850	P/J		Print per job counters are displayed.
	1	P/J(1)	
	2	P/J(2)	
	3	P/J(3)	
	4	P/J(4)	
	5	P/J(5)	
	6	P/J(6–10)	
	7	P/J(11–20)	
	8	P/J(21–)	
901	Assert Info (Assert Information)		Records the location where the last problem (SC990) was detected in the program. The data stored in this SP is used for problem analysis. [0 ~ 0 / 0 / 0 /step]
	1	File Name	
	2	# of Lines	
	3	Location	
906*	PMCounter-PREV		Displays the counters for the previous units. [0 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1 /step]
	1	PCU	
	2	Development: M	
	3	Development: C	
	4	Development: Y	
	5	Development: Bk	
	6	FusingUnit	
	7	Charger	
	8	Oil	
	9	WasteTnr: OPC	
	10	WasteTnr: Belt	
	11	Toner: M	
	12	Toner: C	
	13	Toner: Y	
	14	Toner: Bk	
	15	Bank1_Feed	
	16	Bank2_Feed	
	17	Development: M	
	18	Development: C	
	19	Development: Y	
	20	Development: Bk	
	21	PCU	
	22	FusingUnit	
910	Firmware PN		Displays the part numbers. [0 ~ 0 / 0 / 0 /step]
	1	System	
	2	Engine	
	7	Finisher	
	9	Bank1	
	11	Mail Box	

7	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
910	13	Duplex	Displays the part numbers. [0 ~ 0 / 0 / 0 /step]
	18	NIB	
	19	Bank2	
	150	RPCS	
	151	PS	
	152	RPDL	
	153	R98	
	154	R16	
	155	RPGL	
	156	R55	
	157	RTIFF	
	158	PCL	
	159	PCLXL	
	160	MSIS	
	161	MSIS(OPTION)	
	200	Factory	
	204	Printer	
	209	Test	
	210	MIB	
911*	Firmware Version		Displays the firmware versions. [0 ~ 0 / 0 / 0 /step]
	1	Controller	
	2	Engine	
	7	Finisher	
	9	Bank1	
	11	Mail Box	
	13	Duplex	
	18	NIB	
	19	Bank2	
	150	RPCS	
	151	PS	
	152	RPDL	
	153	R98	
	154	R16	
	155	RPGL	
	156	R55	
	157	RTIFF	
	158	PCL	
	159	PCLXL	
	160	MSIS	
	161	MSIS(OPTION)	
	200	Factory	
	204	Printer	
	209	Test	
	210	MIB	
920	PM Interval		Adjusts the PM interval for each unit. [60 ~ 120 / 120 / 5/step]
	1	Fusing Unit	
	3	Charger	
	4	PCU	
	5	Development (K)	
	6	Development (MCY)	

7	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
930	PM counter correction		A unit can be replaced before its PM counter reaches the predicted value (➡ 2.2). In this case the PM counter is automatically set to "0." When you want the PM counter to take over the previous value, the counter value of the old unit can be input. After inputting the value of this SP mode, turn the main switch off and on.
	1	Development:M	
	2	Development:C	
	3	Development:Y	
	4	Development:Bk	
	5	PCU	

Input Check Table

The SP numbers do not appear on the screen. Just scroll through the menu with the up/down arrow keys until the required item appears on the display.

SP5-803 -XXX		Description	Reading	
			0	1
1	Tray1	Tray set (standard tray)	Set	Not set
2	Tray1PaperEnd	Paper end sensor (standard tray)	End	Not end
3	Tray1NearEnd	Paper near-end sensor (standard tray)	Not near end	Near end
4	Tray1PaperSize	Paper size sensor (standard tray)	(See table 1.)	
5	RegistSensor	Registration sensor	Detected	Not detected
6	V Trans Sensor	Paper feed sensor	Detected	Not detected
7	ExitSensor	Exit sensor	Detected	Not detected
8	ExitFull	Paper overflow sensor	Full	Not full
9	ExitCover	Exit cover switch	Closed	Open
10	IntChngSensor	Interchange unit exit sensor	Detected	Not detected
11	By-passPaper	By-pass paper end sensor	Detected	Not detected
12	By-passSet	By-pass tray set	Not set	Set
13	FusingUSet	Fusing unit set	Set	Not set
14	OilEnd	Oil supply unit empty	End	Not end
17	TonerEnd: M	Toner end sensor: M	Not end	End
18	TonerEnd: C	Toner end sensor: C	Not end	End
19	TonerEnd: Y	Toner end sensor: Y	Not end	End
20	TonerEnd: K	Toner end sensor: K	Not end	End
21	TonerCart. M	Toner cartridge memory chip: M	Not set	Set
22	TonerCart. C	Toner cartridge memory chip: C	Not set	Set
23	TonerCart. Y	Toner cartridge memory chip: Y	Not set	Set
24	TonerCart. K	Toner cartridge memory chip: K	Not set	Set
27	WasteToner OPC	OPC belt waste toner sensor	Full	Not full
28	W.T.Bottle OPC	OPC belt waste toner bottle switch	Set	Not set
31	BeltMark	Belt mark sensor	Not detected	Detected
32	PCUNew	New PCU sensor	Not new	New
33	WasteToner Blt	Transfer belt waste toner sensor	Full	Not full
34	W.T.Bottle Blt	Transfer belt waste toner bottle switch	Set	Not set
35	LD5VCover	Interlock switch	Closed	Open
36	LeftCover	"Close Left Cover" status	Closed	Open
37	RightCover	Right cover	Closed	Open
38	FrontCover	Front cover	Closed	Open
39	Cover 24V	Interlock switch (24V)	Closed	Open
41	I'changeUnit	Interchange unit	Set	Not set

SP5-803 -XXX		Description	Reading	
			0	1
42	DevMotorLock	Development motor lock	Locked	Not locked
43	OpcMotorLock	Main motor lock	Locked	Not locked
44	PfdMotorLock	Paper feed motor lock	Locked	Not locked
45	PolyMotorLock	Polygon motor lock	Locked	Not locked
46	FusingSensor	Fusing exit	Detected	Not detected
55	DplxConnect	Duplex unit	Not connected	Connected
56	Bank1Connect	1st optional paper tray	Not connected	Connected
57	Bank2Connect	2nd optional paper tray	Not connected	Connected
58	ExitOptConnect	Exit Option Connection	Not connected	Connected
60	Fin.EntSensor	Finisher: Entrance sensor	Not detected	Detected
61	Fin.ExitSensor	Finisher: Exit sensor	Not detected	Detected
62	Fin.HPSensor	Finisher: Jogger HP sensor	Not positioned	Positioned
63	Fin.TopCover	Finisher: Top cover sensor	Closed	Open
64	Fin.PaperHgt.	Finisher: Stack height sensor	Lever is lowered	Lever is raised
65	Fin.Upper	Finisher: Tray upper limit sensor	Not uppermost	Uppermost
66	Fin.NearFull	Finisher: Stack near-limit sensor	Not near limit	Near limit
67	Fin.StplCover	Finisher: Stapler cover	Closed	Open
68	Fin.StplHP	Finisher: Stapler HP sensor	Not at HP	At HP
69	Fin.StplEmpty	Finisher: Staple end	Detected	Not detected
70	Fin.StplCtrg	Finisher: Staple cartridge	Not detected	Detected
71	Fin.StplLock	Finisher: Stapler unit lock	Not locked	Locked
72	Fin.BaseSensor	Finisher: Base sensor	Not detected	Detected
73	Fin.BaseCover	Finisher: Right cover switch	Closed	Open
74	Fin.PaperPress	Finisher: Lever sensor	Lever is raised	Lever is lowered
80	4binFeedSens1	Mailbox: Lower vertical transport sensor	Paper present	No paper
81	4binFeedSens2	Mailbox: Upper vertical transport sensor	Paper present	No paper
84	4binFullSens1	Mailbox: Tray 1 overflow	Not full	Full
85	4binFullSens2	Mailbox: Tray 2 overflow	Not full	Full
86	4binFullSens3	Mailbox: Tray 3 overflow	Not full	Full
87	4binFullSens4	Mailbox: Tray 4 overflow	Not full	Full
88	4binPaperSens1	Mailbox: Tray 1 paper	Detected	Not detected
89	4binPaperSens2	Mailbox: Tray 2 paper	Detected	Not detected
90	4binPaperSens3	Mailbox: Tray 3 paper	Detected	Not detected
91	4binPaperSens4	Mailbox: Tray 4 paper	Detected	Not detected
92	4binDoorSens	Mailbox: Door safety sw.	Open	Closed
100	BankFeedSens1	1st optional tray: Relay sensor	No paper	Paper present
101	BankFeedSens2	2nd optional tray: Relay sensor	No paper	Paper present

SP5-803 -XXX		Description	Reading	
			0	1
102	BankCover1	1st optional tray: Right cover (vertical guide switch)	Closed	Open
103	BankCover2	2nd optional tray: Right cover (vertical guide switch)	Closed	Open
104	Bank1Set	1st optional tray: Set	Not set	Set
105	Bank2Set	2nd optional tray: Set	Not set	Set
106	Bank1PaperEnd	1st optional tray: Paper end	Not end	End
107	Bank2PaperEnd	2nd optional tray: Paper end	Not end	End
108	Bank1PaperSize	1st optional tray: Paper size	(See table 2.)	
109	Bank2PaperSize	2nd optional tray: Paper size		
110	Bank1NearEnd	1st optional tray: Paper height	(See table 3.)	
111	Bank2NearEnd	2nd optional tray: Paper height		
120	DplxEntSens	Duplex: Entrance sensor	Not detected	Detected
121	DplxExitSens	Duplex: Exit sensor	Detected	Not detected
122	DplxOpen	Duplex unit open switch	Closed	Open
123	DplxCover	Duplex cover sensor	Open	Closed

Table 1: Tray 1 Paper Size

Switch	North America	Europe/Asia	Value
0000	LG SEF*	B4 SEF*	00000000
0001	DLT SEF**	A3 SEF**	00100000
0010	B5 LEF	B5 LEF	00010000
0011	B5 SEF****	B5 SEF****	00110000
0100	LT LEF***	A4 LEF***	00001000
0101	HLT LEF	A5 LEF	00101000
0110	A4 SEF	A4 SEF	00011000
0111	LT SEF	LT SEF	00111000

* : Selected with SP1-902-1 [PaperSize - B4/LG], (LG SEF/B4 SEF)

** : Selected with SP1-902-2 [PaperSize - A3/DT], (DLT SEF/A3 SEF)

*** : Selected with SP1-902-3 [PaperSize - A4/LT], (LT LEF/A4 LEF)

**** : Selected with SP1-902-4 [PaperSize - B5/Executive], (B5 SEF/10.5" x 7.25" SEF)

0: pushed

1: not pushed

Table 2: 1st/2nd Bank Paper Size

The paper size is displayed in the ASAP paper size code. For example, 000001001 (0x05) is displayed for A4 LEF.

Size	North America	Europe/Asia	Code
A3 SEF	Detected	Detected	10000100
B4 SEF	None	Detected	10100100
A4 SEF	None	Detected	10100110
A4 LEF	Detected	Detected	00000101
B5 LEF	Detected	Detected	00001110
A5 LEF	None	Detected	00101100
DLT SEF	Detected	Detected	10100000
LG SEF	Detected	None	10100100
LT SEF	Detected	None	10100110
LT LEF	Detected	Detected	00100110
HLT LEF	Detected	None	00101100

Table 3: 1st/2nd Bank Near End

Remaining paper	Paper height sensor 2	Paper height sensor 1	Code
Full	ON	ON	01100100
Nearly full	OFF	ON	00110010
Near end	OFF	OFF	00001010

Output Check Table

The SP numbers do not appear on the screen. Just scroll through the menu with the up/down arrow keys until the required item appears on the display.

SP5-804 -XXX		Description
1	PF Mtr:89mm/s	Paper feed motor: 89 mm/s
2	PF Mtr:178mm/s	Paper feed motor: 178 mm/s
3	PF Mtr:240mm/s	Paper feed motor: 240 mm/s
4	PF CL (1)	Paper feed clutch (standard tray)
6	FusingMtr	Fusing unit motor
7	FusingMtr: Half	Fusing unit motor: Half Speed
8	FusingFan: High	Fusing unit fan: High speed
9	FusingFan: Low	Fusing unit fan: Low speed
12	Regist CL	Registration clutch
13	I'changeSol1	Upper gate solenoid
14	I'changeSol2	Lower gate solenoid
15	By-pass CL	By-pass paper feed clutch
16	Pick-up SOL	By-pass pick-up solenoid
17	GAPCISleepMode	GAPCIS Sleep Mode Trigger Signal
18	QL/TonerEnd	QL/Toner End
19	DevCl: M	Development clutch: M
20	DevCl: C	Development clutch: C
21	DevCl: Y	Development clutch: Y
22	DevCl: K	Development clutch: K
23	DevMtr	Development motor
24	DevMtr: Half	Development motor: Half Speed
25	DevMtr: Rev	Development motor: Reverse
26	DevMtr: RevHalf	Development motor: Reverse Half Speed
27	Lub. Cl	OPC belt cleaning clutch
28	IDsensLED	ID sensor LED
29	OPCMtr	Main motor: Regular Speed
30	OPCMtr: Half	Main motor: Half Speed
31	OPCMtr: Rev	Main motor: Reverse
32	OPCMtr: RevHalf	Main motor: Reverse Half Speed
33	PolygonMtr	Polygon motor
34	LD	LD
35	PaperTransSol	Paper transfer solenoid
36	BeltClnCl	Transfer belt cleaning clutch
37	EngineReady	Engine Ready
39	GAVDReset	GAVD Reset
40	BeltClnSol	Transfer belt cleaning contact solenoid
45	PolyMtr+LD	Polygon Motor + LD
46	Forced Lub.	Forced Lubrication to OPC belt
47	OzonFan	Ozone Fan
48	Fan3	3rd Fan (Not Used)
49	TonerEnd	Toner End LED
50	Charger	Charge corona unit output
51	Dev.Bias: KY	Development bias: K

SP5-804 -XXX		Description
52	Dev.Bias: CM	Development bias: MCY
53	Trans. Belt	Image transfer power supply
54	PaperTrans.: P	Paper transfer: +
55	PaperTrans.: N	Paper transfer: –
56	BeltCln: P	Image transfer belt cleaning: +
57	FusingBias	Fusing bias
58	QuenchingBias: L	Discharge pin power supply: L
59	QuenchingBias: H	Discharge pin power supply: H
60	Fin.AllOff	Finisher All Off
61	Fin.FeedMtr	Finisher: Main motor
62	Fin.JoggerMtr	Finisher: Jogger motor
63	Fin.PdlSol1	Finisher: Paddle roller solenoid
64	Fin.PEUSol1	Finisher: Exit unit gear solenoid
65	Fin.LeverSol	Finisher: Stack height lever solenoid
66	Fin.TrayMtr	Finisher: Output tray motor
67	Fin.StplMtr	Finisher: Stapler motor
68	Fin.FreeRun	Finisher: Free run
80	4bin AllOff	Mailbox: All Off
81	4bin Motor	Mailbox: Main motor
82	4bin SOL1	Mailbox: Turn gate solenoid 1
83	4bin SOL2	Mailbox: Turn gate solenoid 2
84	4bin SOL3	Mailbox: Turn gate solenoid 3
85	4bin FreeRun	Mailbox: Free run
100	BankCl1	1st optional paper tray unit: Paper feed clutch
101	BankCl2	2nd optional paper tray unit: Paper feed clutch
102	Bank1Mtr	1st optional paper tray unit: Paper feed motor
103	Bank1Mtr: Half	1st optional paper tray unit: Paper feed motor - half speed
104	Bank1Mtr: High	1st optional paper tray unit: Paper feed motor - high speed
105	Bank2Mtr	2nd optional paper tray unit: Paper feed motor
106	Bank2Mtr: Half	2nd optional paper tray unit: Paper feed motor - half speed
107	Bank2Mtr: High	2nd optional paper tray unit: Paper feed motor - high speed
108	"Bank1,2Half"	1st and 2nd optional paper tray units: Half speed
109	"Bank1,2Mtr"	1st and 2nd optional paper tray units: Paper feed motor
120	DplxRevMtr	Duplex: Inverter motor
121	DplxRevMtrRev	Duplex: Inverter motor - reverse
122	DplxFeedMtr	Duplex: Transport motor
123	DplxFeedMtrRev	Duplex: Transport motor - reverse
124	DplxSol	Duplex: Inverter gate solenoid
125	DplxFreeRun	Duplex: Free run

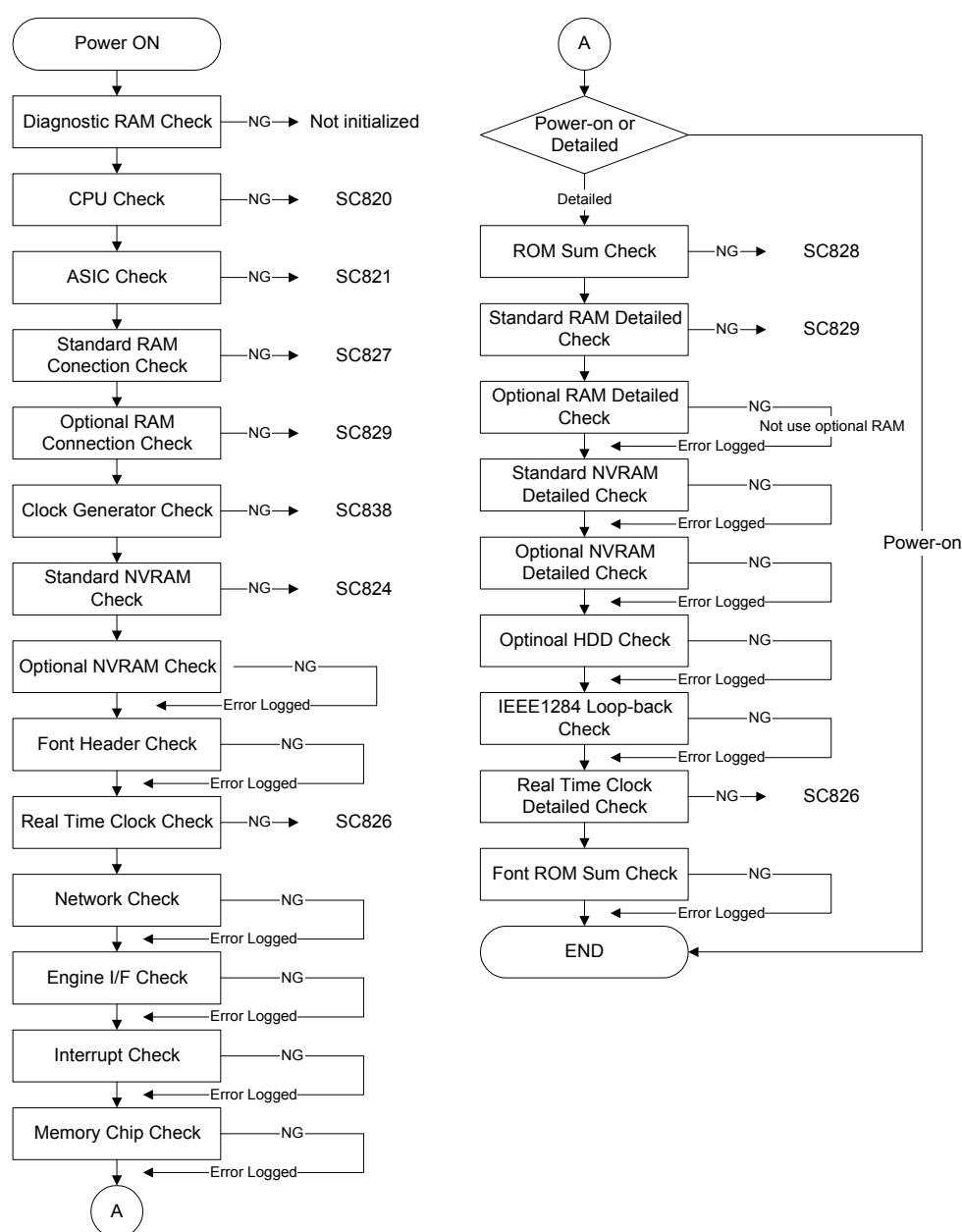
5.3 CONTROLLER SELF-DIAGNOSTICS

5.3.1 OVERVIEW

There are three types of self-diagnostics for the controller.

- Power-on self-diagnostics: The machine automatically starts the self-diagnostics just after the power has been turned on.
- Detailed self-diagnostics: The machine does the detailed self-diagnostics by using a loop-back connector (P/N G0219350)
- SC detection: The machine automatically detects SC conditions at power-on or during operation.

The following shows the workflow of the power-on and detailed self-diagnostics.



5.3.2 DETAILED SELF-DIAGNOSTICS

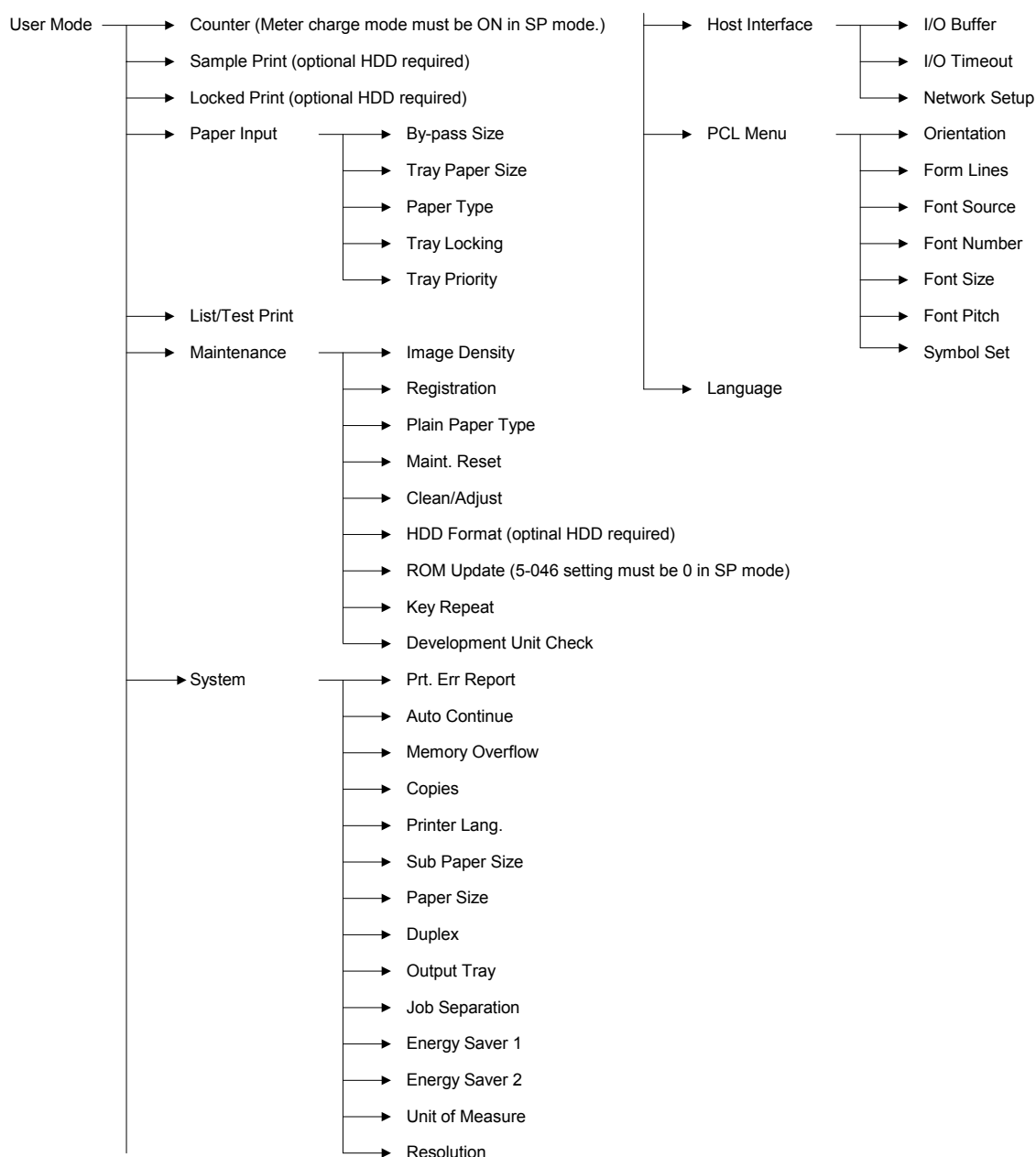
This detailed self-diagnostic test requires a loop-back connector (P/N: G0219350).

1. Turn off the machine and attach the loop-back connector to the parallel interface.
2. Turn on the machine while pressing the “Online” key and “# Enter” key together.
3. The machine automatically starts the self-diagnostics and prints the diagnostic report after completing the test.
 - Refer to the diagnostics report for the detected errors. The errors detected during self-diagnostics can be checked with SP7-832-001 (Diag. Result).
 - Refer to section 4.2 for details about the error codes.

5.4 USER PROGRAM MODE

To activate the user program mode, press the menu key and use the up/down arrow keys to scroll through the menu. To go back to a higher level, press the escape key. After changing the settings, press the online key. The user menu list can be printed using 'menu list' in the "List/Test Print" user mode.

User Mode Tree



5.5 UPGRADING SOFTWARE

CAUTION

1. Before upgrading the software, print out the system settings and check the current software versions.
2. Check that your IC card contains a later version of the software.
Machine performance is not guaranteed if you install an older version.

NOTE: Open the front cover when upgrading the firmware. This is to prevent the printer from going in the process control session.

5.5.1 OVERVIEW

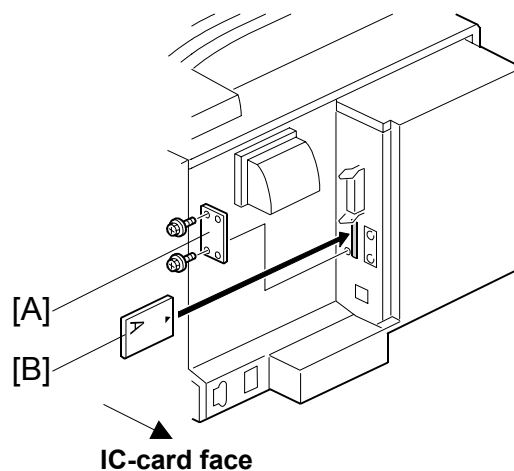
You can upgrade the following software modules:

- Engine software (BCU board software) – 1 card
- Controller system software (Controller board software) – 2 cards (no special order required)
- Network card system software – 1 card

5.5.2 UPGRADING

Procedure

1. Turn the main switch off.
2. IC card cover [A] (⚠ x 2)
3. Insert the IC card [B].



4. Open the front cover and turn the main switch on. The message on the right appears on the operation panel.

Engine

5. Press the enter key.

Engine

*

6. Press the down arrow key.

Update Data

7. Press the enter key.

Updating...

8. Wait until the message on the right appears on the operation panel.

Updated

Power Off On

9. Turn the main switch off.

10. Remove the IC card.

11. If upgrading two or more software modules, insert the next IC card and repeat the steps above.

12. Put back the IC card cover.

13. Turn the main switch on.

Error Recovery***Installation Error***

If the software upgrade is unsuccessful, “NG!” or “ERR” appears on the operation panel. When either of the messages is output, do the following:

- 1) Turn the main switch off.
- 2) Check that the IC card is correctly inserted.
- 3) Turn the main switch on.
- 4) Start upgrading software from the beginning.

Power Failure

If the power supply is interrupted, an error code may appear on the operation panel. Then, do the following:

- 1) Turn the main switch off.
- 2) Failure during BCU firmware download: Turn DIP switch 1 on the BCU board to ON
Failure during controller, emulation, or network firmware download: Turn DIP switch 1 on the controller board to ON
- 3) Turn the main switch on.
- 4) Start upgrading software from the beginning.
- 5) Turn the DIP switch off again after finishing.

5.6 DIP SWITCHES

Controller Board

DIP SW No.	OFF	ON
1	Boot-up from machine	Boot-up from IC card
2 to 4	Factory Use Only: Keep these switches OFF.	

If a download attempt failed, you must boot the machine from the IC card. To do this, set DIP SW 1 on the controller board to ON.

BCU Board

DIP SW No.	OFF	ON
1	Boot-up from machine	Boot-up from IC card
2 to 4	Factory Use Only: Keep these switches OFF.	

If a download attempt failed, you must boot the machine from the IC card. To do this, set DIP SW 1 on the BCU board to ON.

5.7 PRINTING A TEST PATTERN

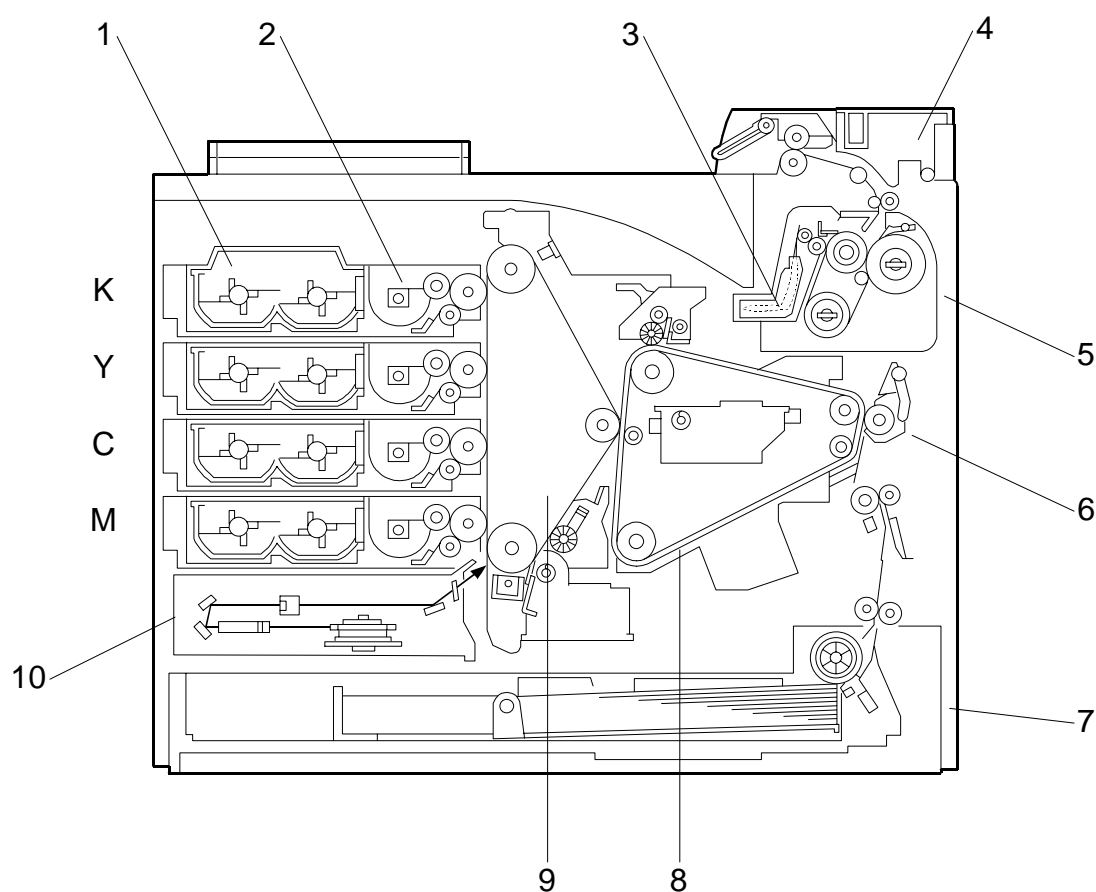
1. Use SP5-955-1 (Test Pattern – Pattern) to select the pattern that you wish to print.
2. Enable test pattern printing by setting SP2-917 (Test Pattern) to 'On'.
3. To print the test pattern, send a one-page job to the printer, or print an SMC list (try using SP5-990-6, SP Print mode – Non default).
4. After finishing the test patterns, return SP2-917 (Test Pattern) to 'Off', or switch the machine off/on

DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS

6. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS

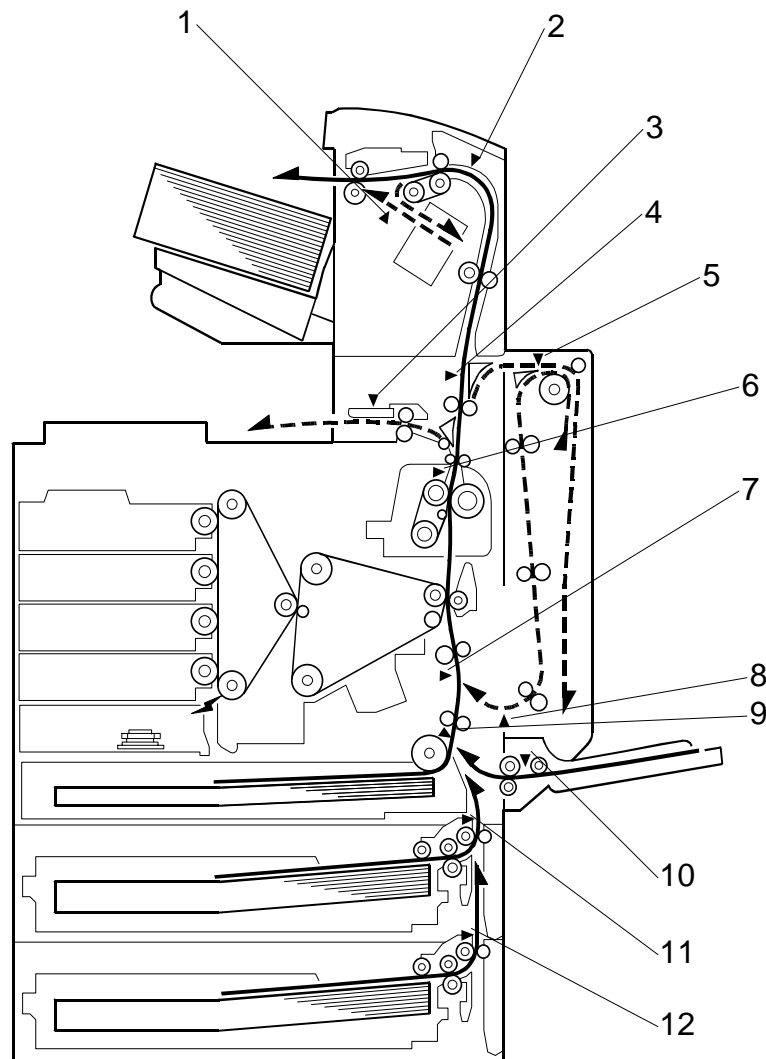
6.1 OVERVIEW

6.1.1 MAJOR COMPONENTS



- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Toner cartridge | 6. Transfer roller unit |
| 2. Development unit | 7. Paper tray |
| 3. Oil supply unit | 8. Transfer belt |
| 4. Paper exit unit | 9. OPC belt unit |
| 5. Fusing unit | 10. Laser optics unit |

6.1.2 PAPER PATH



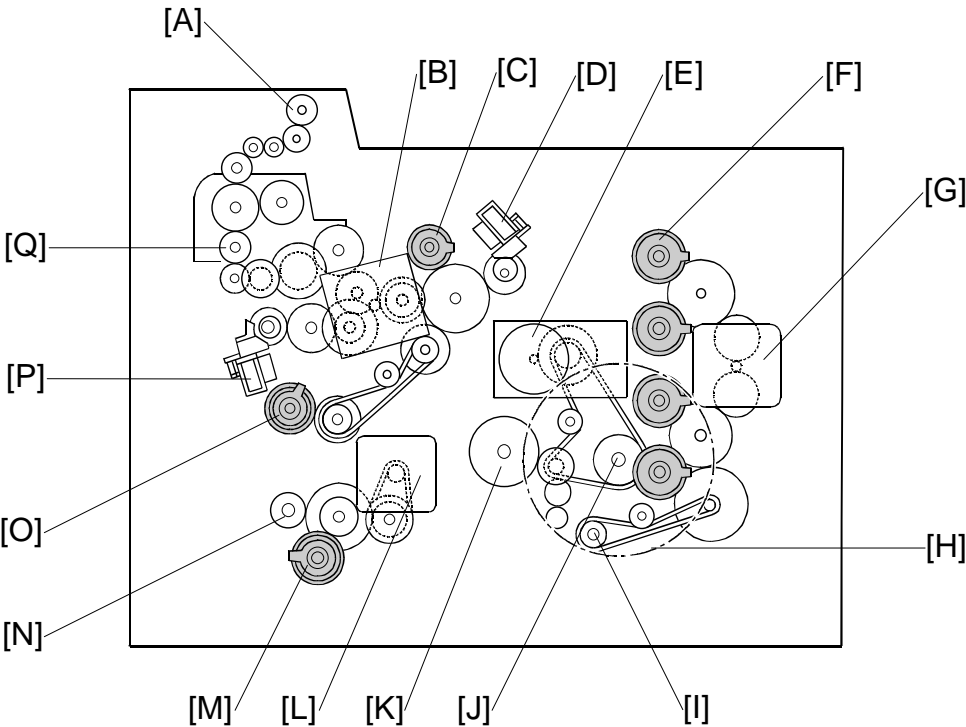
- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Finisher exit sensor | 7. Registration sensor |
| 2. Finisher feed sensor | 8. Duplex unit exit sensor |
| 3. Exit sensor (main unit) | 9. Paper feed sensor |
| 4. Exit sensor (interchange unit) | 10. Bypass tray feed sensor |
| 5. Duplex unit feed sensor | 11. 1st paper tray unit feed sensor |
| 6. Fusing exit sensor | 12. 2nd paper tray unit feed sensor |

The illustration shows a machine with the following equipment:

- Two paper tray units
- Interchange unit
- Duplex unit
- 500-sheet finisher

6.1.3 DRIVE COMPONENTS

This is a rear view of the machine.



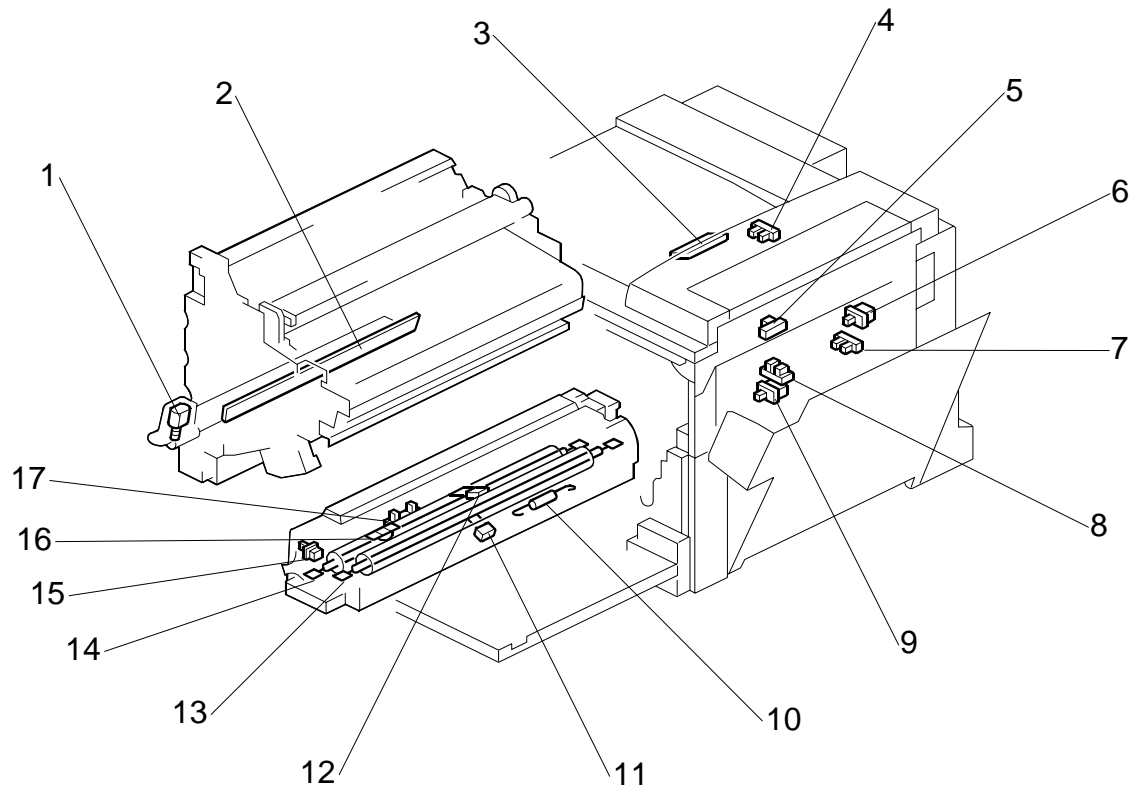
Motor name	Motor type	Drives ...
Development [G]	DC brushless	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Development units ^{*1}• OPC belt cleaning unit [I] ^{*2}
Main [E]	DC brushless	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• OPC belt [J] ^{*3}• Transfer belt [K]
Fusing Unit [B]	DC brushless	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Fusing unit [Q]• Paper exit unit [A]• Transfer belt cleaning unit ^{*4}• Registration roller ^{*5}• Paper transfer roller• Transfer belt cleaning unit contact mechanism ^{*6}• Paper transfer roller contact mechanism ^{*7}
Paper Feed [L]	Stepper	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Paper pick-up roller ^{*8}• Vertical transport roller [N]

^{*1}: Drive delivered through the development clutches [F]
^{*2}: Drive delivered through the OPC belt cleaning clutch (not shown here).
^{*3}: Stabilized by the flywheel [H]
^{*4}: Drive delivered through the transfer belt cleaning clutch [C]
^{*5}: Drive delivered through the registration clutch [O]
^{*6}: Drive delivered through the belt cleaning contact solenoid [D]
^{*7}: Drive delivered through the paper transfer solenoid [P]
^{*8}: Drive delivered through the paper feed clutch [M]

Detailed
Descriptions

6.1.4 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

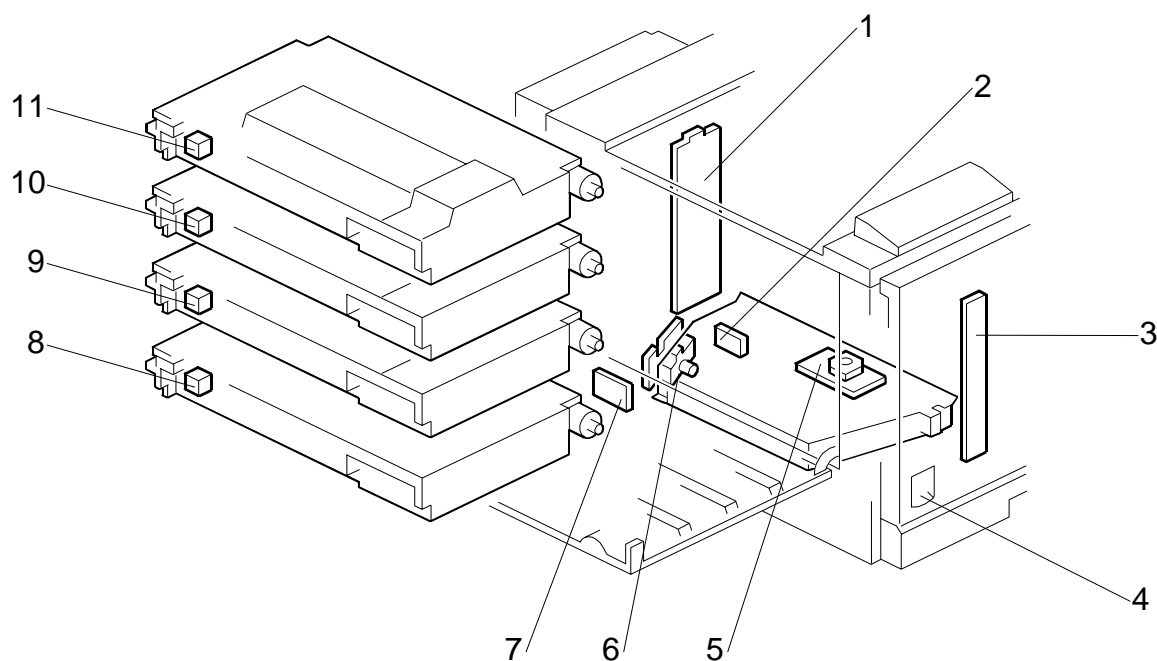
Image Transfer



- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Charge corona wire cleaner motor | 10. Pressure roller thermofuse |
| 2. Quenching lamp | 11. Pressure roller thermistor |
| 3. ID sensor | 12. Heating roller thermistor |
| 4. New PCU sensor | 13. Pressure roller fusing lamp |
| 5. Belt mark sensor | 14. Heating roller fusing lamp |
| 6. T/B waste toner bottle switch | 15. Oil unit switch |
| 7. T/B waste toner sensor | 16. Heating roller thermostat |
| 8. O/B waste toner sensor | 17. Oil end sensor |
| 9. O/B waste toner bottle switch | |

T/B: Transfer belt

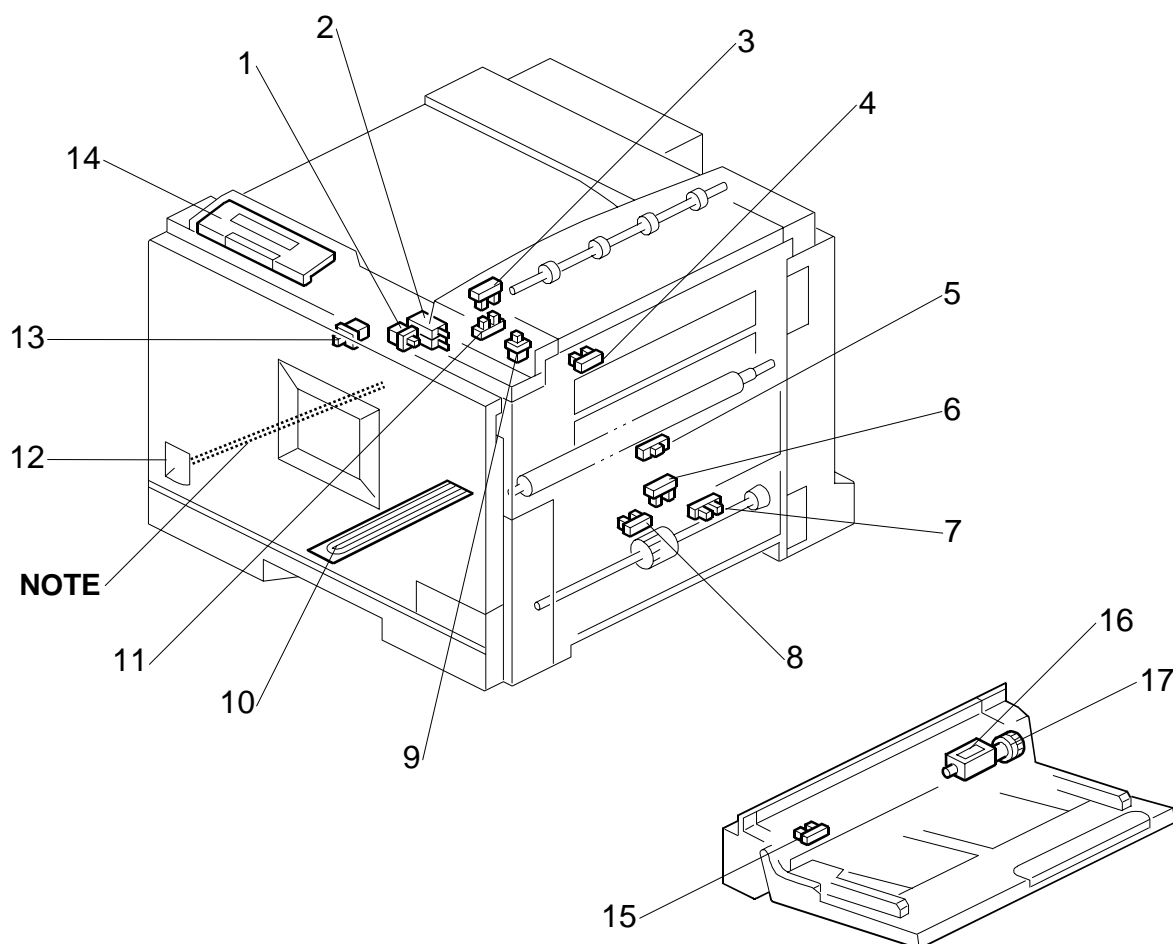
O/B: OPC belt

Development Units

- 1. Rear development board
- 2. Laser sync. detection board
- 3. Front development board
- 4. Main switch
- 5. Polygonal mirror motor
- 6. LD unit

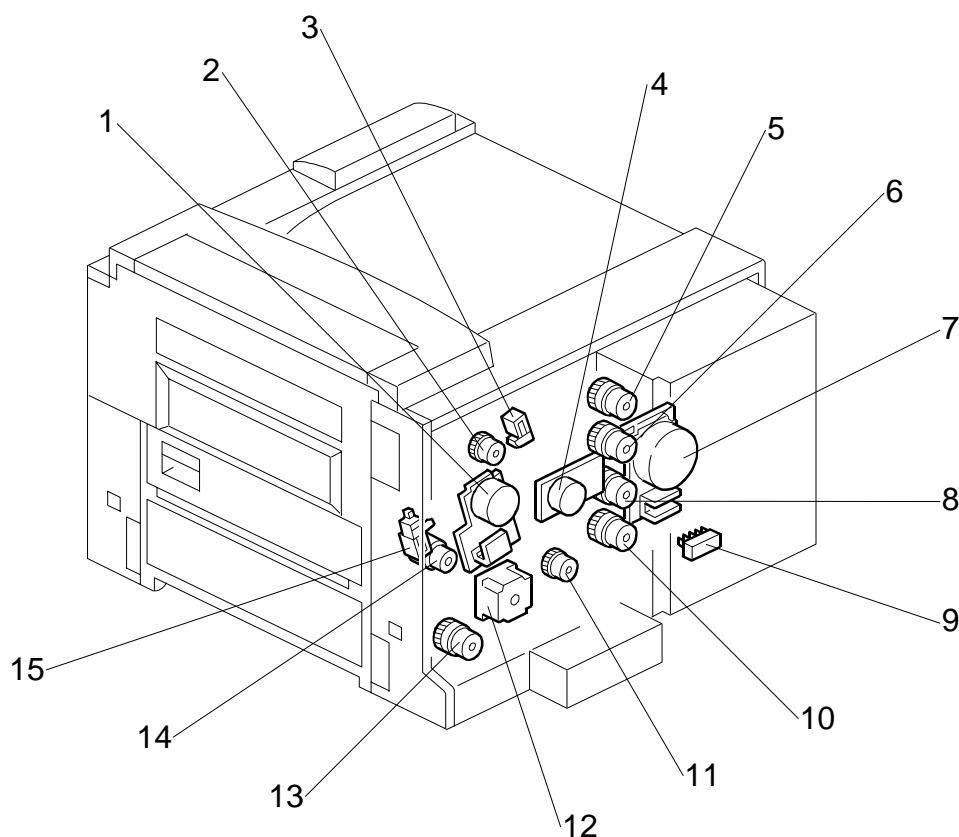
- 7. Memory chip I/F
- 8. Memory chip M
- 9. Memory chip C
- 10. Memory chip Y
- 11. Memory chip K

Detailed
Descriptions

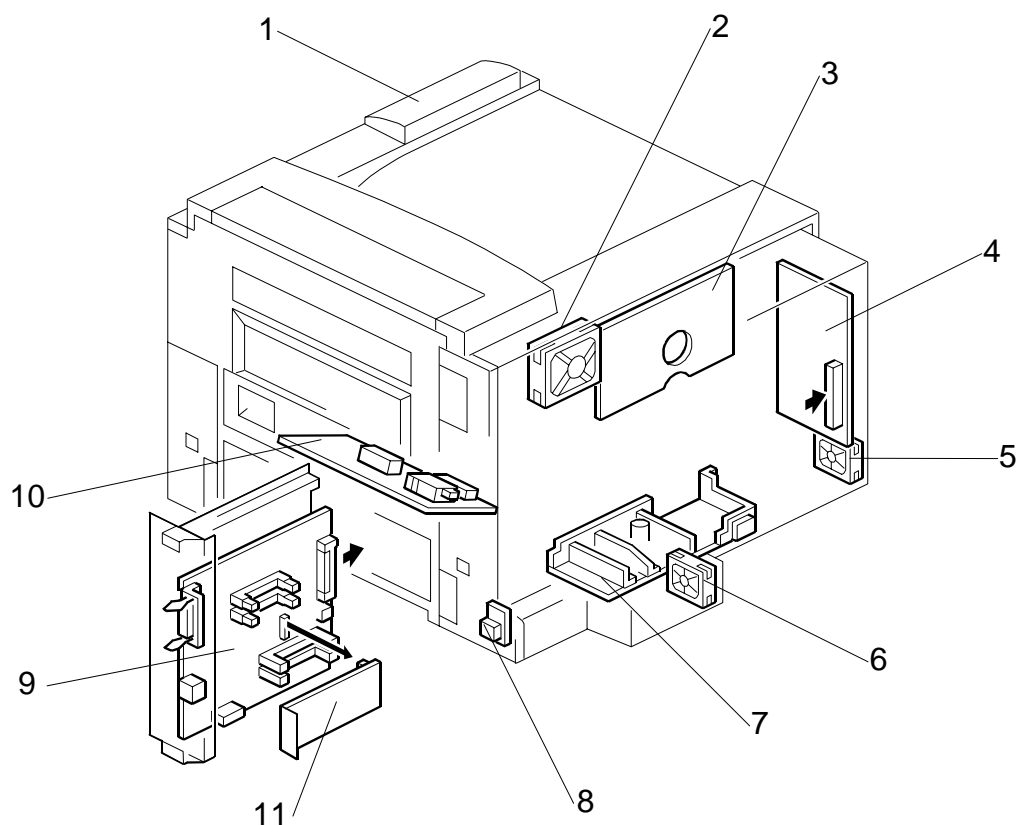
Paper Path

- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| 1. Right cover switch | 10. Tray heater (option) |
| 2. Interlock switch | 11. Paper exit sensor |
| 3. Paper overflow sensor | 12. Main switch (See the Note after the table) |
| 4. Fusing exit sensor | 13. Front cover switch |
| 5. Registration sensor | 14. Operation panel |
| 6. Paper feed sensor | 15. By-pass paper end sensor |
| 7. Paper near-end sensor | 16. By-pass pick-up solenoid |
| 8. Paper end sensor | 17. By-pass paper feed clutch |
| 9. Exit cover switch | |

NOTE: Main Switch: The red switch at the front of the machine is connected to a switch on the PSU with a mechanical link (➡ 3.3.5).

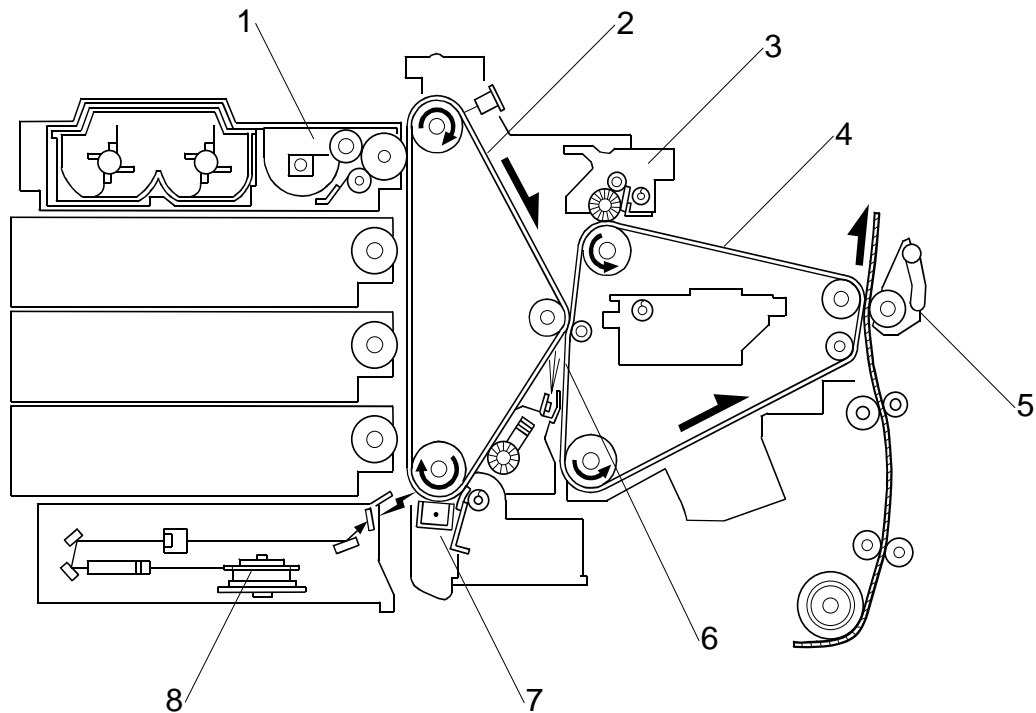
Drive Components

- | | |
|--|------------------------------|
| 1. Fusing unit motor | 8. Development clutch - C |
| 2. Transfer belt cleaning clutch | 9. Paper size switch |
| 3. Transfer belt cleaning contact solenoid | 10. Development clutch - M |
| 4. Main motor | 11. OPC belt cleaning clutch |
| 5. Development clutch - K | 12. Paper feed motor |
| 6. Development clutch - Y | 13. Paper feed clutch |
| 7. Development motor | 14. Registration clutch |
| | 15. Paper transfer solenoid |

Circuit Boards

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Operation panel | 7. PSU |
| 2. Fusing unit fan | 8. Temperature-humidity sensor |
| 3. IOB | 9. Printer controller |
| 4. BCU | 10. High voltage supply board |
| 5. Controller fan | 11. USB 2.0 board |
| 6. Ozone fan | |

6.2 PRINTING PROCESS OVERVIEW



- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Development unit | 5. Transfer roller unit |
| 2. OPC belt | 6. Quenching lamp |
| 3. Transfer belt cleaning unit | 7. OPC belt cleaning unit |
| 4. Transfer belt | 8. Polygonal mirror |

1. Drum Charge

The corona wire gives the drum a negative charge.

2. Black (K) Image Creation

a) Laser Exposure

The laser diode (LD) emits two laser beams. The laser beams create a latent image on the OPC surface.

b) Development

The development roller transfers negatively charged toner to the latent image. The OPC belt surface holds only one toner color at one time.

c) Image Transfer

The OPC belt transfers the single-color toner image to the image transfer belt.

d) Cleaning

The OPC belt cleaning unit cleans the image transfer belt.

3. Magenta (M) Image Creation

Same as 2 a) through 2 d) above.

4. Cyan (C) Image Creation

Same as 2 a) through 2 d) above.

5. Yellow (Y) Image Creation

Same as 2 a) through 2 d) above.

6. Paper Transfer

The paper transfer roller transfers the combined CMYK toner image to the paper.

The OPC belt and the transfer belt can hold two A4-size LEF images on their surfaces. When printing on A4 LEF or smaller paper, the OPC and transfer belts process two images in one cycle. At this time, two sheets of paper are consecutively output with little interval between them. This speeds up color print output.

7. Separation

The paper is separated from the transfer belt when the belt curves away from it. A discharge pin assists this process.

8. Fusing

The fusing unit rollers fuse the image to the paper.

9. Cleaning

The transfer belt cleaning unit cleans the belt.

10. Quenching

The quenching lamp erases any remaining charge on the OPC belt.

6.3 PROCESS CONTROL

6.3.1 OVERVIEW

The printer adjusts the following process control parameters:

- Development bias (VB)
- Charge corona grid voltage (VG)

These 2 parameters maintain a consistent gamma for the engine.

NOTE: This printer uses only the ID sensor. (There is no TD or potential sensor.)

6.3.2 PROCESS CONTROL STEPS

Six Steps

Depending on the machine's condition, some or all of the following steps may occur:

- ①: ID sensor calibration
- ②: Color development bias initialization (M, then C, then Y)
- ③: K development bias initialization
- ④: M, C, Y, and K bias fine adjustment
- ⑤: Charge grid bias voltage adjustment
- ⑥: Process control interval counter reset

If the main power is turned off (or the cover opened) during a process control session, the session is aborted. Turning the power on (or closing the cover) restarts the process control session.

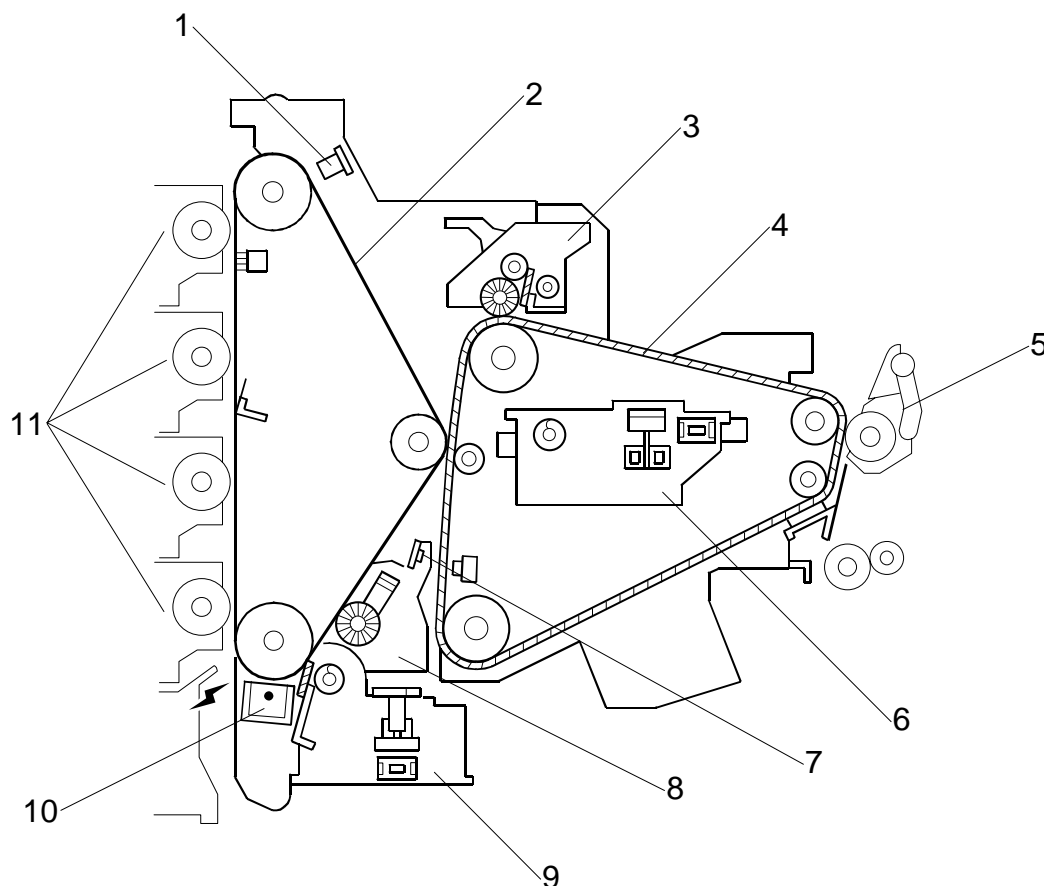
When is Process Control Done?

When an event arises, the specified steps are performed.

Event	Condition	Steps
Forced process control	When forced process control is done (engine SP mode 3-001-1 [ProcessCtrl])	① → ⑥
Process control regular interval	When more than 200 sheets have been printed upon completion of a job. (The interval can be changed with engine SP3-003-1 [Lub_Interval].)	①, ④, ⑤, ⑥
Power on	When the fusing pressure roller temperature is 60°C or lower immediately after the power is turned on.	①, ④, ⑤, ⑥
Environmental change	When the change in the temperature/humidity sensor output since the previous process control exceeds a certain value. SP3-004 (EnvChange) can be used to change the threshold temperature and humidity values.	①, ④, ⑤, ⑥
K toner cartridge or K development unit replacement	This is done after clearing the K toner near-end state (i.e., when a new K development unit is added). The machine idles and when the development roller stops for 10 seconds, indicating that idling is over, process control occurs.	①, ③, ④, ⑤
Color development unit replacement	After the color toner end or near-end state is reset, the machine idles to transfer color toner to the development unit. After idling, process control occurs.	① → ⑥
Color toner cartridge replacement	After the color toner end or near-end state is reset, the machine idles to transfer color toner to the development unit. After idling, process control occurs.	①, ④, ⑤, ⑥
24 hours after previous process control	Same as 'power on' process control	①, ④, ⑤, ⑥
PCU replacement	After a new PCU is detected, it is lubricated (new OPC belt lubricant application mode). Then process control occurs.	① → ⑥

6.4 PHOTOCONDUCTOR UNIT (PCU)

6.4.1 OVERVIEW



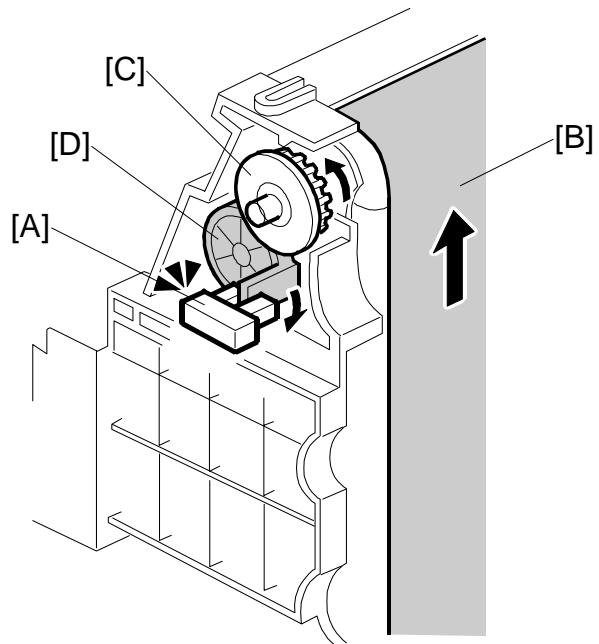
- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. ID sensor | 7. Quenching lamp |
| 2. OPC belt | 8. OPC belt cleaning unit |
| 3. Transfer belt cleaning unit | 9. O/B waste toner bottle |
| 4. Transfer belt | 10. Charge corona unit |
| 5. Transfer roller unit | 11. Development unit |
| 6. T/B waste toner bottle | |

NOTE: The ID sensor, the transfer roller unit, and the development unit are not included in the photoconductor unit.

The photoconductor unit handles steps 2 through 6 in *Printing Process Overview* (➡ 6.2).

6.4.2 NEW PHOTOCONDUCTOR UNIT DETECTION

- [A]: New PCU sensor
 [B]: OPC belt
 [C]: Gear 1
 [D]: Gear 2



New PCU Sensor

The new PCU sensor [A] detects when a new photoconductor unit is installed. The machine then executes process control (☛ 6.3.2).

Mechanism

When a new PCU is placed into the machine, the actuator on gear 2 [D] enters the new PCU sensor (new PCU detected). When the OPC belt starts rotating, gear 1 [C] also starts rotating. Gear 1 also turns gear 2, so the actuator moves down. Gear 2 disengages from gear 1 when the actuator reaches its lowest position, and the actuator never returns to the new PCU sensor.

PCU Counter

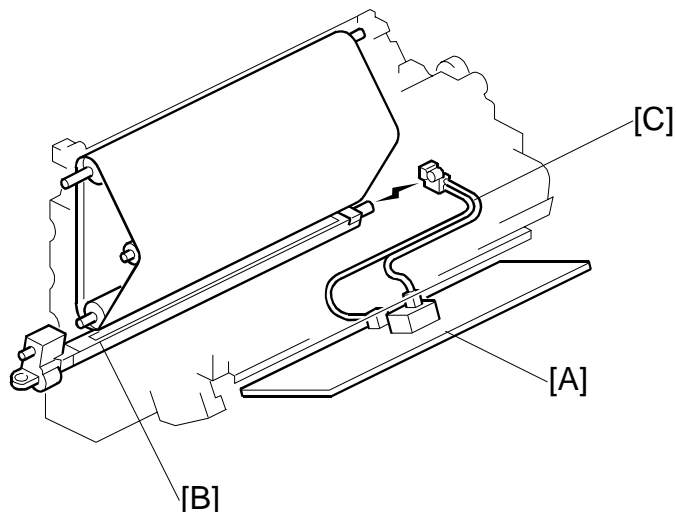
The photoconductor unit can be used for 120 kilo-developments (☛ 2.2). When the unit has been used for 120 kilo-developments, a message is displayed on the operation panel. To check the PCU counter, use SP7-803, PM_Counter (☛ 5.2.2).

6.4.3 CHARGE CORONA UNIT

Power Supply

High voltage supply [A] → Harness [C] → Charge corona unit [B] (negative charge)

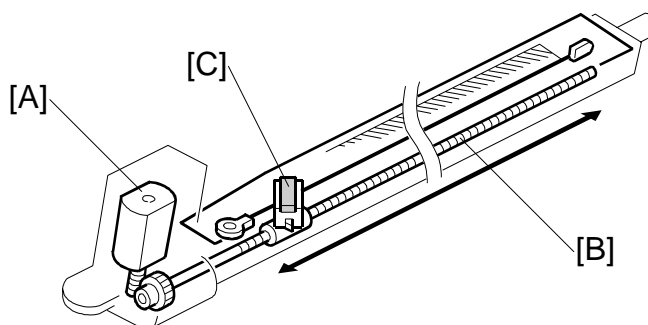
[A]: High voltage supply
[B]: Charge corona unit
[C]: Harness



Wire Cleaning

The motor [A] drives the bottom screw [B], which moves the wire cleaner [C] forward or backward, cleaning the corona wire.

[A]: Motor
[B]: Screw
[C]: Wire cleaner



Cleaning Interval

The cleaning feature is activated after 600 development counts (default), at the end of the job. However, if 1000 counts is reached in the middle of a job, printing pauses while the wire is cleaned. The counter counts up as shown in the table.

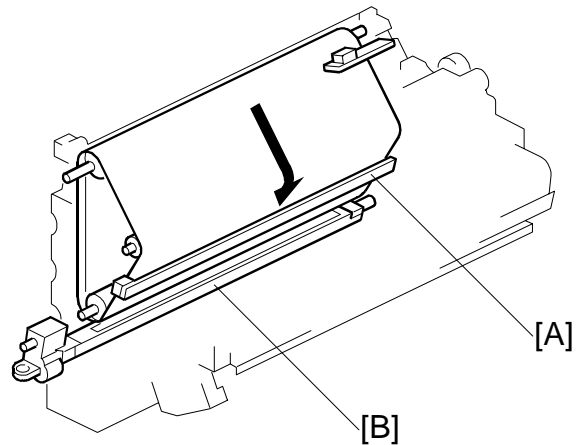
	Black & White	Color
A4 (LT) LEF (or smaller)	1 count	4 counts
Others	2 counts	8 counts

To set the counter, use SP2-801, ChrgClnIntval (➡ 5.2.2).

PHOTOCONDUCTOR UNIT (PCU)

Quenching

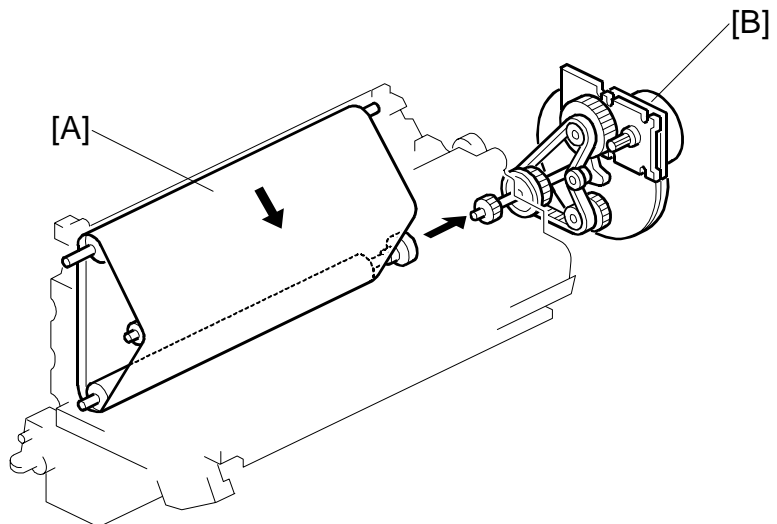
- [A]: Quenching lamp
(☛ **CT** Photocopying Processes – Quenching)
[B]: Charge corona unit
(☛ **CT** Photocopying Processes – Charge – Corona Charge – Scorotron Method)



6.4.4 OPC BELT DRIVE

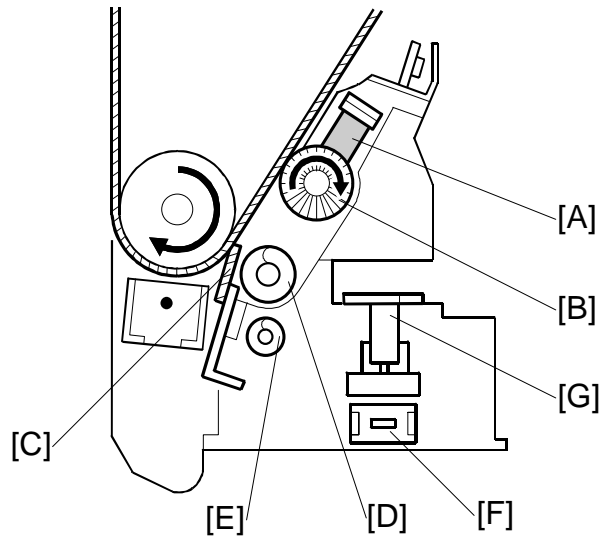
Main motor [B] → Gear → Timing belt → Bottom shaft

- [A]: OPC belt
[B]: Main motor



6.4.5 OPC BELT CLEANING UNIT

- [A]: Lubricant bar
- [B]: Lubricant brush
- [C]: Counter blade
- [D]: Toner collection auger 1
- [E]: Toner collection auger 2
- [F]: Waste toner bottle switch
- [G]: Waste toner bottle sensor



Toner Collection Augers

Toner collection auger 1 [D] collects waste toner; toner collection auger 2 [E] levels the toner in the waste toner bottle.

Counter Blade + Brush

The lubricant brush [B] applies lubricant to the OPC belt.

☛ **CT** Photocopying Processes – Cleaning – Counter Blade and Brush

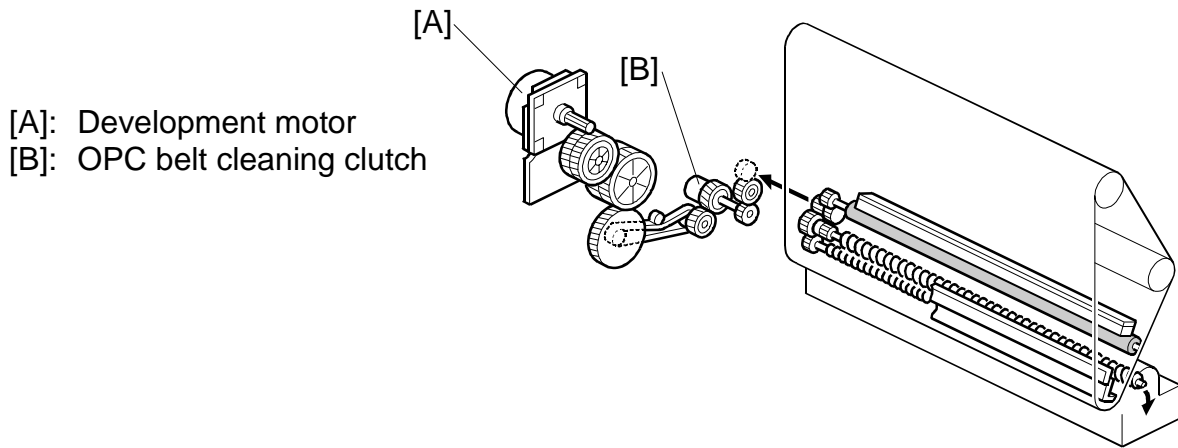
Waste Toner Bottle Sensors

The waste toner bottle switch [F] and the waste toner bottle sensor [G] are at the back of the cleaning unit. The switch detects whether the toner bottle is installed correctly. The sensor detects when the bottle is full.

When the bottle becomes full, a message is displayed on the operation panel. After the message is displayed, the machine can output 100 prints, then further printing is disabled.

Drive

Development motor [A] → Gear → Timing belt → OPC belt cleaning clutch [B] → OPC belt cleaning unit (including the brush and toner collection coil)



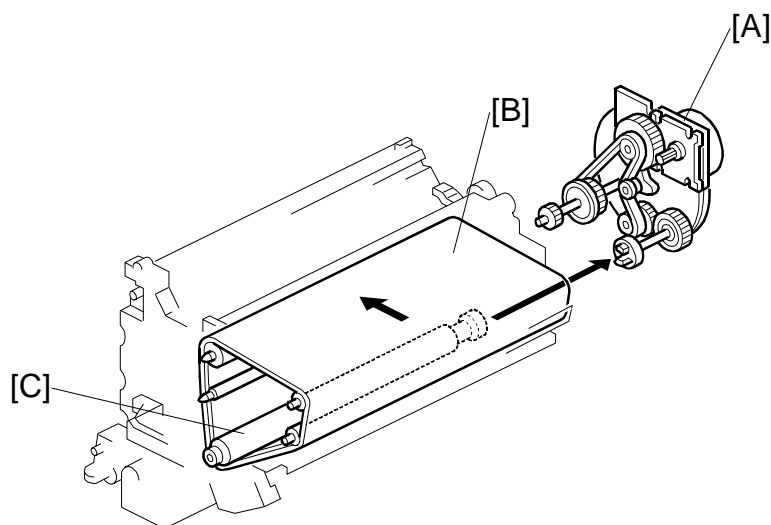
While the development motor is operating, the OPC cleaning clutch is always on.

The clutch cuts the drive to the cleaning unit when the development motor reverses (this is done at intervals to prevent toner blockages in the development unit).

6.4.6 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT UNIT

Drive

- [A]: Main motor
[B]: Image transfer belt
[C]: Bottom shaft (rubber coated)



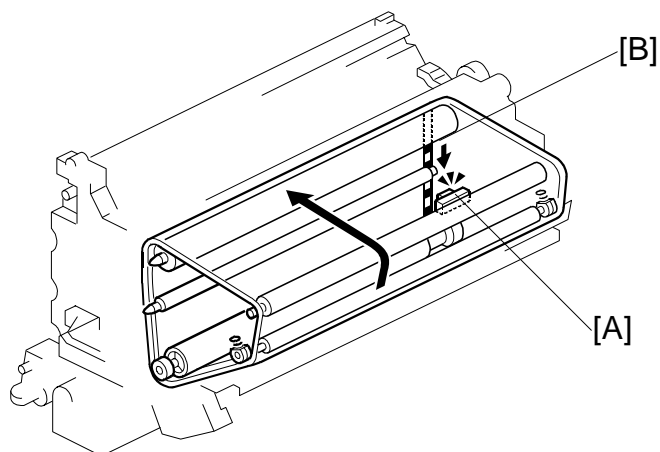
Main motor [A] → Gears & timing belt → Bottom shaft [C]

The bottom shaft drives the transfer belt by the friction between the belt [B] and the rubber coating on the shaft [C].

NOTE: The transfer belt and OPC belt contact each other. If you wish to inspect the transfer belt by turning it, you must also turn the OPC belt at the same time to avoid damaging the surfaces of the belts.

Belt Mark Sensor

- [A]: Belt mark sensor
[B]: Mark



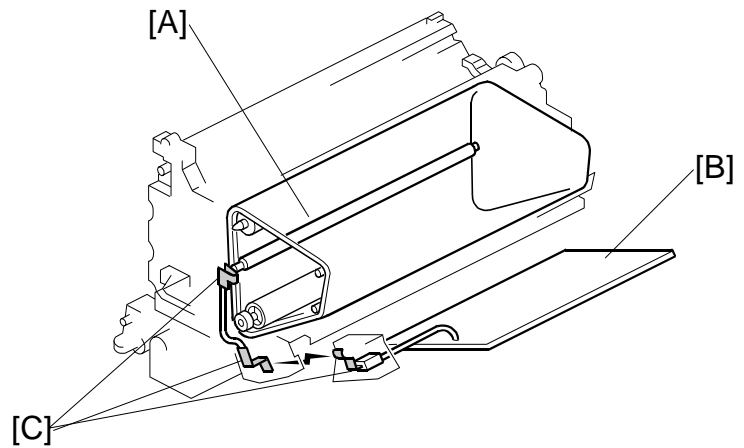
Detailed
Descriptions

The belt mark sensor is a reflective photosensor.

To exactly synchronize the four mono-color toner images on the image transfer belt, the belt mark sensor [A] monitors the belt speed. The sensor detects the light reflected by the marks [B] at the rear end of the belt (25 marks per rotation; mark frequency: 21 mm). The sensor output is used to control the belt speed.

Bias Roller

- [A]: Bias roller
- [B]: High voltage supply
- [C]: Terminal plates

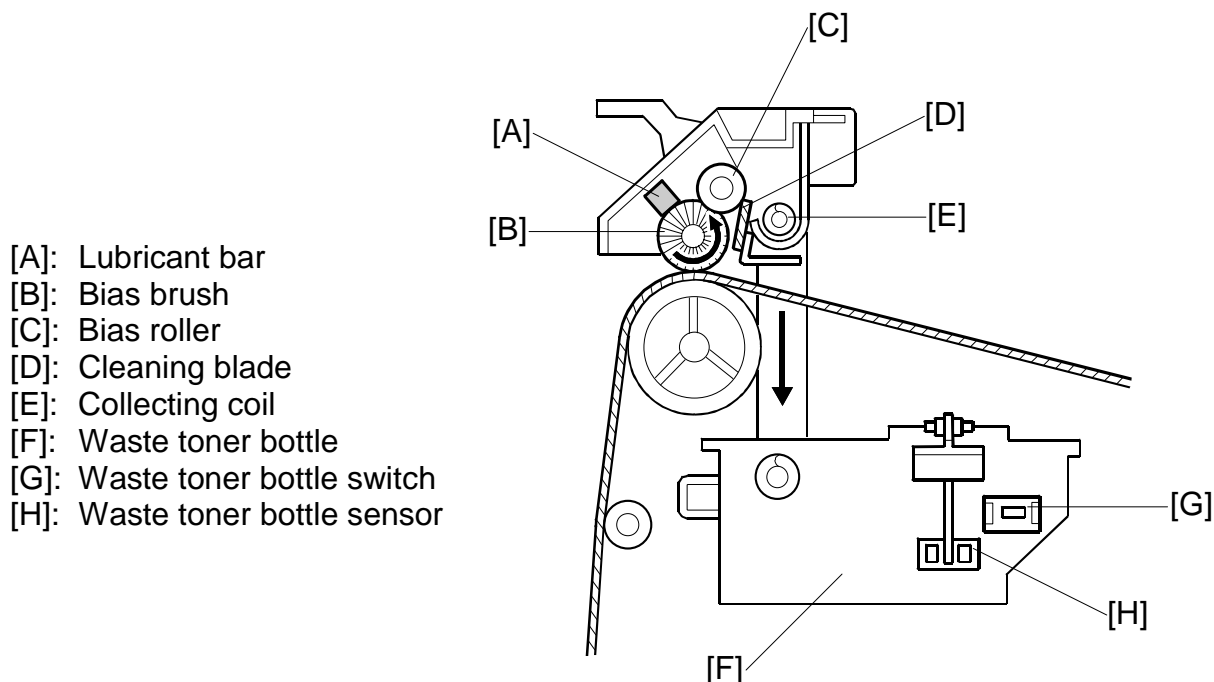


The transfer roller [A] attracts toner from the OPC belt to the image transfer belt by using a positive charge.

The terminal in the middle of the PCU contacts the terminal on the transfer roller shaft when the image transfer belt unit is installed in the PCU.

The current is adjusted based on environmental temperature and humidity.

6.4.7 TRANSFER BELT CLEANING UNIT



Bias Brush

The lubricant bar [A] lubricates the bias brush [B]. The brush applies this to the transfer belt surface. The bias brush is positively charged to attract residual toner from the belt surface.

Bias Roller and Cleaning Blade

The bias roller [C] removes toner from the bias brush. The cleaning blade [D] removes the residual toner off the bias roller.

Collecting Coil

The collecting coil [E] transports waste toner to the rear of the transfer belt cleaning unit. The waste toner bottle [F] collects the toner through its opening shutter.

Waste Toner Bottle Sensors

The waste toner bottle switch [G] and the waste toner bottle sensor [H] are at the back of the cleaning unit. The switch detects whether the toner bottle is installed correctly.

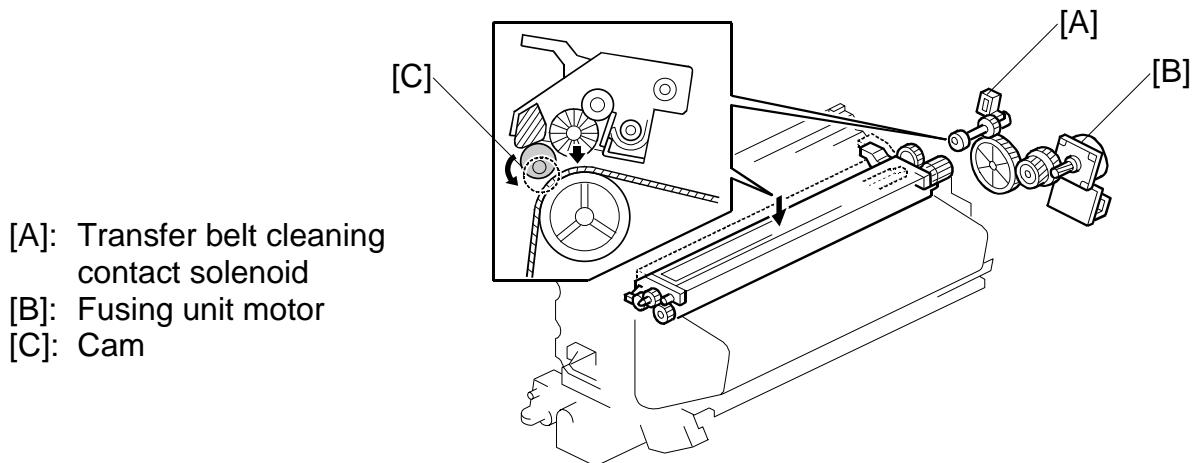
The toner bottle sensor detects when the bottle is full, and a message is displayed on the operation panel. After the message is displayed, 100 prints can be output then the machine stops and printing is disabled.

Contact Mechanism

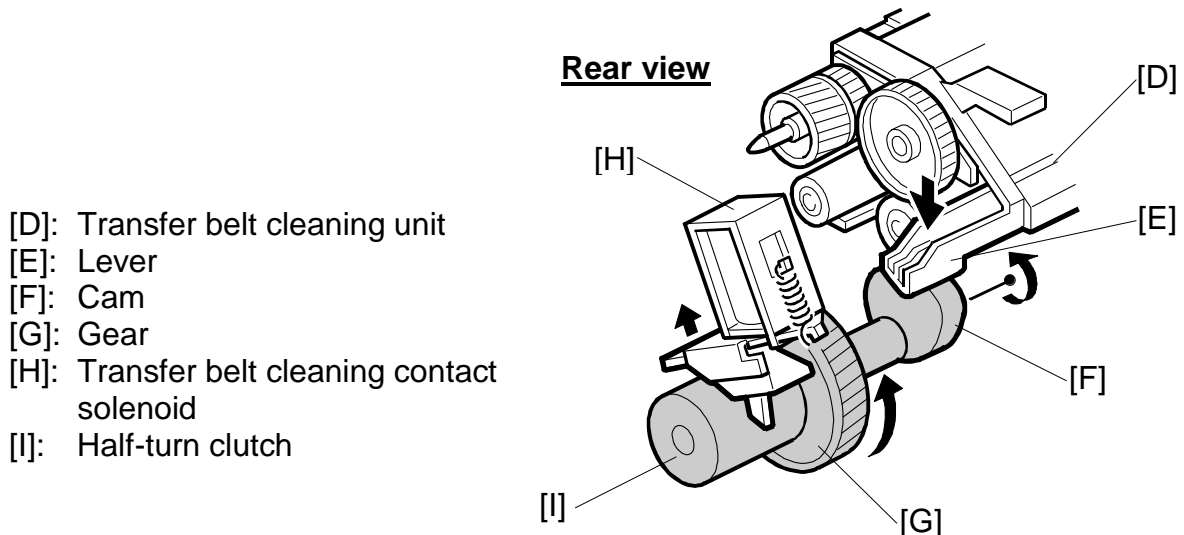
During standby mode, the cleaning unit is away from the transfer belt.

When the toner images are being transferred from the OPC belt to the transfer belt, this mechanism holds the transfer belt cleaning unit away from the belt.

When the solenoid [A] activates, it transmits power from the fusing unit motor [B] to the gear and the cam [C]. The cam moves the bias brush roller into contact with the transfer belt.



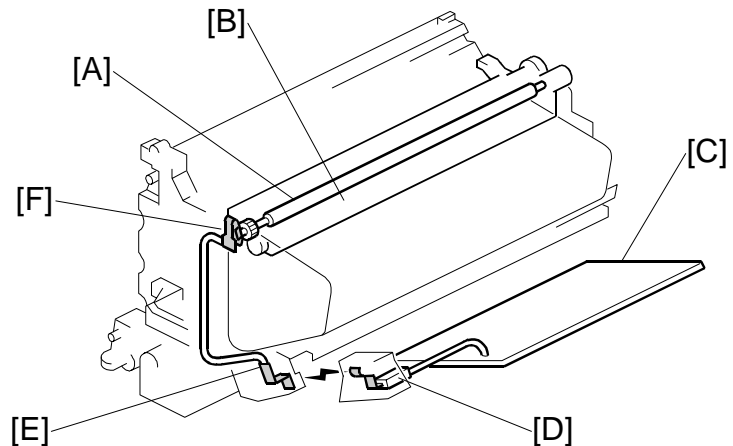
The transfer belt cleaning unit [D] has a lever [E] on its rear side. When the lever rests on the high point of the cam [F], the cleaning unit is away from the transfer belt; when the lever rests on the low point, the cleaning unit contacts the transfer belt.



The transfer belt cleaning contact solenoid [H] operates a half-turn clutch [I] to control the contact mechanism.

Power Supply

- [A]: Cleaning brush
- [B]: Cleaning roller
- [C]: High voltage supply
- [D]: Contact spring
- [E]: Contact spring
- [F]: Contact spring

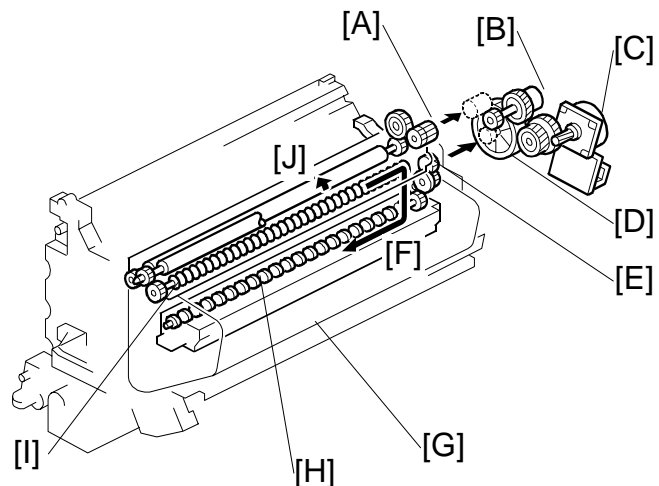


The cleaning roller [B] charges the cleaning brush, and attracts toner from it.

The high voltage supply [C] supplies positive charge to the cleaning roller via the harness and contact springs (leaf springs) [D, E, and F].

Drive

- [A]: Gear 1
- [B]: Image transfer belt cleaning clutch
- [C]: Fusing unit motor
- [D]: Drive gear
- [E]: Gear 2
- [F]: Toner path
- [G]: Image transfer belt
- [H]: Toner collection auger 1
- [I]: Toner collection auger 2
- [J]: Turning direction of the cleaning brush

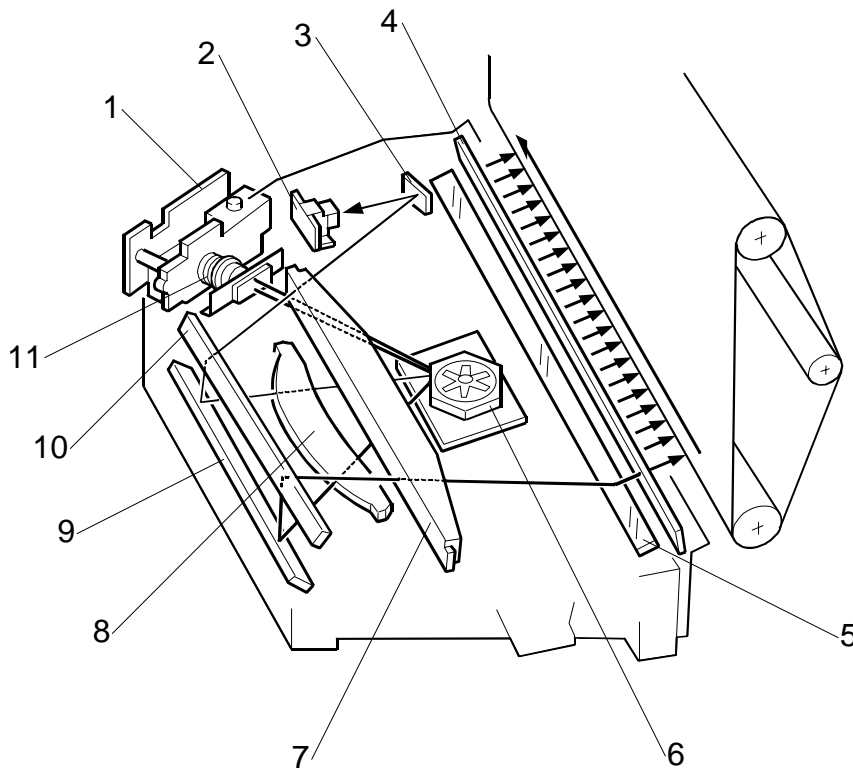


Fusing unit motor [C] → drive gear [D] → gears [A] and [E] → cleaning brush [J] and toner collection augers [H and I]

The clutch [B] controls the on/off timing of the mechanism.

6.5 LASER EXPOSURE

6.5.1 OVERVIEW



- | | |
|--|---------------------------|
| 1. LD unit | 6. Polygonal mirror motor |
| 2. Laser synchronization detection board | 7. WT lens |
| 3. Synchronization detection mirror | 8. F theta lens |
| 4. Dust shield glass | 9. 1st mirror |
| 5. 3rd mirror | 10. 2nd mirror |
| | 11. Cylindrical lens |

1. The LD unit simultaneously emits two laser beams. This is true both in full-color mode and in single-color mode.
2. The polygonal mirror motor rotates at 21,024 rpm (both in the full-color mode and in the single-color mode).
3. Laser beam path: LD unit → Polygonal mirror → WTL lens → F theta lens → 1st mirror → 2nd mirror → Synchronization detection mirror

NOTE: The synchronization detection board simultaneously monitors both laser beams.


Dust Shield Glass Cleaning

The user cleans the dust shield glass by pushing and pulling the lever at the front of the cleaner.


LD Unit Adjustment

There are no field service adjustments for this LD unit.

Polygonal Mirror

☛  Digital Processes – Printing – Laser Printing – Optical Components

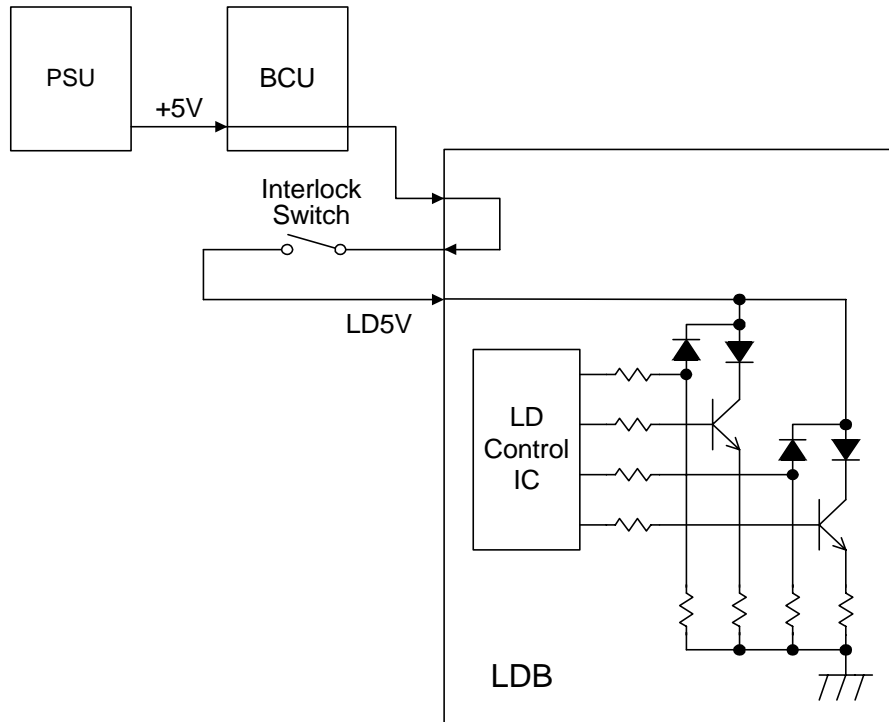
Laser Diode Power Control

☛  Digital Processes – Printing – Laser Printing – Laser Diode Power Control
Done by the LD control board

Maintenance Adjustment

The LD unit does not need adjustment when replaced.

6.5.2 LD SAFETY SWITCH



The interlock switch is at the top of the front cover.

This switch is in series with the 5-V circuit leading to the LD unit.

When the front, left, or right cover is opened, the switch interrupts the power supply, preventing laser emission.

Operation Panel Message and Switch Mechanism

If the covers are all closed, all three switches are on.

If a cover is opened, the indication on the display panel depends on the combination of signals from the interlock switch and the two cover switches.

The interlock switch turns off when any of these three covers is opened.

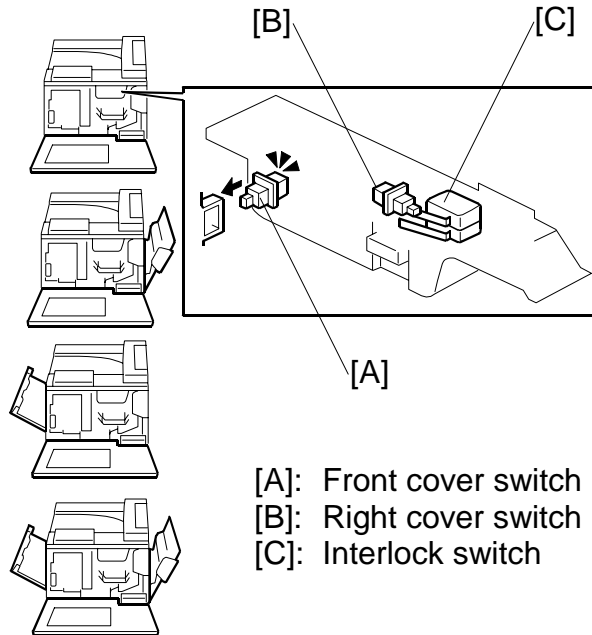
“Close Front Cover”

Front cover switch	Off
Right cover switch	On
Interlock switch	Off

Front cover switch	Off
Right cover switch	Off
Interlock switch	Off

Front cover switch	Off
Right cover switch	On
Interlock switch	Off

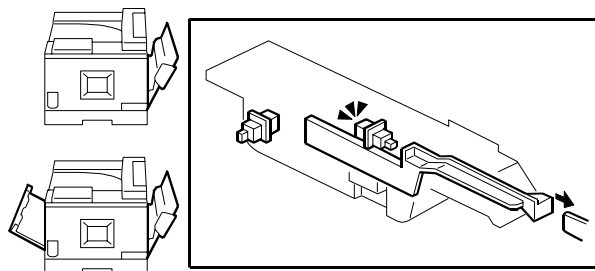
Front cover switch	Off
Right cover switch	Off
Interlock switch	Off



“Close Right Cover”

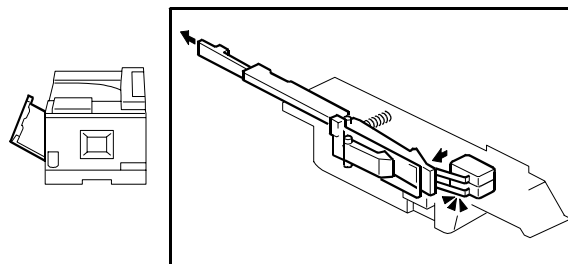
Front cover switch	On
Right cover switch	Off
Interlock switch	Off

Front cover switch	On
Right cover switch	Off
Interlock switch	Off



“Close Left Cover”

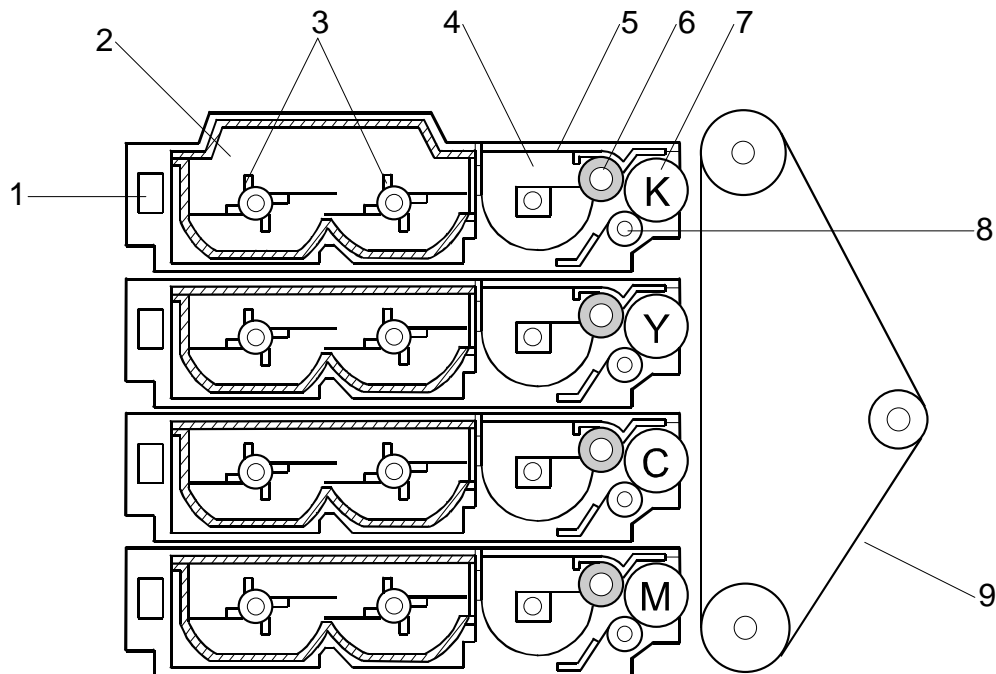
Front cover switch	On
Right cover switch	On
Interlock switch	Off



Off: Switch open


6.6 DEVELOPMENT

6.6.1 OVERVIEW



K: black, **Y:** yellow, **C:** cyan, **M:** magenta

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Memory chip | 6. Toner supply roller |
| 2. Toner cartridge | 7. Development roller |
| 3. Toner cartridge agitators | 8. Doctor roller |
| 4. Development agitator | 9. OPC belt |
| 5. Development unit | |

 **CT**: Development – Mono-component Development – Double Development Roller Process

The development units operate in the following order: K → M → C → Y.

6.6.2 DEVELOPMENT UNIT

Rollers and Agitators

Each development unit has 3 rollers and 3 agitators (2 toner cartridge agitators and 1 development agitator):

Toner cartridge agitators:	Evenly mixes the toner in the cartridge, and sends it to the development unit
Development agitator:	Evenly mixes the toner in the development unit, and sends it to the toner supply roller
Toner supply roller:	Supplies the development roller with toner
Development roller:	Transfers the toner to the OPC
Doctor roller:	Regulates the amount of the toner on the development roller

Replacing Units

Near-end condition: “Replace Development Unit, xxxx-unit” is displayed when a development unit has made the ‘PM period’ number of prints (K: 120K, CMY: 60K). If more than one unit reaches PM period at the same time, the messages for each unit will be displayed one after the other.

End condition: When toner end is detected while the development unit is in a near-end condition, that unit enters the end condition. The machine cannot print. The end condition is cleared when that unit is replaced. There is no need to replace all 4 units. However, if each colour (C, M, Y) is used at the same rate, they will enter the end condition at about the same time.

The user can replace only the K unit, the color units (Y, C, and M), or all units (K, Y, C, and M) at the same time.

The color units are available for the user as a set, but can be replaced individually if required (individual units are available as spare parts).

Recovery: Each new development unit contains a starter toner cartridge. When the machine detects the memory chip on the new starter cartridge, it will clear the development unit end condition. The memory chip on a normal toner cartridge cannot clear the development unit end condition.

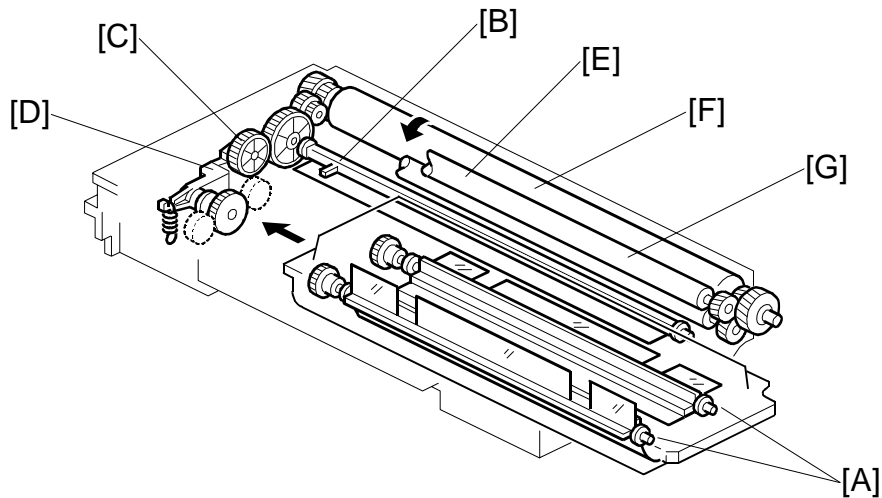
A starter toner cartridge has more paddles on the toner cartridge agitators than a normal toner cartridge does. This is to transport toner more quickly from the cartridge into the toner hopper.

When a development unit has to be replaced, use a starter toner cartridge in the development unit even if toner remains in the used normal toner cartridge. After the toner in the starter toner cartridge is all used up, the normal toner cartridge can be loaded into the development unit.

Memory Chip

Each toner cartridge contains a memory chip, which contains information on whether the cartridge is “new” or “not new”.

6.6.3 TONER SUPPLY MECHANISM



[A]: Toner cartridge agitators
 [B]: Development unit agitator
 [C]: Development clutch
 [D]: Lever

[E]: Toner supply roller
 [F]: Development roller
 [G]: Doctor roller

Toner Cartridge Agitators

Each toner cartridge contains two agitators [A]. They are equipped with several mylar sheets, which agitate the toner and send it to the development unit agitator [B].

Drive Power Path

Development motor → Development clutch [C] → Lever [D] → One-way clutch → Agitators

Development Unit Agitator

The development unit agitator [B] agitates the toner and sends it to the toner supply roller [E].

Toner Supply Roller and Doctor Roller

The toner supply roller [E] sends the toner to the development roller [F]. The doctor roller [G] controls the thickness of toner on the development roller, before the toner is transported to the OPC belt.

Shutter

Each toner cartridge has a shutter. The shutter is pushed open when the cartridge is installed in the development unit.

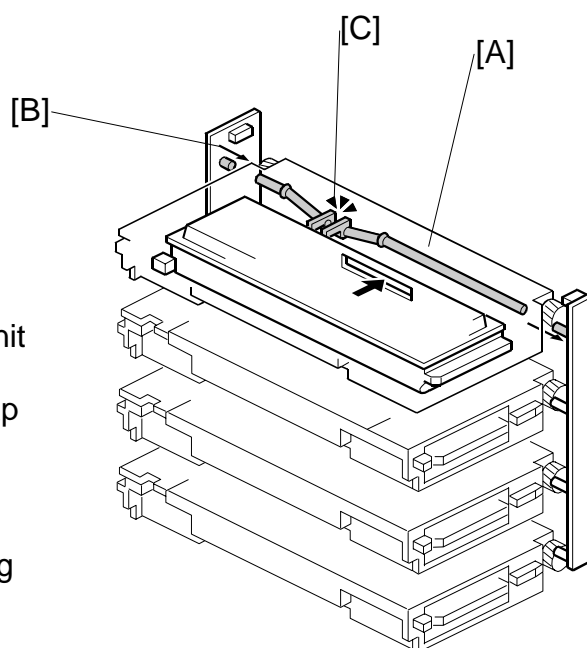
6.6.4 TONER END DETECTION

Mechanism

[A]: Optic fiber
[B]: Light emission
[C]: Gap

An optic fiber [A] in each development unit detects toner end. Light is emitted from the rear end [B] of the unit. There is a gap [C] in the optic fiber.

When the development unit is filled with toner, the toner breaks the light path through the gap. When the unit is running out of toner, the light path is not broken.



Toner Near-End Detection

The machine uses two methods simultaneously: pixel count, and toner end sensor. If either of these methods detects near-end, the machine indicates near-end.

Near-End by Pixel Count

The machine counts how many pixels have been printed with each toner cartridge. When there are 1000 (starter toner) or 2000 (normal toner) prints remaining until the estimated toner end condition, toner near-end is indicated.

Near-End by Toner End Sensor

- If the toner end sensor output drops to toner end level, counter 1 is set to 1.
- If the above condition (counter 1 is 1) is detected twice accumulated 14 seconds while the development clutch is activated, counter 2 is set to 1.
- If the above condition (counter 2 is 1) is detected twice continuously, the machine enters the toner supply mode after the job.

The above detection is carried out while the development clutch is activated.

Toner supply mode after the job:

- The development unit with the almost-empty cartridge idles for 40 s.
- Then, it idles again for another 20 s.
- During this 20 s period, the toner end sensor is checked every 10 ms. If a low toner condition is not detected during this 20 s period, the machine returns to standby mode after idling all development units for 90 s.
- However, if a low toner condition was detected during that 20 s period, the machine indicates toner near-end.

Toner End Detection

When any one of the following conditions occurs, toner end is indicated.

1. If near-end was detected by pixel count:
The remaining pixel count reaches 0.
2. If near-end was detected by toner end sensor:
Either 100 developments or 100 prints at 5% coverage are made since near-end was detected.
3. If near-end was detected by pixel count, and later it was detected by toner end sensor again before toner end:
Either the remaining pixel count reaches 0, or 100 developments or 100 prints at 5% coverage are made since near-end by toner end sensor was detected.

Toner End Recovery

When the machine detects a new toner cartridge, it drives the development unit for that cartridge for about 3 minutes.

During this time, the development clutch is repeatedly activated for 10 s and deactivated for 1 s.

The machine checks the toner end condition every 20 s. The end and near-end conditions are cleared if the sensor detects sufficient toner. However, if the sensor does not detect sufficient toner after 5 minutes of development unit drive, the toner end condition remains and a new cartridge must be added.

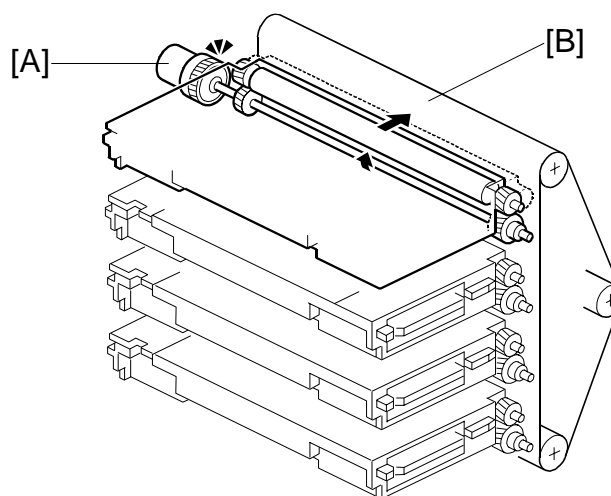
6.6.5 DEVELOPMENT UNIT CONTACT MECHANISM

Mechanism

Each development unit has an independent clutch. When a development clutch turns on, a gear under the development unit moves the development unit into contact with the OPC belt. When the clutch turns off, two springs (one at the front and one at the rear) detach the development unit from the OPC belt.

☛ **CT** Color Processes – Color Development – Fixed Position Development Systems – Similar to Example 2: Model G033

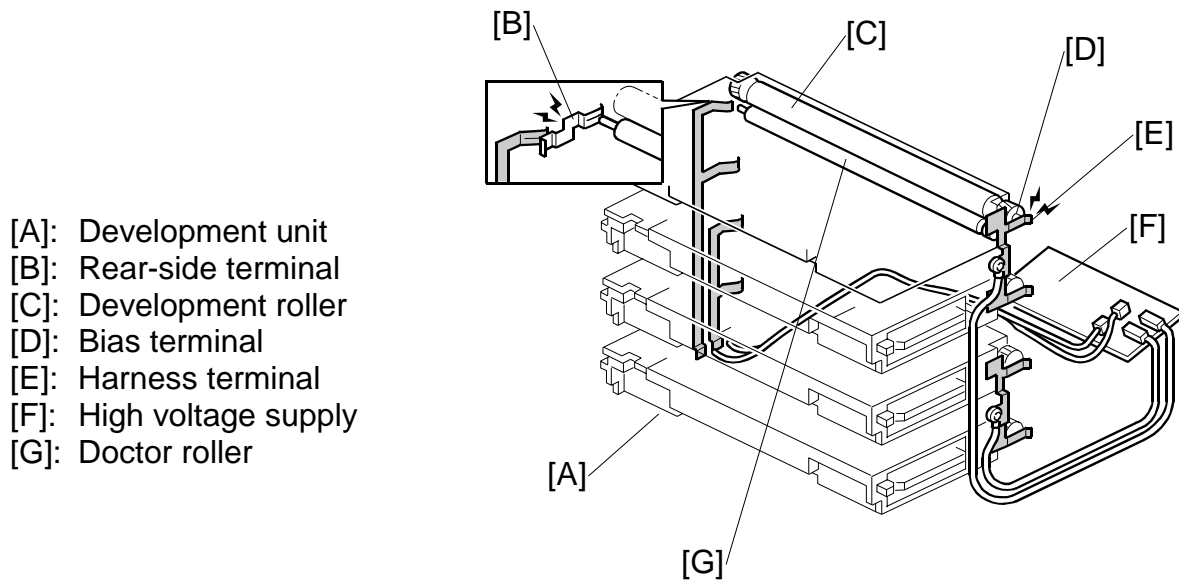
[A]: Development clutch
[B]: OPC belt



Reverse Rotation

The gears reverse at intervals to prevent toner from clumping.

6.6.6 POWER SOURCE



Development, Toner Supply, and Doctor Rollers

When a development unit [A] comes into contact with the OPC belt, the bias terminal [D] comes into contact with the harness terminal [E]. Then, a negative charge is supplied to the unit.

The negative charge on the doctor roller is the same size as the charge on the development roller and toner supply roller.

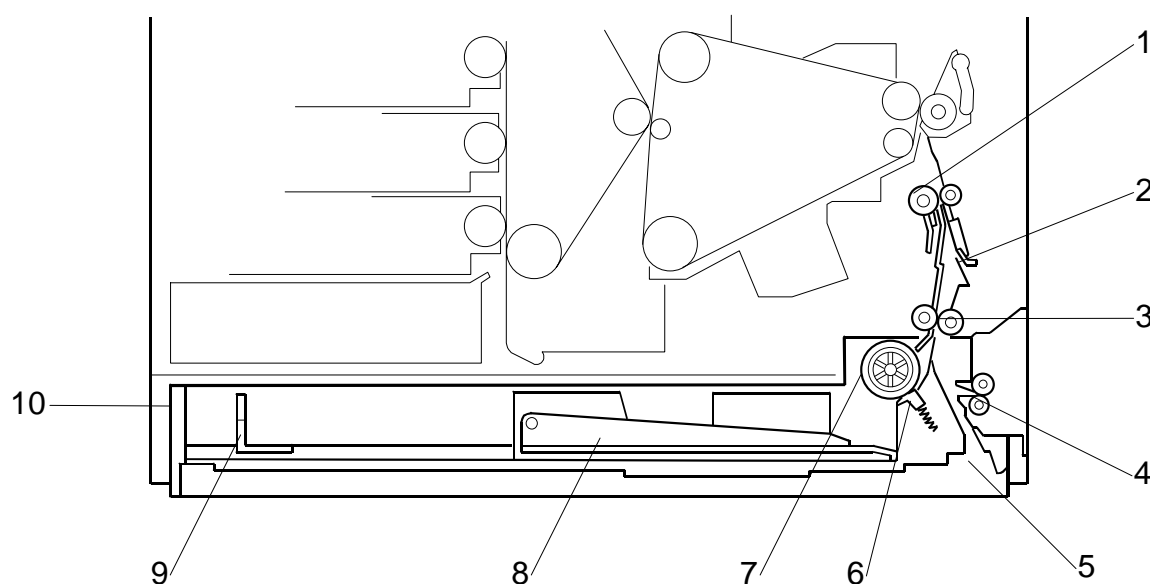
Doctor Roller

The doctor roller [G] restricts the amount of toner on the development roller [C]. The high voltage supply [F] applies a charge to the doctor roller through the rear-side terminal cable [B]. This charge is the same as the charge applied to the development roller. However, the development roller charge is applied through a different terminal [E].

👉 **CT** Mono-component Development – Toner Metering Blade (similar principle)

6.7 PAPER FEED

6.7.1 OVERVIEW



- | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Registration roller | 6. Friction pad |
| 2. Path from duplex | 7. Feed roller |
| 3. Vertical transport roller | 8. Base plate |
| 4. Path from by-pass tray | 9. Paper end fence |
| 5. Path from optional paper tray | 10. Standard tray |

The printer comes with two paper feed stations. It can be equipped with up to four paper feed stations.

Tray	Number	Main/Optional
Standard tray	1	Main unit
Bypass tray	1	
Paper tray unit	1 or 2	Optional units


Transport Speed

Until the registration roller, the paper travels at 240 mm/s. This high initial speed ensures that the first output time is as short as possible.

From the registration roller to the exit, the paper travels at the following speeds:

- 178 mm/s (plain paper)
- 89 mm/s (thick paper or OHP films)

Friction Pad

☛  Handling Paper – Paper Feed – Paper Feed Methods – Friction Pad

NOTE: The roller and pad are packaged as a maintenance kit, with the fusing unit.
Replace the roller and pad as a unit (not separately).

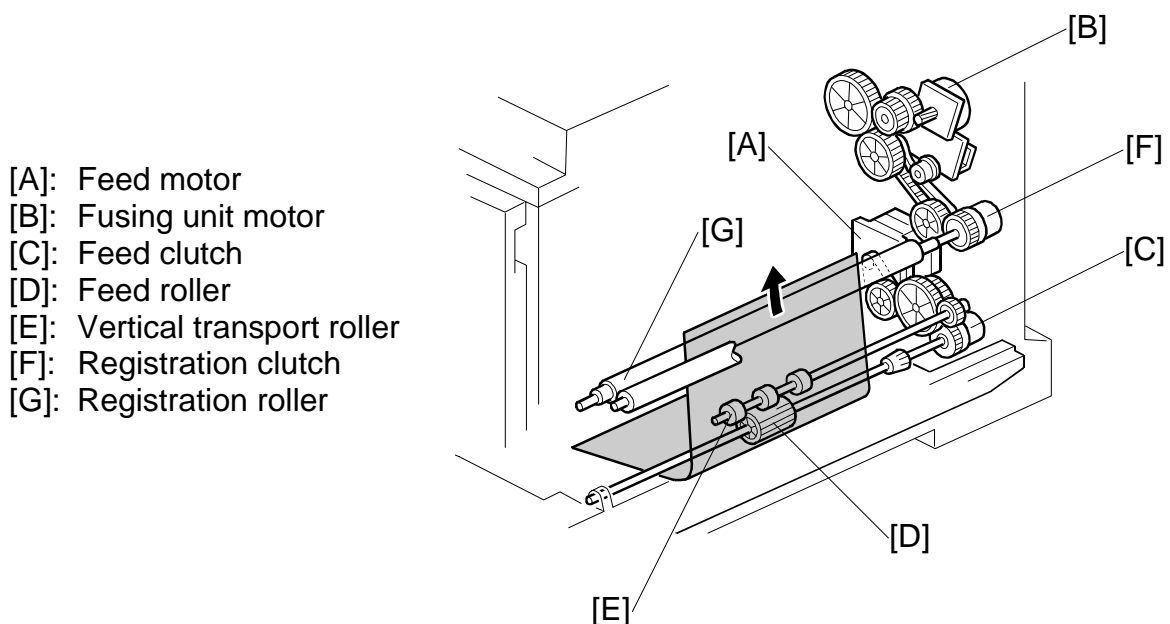
6.7.2 STANDARD TRAY DRIVE

Feed and Vertical Transport Rollers

Feed motor [A] → Feed clutch [C] → Feed roller [D]/vertical transport roller [E]

Registration Roller

Fusing unit motor [B] → Registration clutch [F] → Registration roller [G]

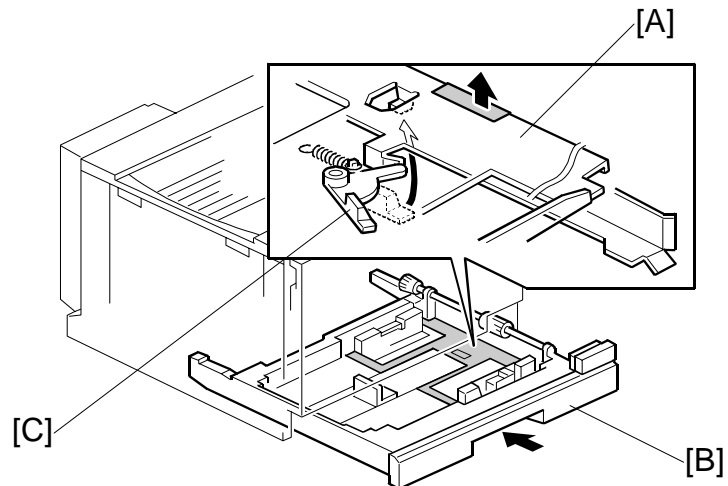


6.7.3 STANDARD TRAY – BOTTOM PLATE LIFT

Lift Mechanism

The spring under the bottom plate [A] presses the plate upward. When you press the bottom plate as far down as possible, the hook on lever [C] holds the plate. The lever releases the bottom plate when it is pressed by the protruding part on the right tray rail; this happens when the tray [B] is completely pushed into the machine.

- [A]: Bottom plate
- [B]: Tray
- [C]: Lever



Paper Near End Detection

The bottom plate gradually rises as paper is fed. The bottom plate position is checked with a feeler which is linked to the paper near-end sensor (☛ 6.1.4). The sensor is actuated when about 50 sheets are left in the tray, and the paper near end message appears on the operation panel.

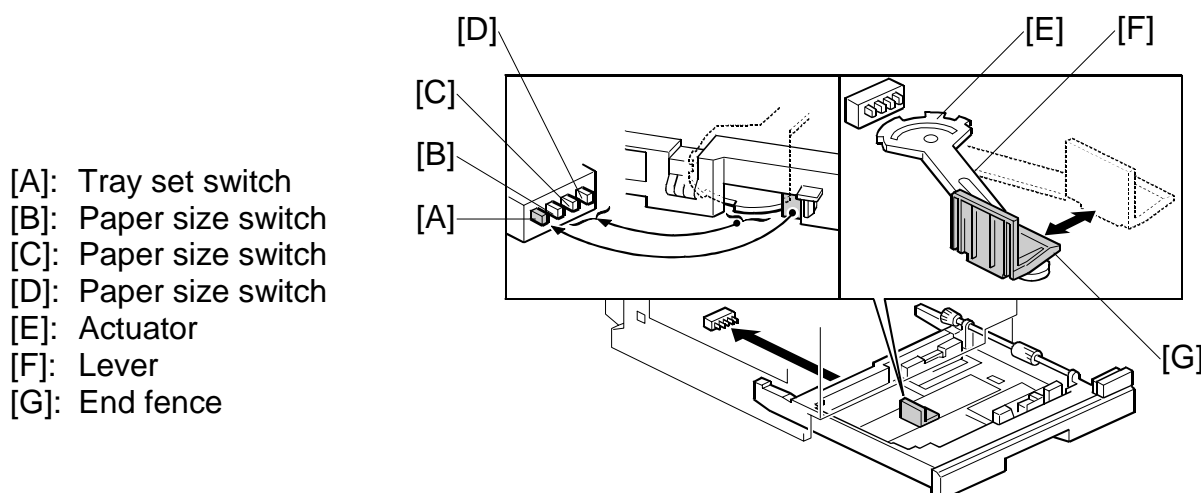
Paper End Detection

When paper runs out, the paper end sensor (☛ 6.1.4) feeler drops through the opening in the bottom plate. Then, the paper end message appears on the operation panel.

6.7.4 STANDARD TRAY - PAPER SIZE DETECTION

Mechanism

The end fence [G] moves the lever [F], which moves a different set of notches on the actuator [E] into contact with the paper size switches [B]~[D]. When you put the tray in the main unit, the rear fence of the tray and the actuator activate the switches; from this the machine detects the presence of the tray, and the paper size.



Switch Pattern

When the tray is pushed into the machine, the leftmost switch [A] is always activated by the rear fence of the tray; this switch detects the presence of the tray. The combination of the other 3 switches [B]~[D] detects the paper size.

Paper Size		Switch* ¹			
North America	Europe/Asia	[A]	[B]	[C]	[D]
DLT SEF* ³	A3 SEF* ³	On	Off	On	On
LG SEF* ²	B4 SEF* ²	On	On	On	On
A4 SEF	A4 SEF	On	On	Off	Off
LT SEF	LT SEF	On	Off	Off	Off
B5 SEF* ⁵	B5 SEF* ⁵	On	Off	Off	On
LT LEF* ⁴	A4 LEF* ⁴	On	On	On	Off
B5 LEF	B5 LEF	On	On	Off	On
—	A5 LEF	On	Off	On	Off
(No tray)		Off	Off	Off	Off

*¹ On: Pushed Off: Not pushed

*² Selected with SP1-902-1 [PaperSize - B4/LG], (LG SEF/B4 SEF)

*³ Selected with SP1-902-2 [PaperSize - A3/DLT], (DLT SEF/A3 SEF)

*⁴ Selected with SP1-902-3 [PaperSize - A4/LT], (LT LEF/A4 LEF)


*⁵ Selected with SP1-902-4 [PaperSize - B5/Executive], (B5 SEF/10.5" x 7.25" SEF)

NOTE: 1) For the input check table, see 5.2.2.

2) Other paper sizes are not detected. Use the Paper Input – Tray Paper Size user tool to set paper sizes.

6.7.5 BYPASS TRAY

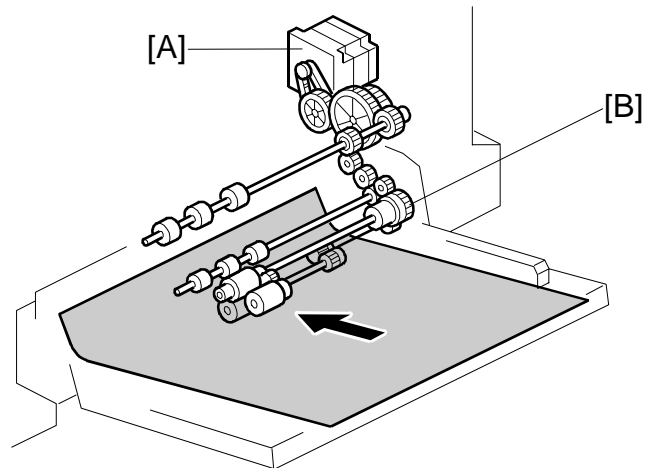
Paper Feed Mechanism

The FRR (feed and reverse roller) feed mechanism (👉 ) is used.

Bypass Tray Drive Power Path

Paper feed motor [A] → Gears → Feed clutch [B] → Rollers

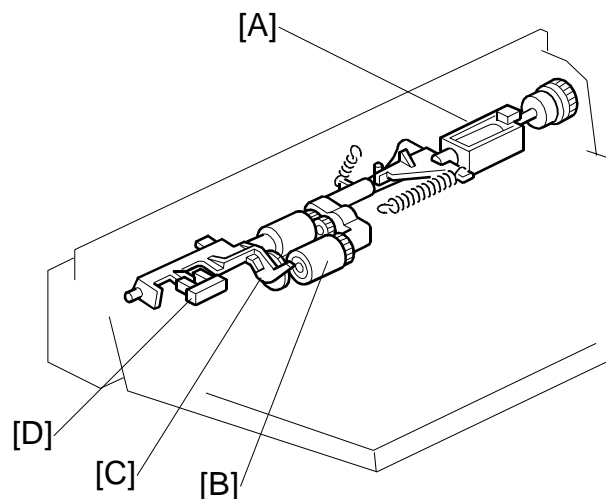
- [A]: Paper feed motor
[B]: By-pass paper feed clutch



Pick-up Solenoid

The by-pass pick-up solenoid [A] is mechanically linked to the pick-up roller [B]. When the solenoid turns on, the pick-up roller touches the top sheet of the paper.

- [A]: By-pass pick-up solenoid
[B]: Pick-up roller
[C]: Feeler
[D]: Paper end sensor

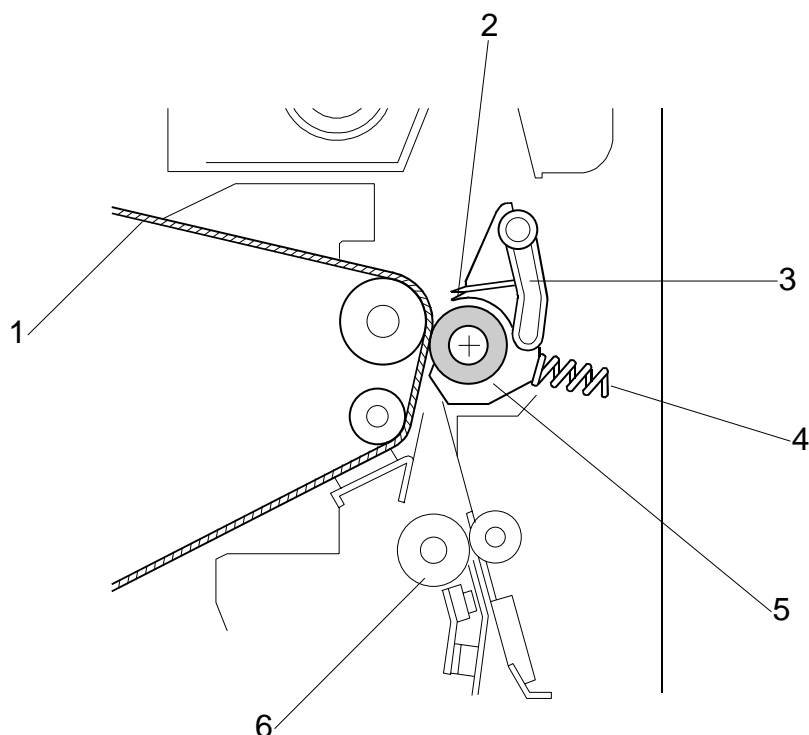


Paper End Sensor

The feeler [C] is linked with the paper end sensor [D]. The paper end sensor functions not only as a paper end sensor but also as a paper set sensor.

6.8 PAPER TRANSFER AND SEPARATION

6.8.1 OVERVIEW



- | | |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Image transfer belt | 4. Spring |
| 2. Discharge plate | 5. Paper transfer roller |
| 3. Separation lever | 6. Registration roller |

Jammed Paper Release

When you open the right cover, the units release the paper. This mechanism helps clear paper jams quickly.

Image Transfer and Paper Separation

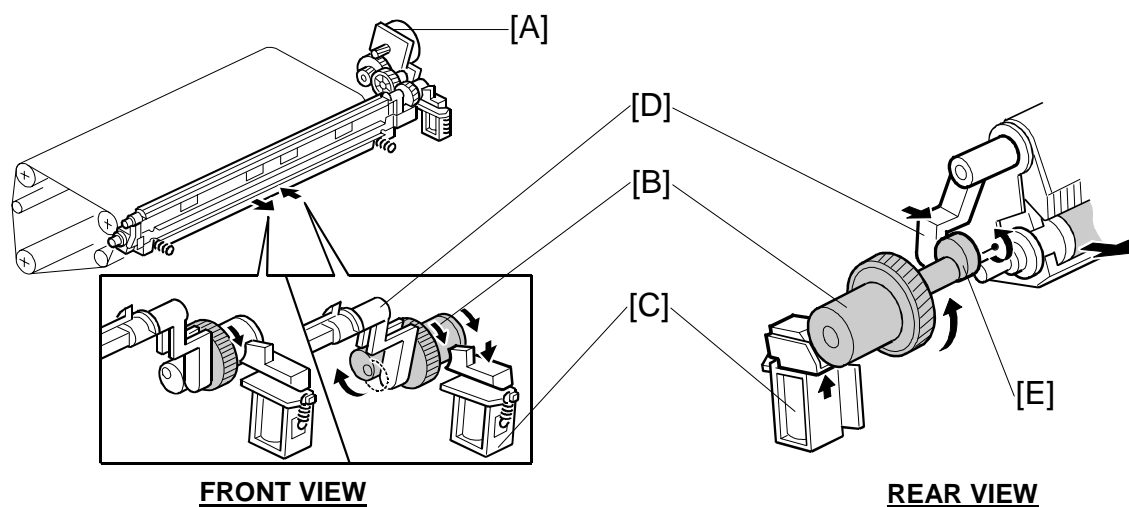
 Photocopying Processes – Image Transfer and Paper Separation – Transfer Roller + Discharger – Example 2: Models A172/A199

The current is adjusted based on paper weight and environmental temperature and humidity.

A user tool (Paper Input – Paper Type) specifies the paper weights. If “Plain” is selected, then either SP 5-945 (MidThickPaper) or another user tool (Maintenance – Plain Paper Type) defines when the paper is “normal” or “> 90 g/m², 24lb”.

- “Plain” means normal or > 90 g/m², 24lb.
- “Thick” means paper heavier than 105 g/m² (28 lb).

6.8.2 MECHANISM



- [A]: Fusing unit motor
- [B]: Half-turn clutch
- [C]: Paper transfer solenoid
- [D]: Contact/separation lever
- [E]: Cam

Timing

When transferring toner to paper, the paper transfer roller unit contacts the image transfer belt. At other times during printing, the unit stays away from the image transfer belt. After printing, the unit contacts the belt and stays there.

NOTE: During standby mode, the unit stays away from the image transfer belt.

Mechanism

Fusing unit motor [A] → Gear → Paper transfer solenoid [C] → Cam [E] → Contact/separation lever [D] → Paper transfer roller unit movement

The fusing unit motor [A] drives the mechanism. (It also drives the paper transfer roller).

The cam [E] is controlled by the half-turn clutch [B] and the paper transfer solenoid [C].

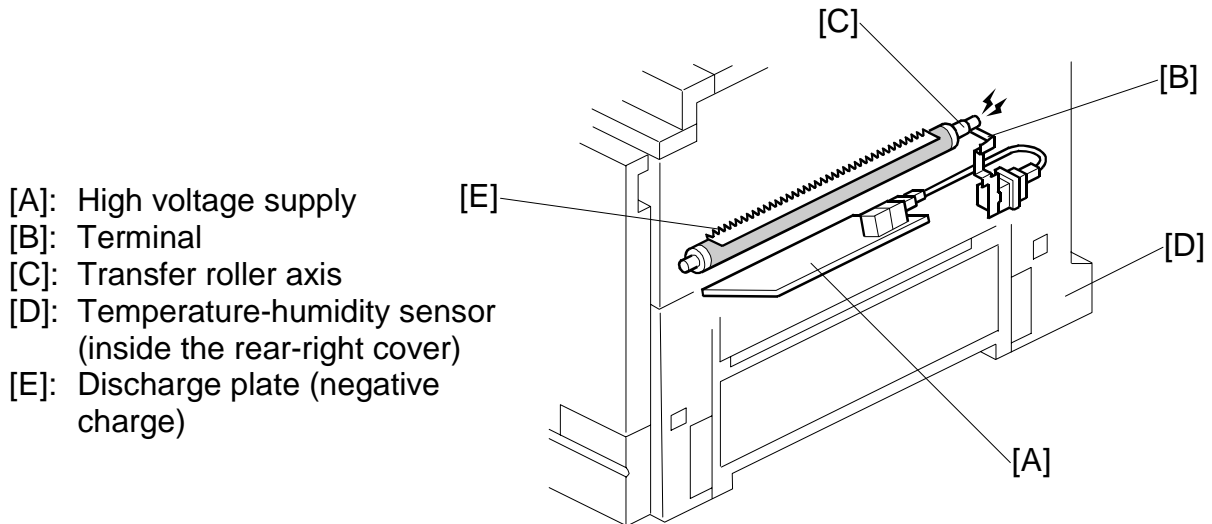
When the solenoid is off, it catches a hook on the surface of the half-turn clutch [B]. As a result, the high point of the cam pushes the contact/separation lever [D], and the paper transfer roller unit is away from the belt.

When the solenoid is activated, the hook is released, so the half-turn clutch makes a half-turn—the unit moves to the right and contacts the image transfer belt.

6.8.3 POWER SUPPLY

Electric Power Path

High voltage supply [A] → Terminal [B] → Transfer roller axis [C]



Transfer Roller Bias

Normally, a constant current is applied to the transfer roller shaft [C].

The conductive bearing allows the electrical connection between the bias terminal [B] and the transfer roller shaft.

The current varies with paper type, size, and thickness as well as humidity.

Discharge Plate

The discharge plate [E] discharges the remaining charge on the paper going past the transfer roller. This helps the paper separate from the transfer belt.

Temperature/Humidity Control

The temperature-humidity sensor [D] is inside the rear-right cover. The sensor is used to control the power for the transfer roller (➡ 5.2.2).

The temperature and humidity can be read with SP2-912 (Temp_HumDisp).

Roller Cleaning

The transfer roller is cleaned at the following times:

- After the user clears a paper jam
- After the user closes the front cover
- Just after the main power has been switched on
- While the doctor roller is reversing. This is done every 50 prints (SP 3-910, DoctorIntval), to remove toner blockages in the development unit; if the 50-print interval expires in the middle of a job, it is done at the end of the job.

After paper passes the transfer roller, the paper transfer solenoid releases the transfer roller from the image transfer belt.

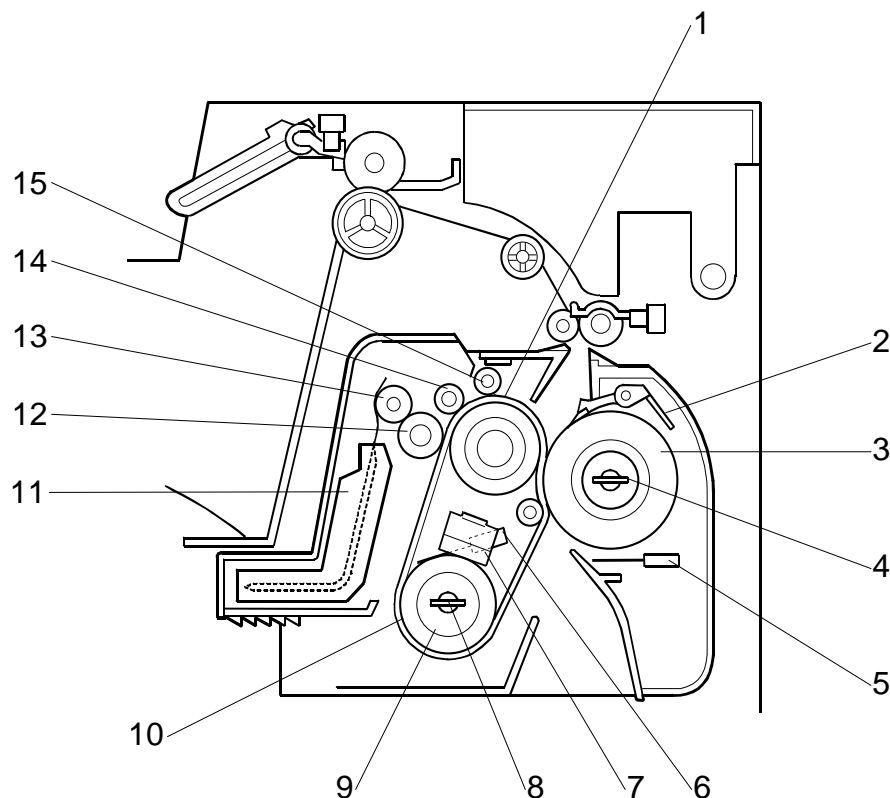
Then, a certain time after the trailing edge of the paper passes the registration sensor, the following steps occur:

- 1) The paper transfer solenoid turns on again, and the transfer roller contacts the transfer belt.
- 2) A negative charge is applied to remove toner stuck to the transfer roller.
- 3) Positive and negative charge is applied alternately to remove any toner that is still stuck to the transfer roller.

Toner removed from the transfer roller goes back to the transfer belt, where it is removed by the transfer belt cleaning unit.

6.9 FUSING UNIT AND OIL SUPPLY UNIT

6.9.1 OVERVIEW

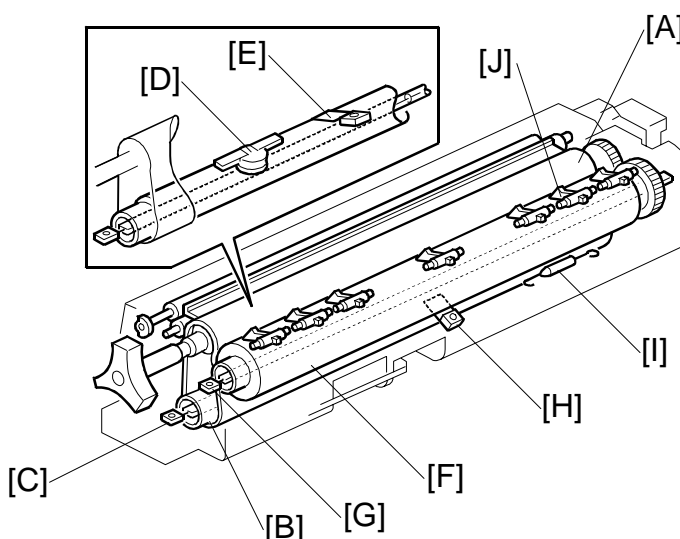


- | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Hot roller | 9. Heating roller |
| 2. Pressure roller separation pawl | 10. Fusing belt |
| 3. Pressure roller | 11. Oil supply unit |
| 4. Pressure roller fusing lamp | 12. Oiling roller |
| 5. Pressure roller thermistor | 13. Oil supply roller |
| 6. Heating roller thermistor | 14. Sponge cleaning roller |
| 7. Thermostat | 15. Metal cleaning roller |
| 8. Heating roller fusing lamp | |

NOTE: The fusing unit and the oil supply unit are user-replaceable. After 119 k prints, fusing unit near-end is indicated. After 120 k prints, fusing unit end is indicated, and printing stops until a new unit is added and the counter has been reset.

6.9.2 FUSING UNIT CONFIGURATION

- [A]: Fusing belt
- [B]: Heating roller
- [C]: Lamp (770 W)
- [D]: Thermostat
- [E]: Thermistor
- [F]: Pressure roller
- [G]: Lamp (350 W)
- [H]: Thermistor
- [I]: Thermofuse
- [J]: Pawl



Fusing Belt

This machine uses a fusing belt [A]. The paper goes between the fusing belt and the pressure roller [F].

Oil Supply

The oil supply unit contains a piece of felt. The felt absorbs the silicone oil in the unit and supplies it to the oil supply roller.

Heating Roller Lamp

The center of the heating roller [B] contains a lamp (770 W) [C]. The thermostat [D] and thermistor [E] control the temperature of the roller surface. The machine cuts power to the lamp when it detects 220°C. The thermostat cutoff point is 200°C.

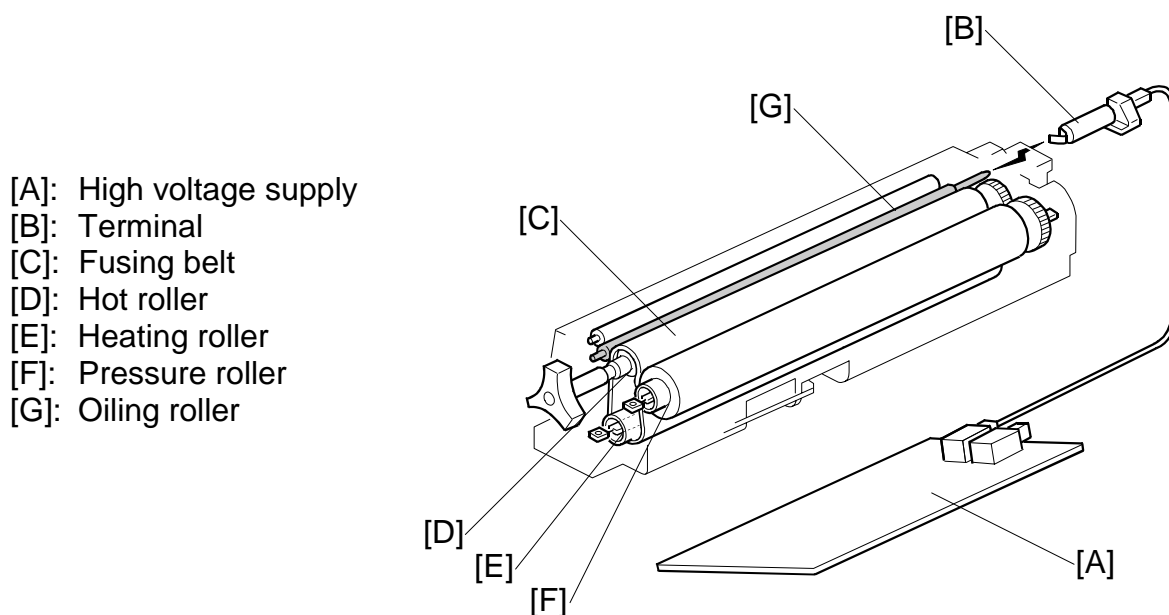
Pressure Roller Lamp

The center of the pressure roller [F] contains a lamp (350 W) [G]. The thermistor [H] and thermofuse [I] control the temperature of the roller surface.

The temperature of the surface of the pressure roller reaches to 250 °C when the pressure roller temperature rises gradually or it reaches 300 °C when it rises rapidly. Normally, the machine cuts the lamp power when the thermistor detects 220 °C.

Pressure Roller Pawls

The pawls [J] above the pressure roller help prevent paper jams.



Fusing Bias

The high voltage supply [A] provides the fusing bias. The fusing bias is a negative bias. It quenches static electricity created on the belt [C] and rollers [D]~[F] by the paper. This prevents the belt and rollers from attracting dust and dirt.

Fusing Unit SCs

If a thermistor/thermostat problem occurs, a fusing unit SC may be displayed on the operation panel. Fusing unit SCs disable the machine (☛ 4.1.1). To reset fusing unit SCs, use SP5-810 [SC_Reset] (☛ 5.2.2).

6.9.3 TEMPERATURE CONTROL

The table lists default settings and variable ranges for temperature control.

External temperature (*1)			More than 15°C ~ less than 30°C		15°C or lower		30°C or higher	
Roller			Heating	Press.	Heat.	Press.	Heat.	Press.
Fusing idling start (*2)			160	30	160	30	160	30
Print ready (*3)			165	75	<i>Heat.: +5 Adjustable with SP1-105-27 (Fusing_Temp - H: OFFSET+)</i> <i>Press.: +0 Adjustable with SP1-105-28 (Fusing_Temp - P: OFFSET+)</i>		<i>Heat.: -5 Adjustable with SP1-105-29 (Fusing_Temp - H: OFFSET-)</i> <i>Press.: +0 Adjustable with SP1-105-30 (Fusing_Temp - P: OFFSET-)</i>	
Ready (standby mode)			175	120				
Energy saver		1	100	110				
		2	Room temp.	Room temp.				
Printing	Normal paper	Mono color	160	Lamp off				
		Full color	170	Lamp off				
	'>90 g/m2, 24 lb (*4)	Mono color	170	Lamp off				
		Full color	180	Lamp off				
	Thick	Mono color	165	Lamp off				
		Full color	175	Lamp off				
	OHP	Mono color	170	Lamp off				
		Full color	180	Lamp off				
Duplex (*5)	Mono color	155	Lamp off					
	Full color	165	Lamp off					
Variable range (*6)			100 ~ 190	30 ~ 200	0 ~ +20		0 ~ -20	

*1: External temperature is measured (temperature/humidity sensor) when the main switch is turned on and when a job start signal is received.

*2: The pressure and heating rollers start idling.

*3: Fusing idling stops when both roller temperatures reach the print ready condition. The printer can process jobs when the rollers reach this temperature during warm-up.

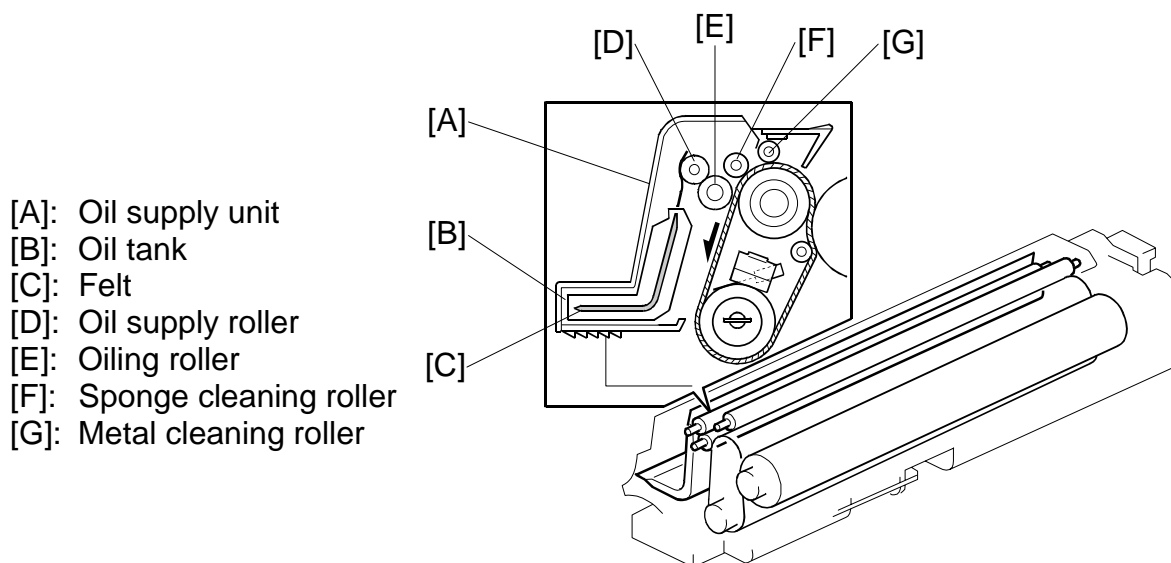
*4: A user tool (Paper Input – Paper Type) specifies the paper type in each tray (plain, thick, or OHP). If 'plain' is selected, then either SP 5-945 (MidThickPaper) or another user tool (Maintenance – Plain Paper Type) defines whether the paper in the tray is 'normal' or '>90 g/m2, 24 lb'. (☛ 5.2.2). '>90 g/m2, 24 lb' means 'greater than or equal to 90 g/m2, 24 lb'.

- 'Thick' means paper heavier than 105 g/m² (28 lb).

*5: Both sides of the paper are processed with the same roller temperatures.

*6: Use SP1-105 (Fusing_Temp) to adjust the fusing temperatures (☛ 5.2.2).

6.9.4 OIL SUPPLY AND CLEANING



Oil Supply

☛  Photocopying Processes – Fusing – Oil Supply

Oil Path

The oil goes to the fusing belt as follows:

Oil tank [B]:	Contains silicone oil
Felt [C]:	Absorbs oil for transfer to the oil supply roller
Oil supply roller [D]:	Supplies the oiling roller with a small amount of oil
Oiling roller [E]:	Supplies oil the fusing belt

Oil Recycling

The sponge cleaning roller [F] removes excess oil and foreign substances from the belt. This oil returns to the oil supply roller [D] via the felt on the oil roller, and is recycled. The metal cleaning roller [G] also removes foreign substances from the belt.

Belt Cleaning

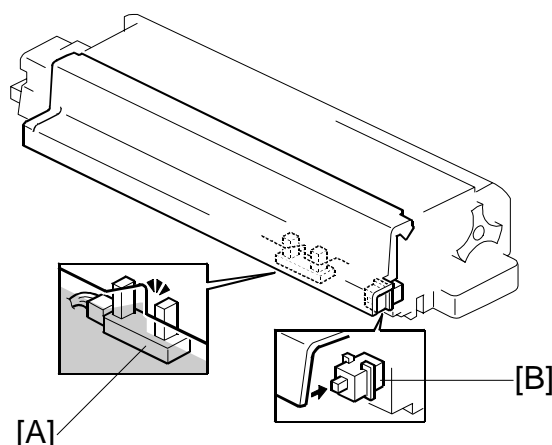
The roller carries a negative charge that removes foreign material from the belt.

Oil End Detection

The oil supply unit has an oil tank with a capacity of 70 grams. The sensor [A] under the tank passes a beam through part of the transparent tank bottom. When the oil volume becomes low or oil counter reaches 30 kp (whichever is first), the oil tank empty message appears on the operation panel. Then, the machine can output 1000 prints. After that, the machine stops and printing is disabled.

The oil end condition can be cleared by pressing and holding the reset key for more than 3 seconds.

- [A]: Oil end sensor
[B]: Fusing unit switch

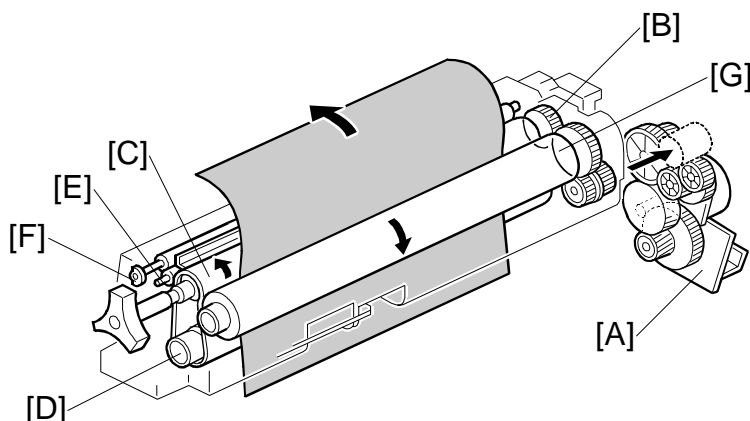


Fusing unit switch

If the fusing unit is out of position, the fusing unit switch [B] turns off. The message “reset fusing unit correctly” is displayed on the operation panel.

6.9.5 DRIVE

- [A]: Fusing unit motor
[B]: Hot roller gear
[C]: Fusing belt
[D]: Heating roller
[E]: Oiling roller
[F]: Oil supply roller
[G]: Pressure roller



Detailed
Descriptions

Drive Power Path (Fusing Unit and Oil Supply Roller)

Fusing unit motor [A] → Gears → Hot roller gear [B] → Fusing belt [C] → Heating roller [D] → Oiling roller [E] → Oil supply roller [F]

Drive Power Path (Pressure Roller)

Fusing unit motor [A] → Gears → Pressure roller [G]

6.9.6 ENERGY SAVER MODE

When the machine is not being used, the energy saver feature reduces power consumption by switching off the fusing lamp. This machine has two energy saver modes. To turn on energy saver modes, use the user tool. To adjust energy saver mode settings, use SP5-101 [Energy Saver] (➡ 5.2.2).

Level 1 Energy Saver Mode (default: off)

Level 1 energy saver mode starts a certain time after the machine has completed a print (timer: SP 5-101-3 [Energy Saver – Level 1], from 0 to 60 s in steps of 10 s). In this mode, the fusing lamps intermittently turn on and off to keep the heating roller and pressure roller at the appropriate temperature (➡ 6.9.3).

The machine returns to ready (standby) mode when one of the following happens.

- Print command received from the PC
- Any cover opened and closed
- Any operation panel keys pressed

Level 2 Energy Saver Mode

Level 2 energy saver mode starts after the machine has been idle for a certain time. This time is specified by a user tool or by SP 5-101-4 [Energy Saver – Level 2]. During level 2 energy saver mode, both lamps switch off.

- Off (energy saver mode never activates)
- 5 minutes
- 15 minutes
- 30 minutes (default)
- 45 minutes
- 60 minutes

When the machine is in this mode, the machine turns off +24V, +12V, and +5V lines. However, only +5VE lines, for the controller and circuit (voltage monitoring) on the BCU, are still active.

The machine returns to ready (standby) mode when one of the following happens.

- Print command received from the PC
- Any operation panel keys pressed

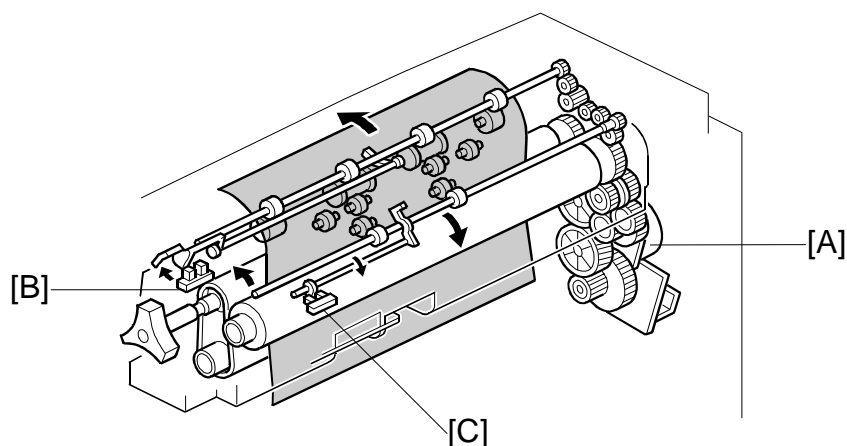
NOTE: The machine does not leave level 2 energy saver mode when covers are opened and closed, because the CPU on the BCU is not active.

Ready Mode

When an energy saver mode ends, the machine goes to the ready mode.

6.9.7 PAPER EXIT

- [A]: Fusing unit motor
[B]: Paper exit sensor
[C]: Fusing exit sensor



Drive Power Path

Fusing unit motor [A] → Gears → Rollers

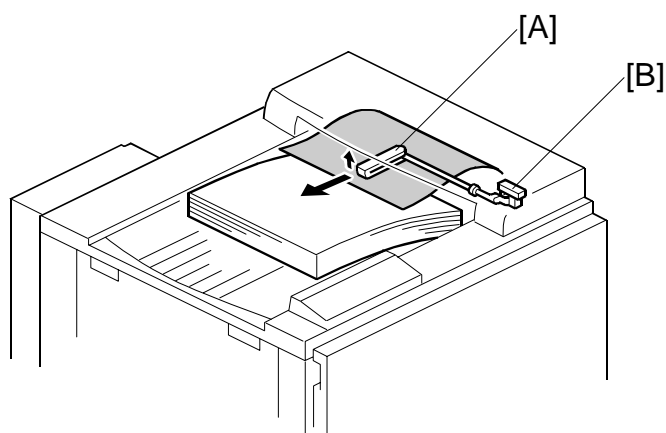
Paper Jam Detection

The paper exit sensor [B] and the fusing exit sensor [C] detect paper jams.

6.9.8 OVERFLOW DETECTION

When the paper lifts the feeler [A], the feeler turns on the sensor. If the sensor stays on for 10 seconds, the printer interrupts processing and a message is output to the PC screen.

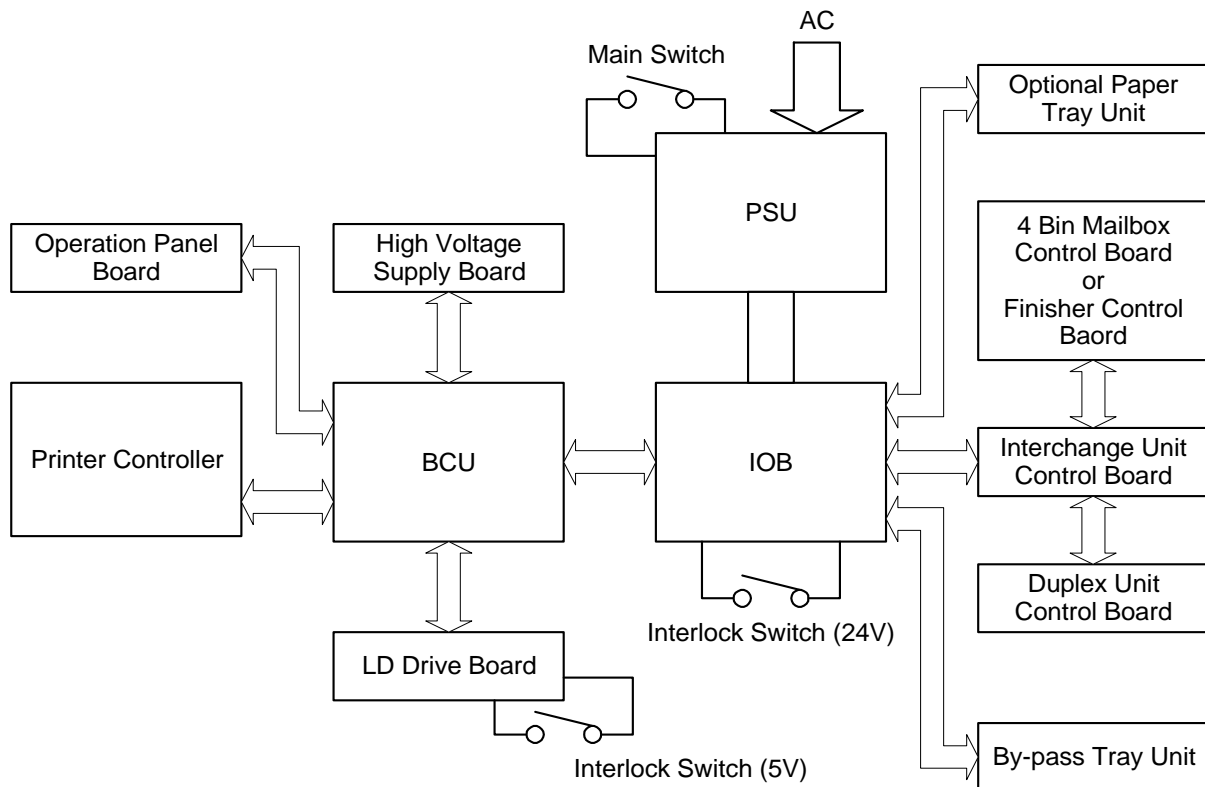
- [A]: Feeler
[B]: Paper overflow sensor



Detailed
Descriptions

6.10 PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARDS

6.10.1 PRINTER CONTROLLER



Function

The printer controller manages the printing processes and computer interface functions.

Memory

A single, non-volatile random access memory (NVRAM) stores counter information and printer settings.

When the controller board is replaced, install the NVRAM from the old board on the new board.

Interfaces

Centronics (IEEE1284 Nibble, ECP)
 Ethernet (100Base-TX/10Base-T)
 USB 2.0

Slots

There are 4 slots. Two are for memory, one is for printer application software (PostScript) and the other is for GL emulation (GL – Japan only).

Options

IEEE1394 board

Hard disk drive (HDD)

User account enhancement module

DIP Switch

DIP SW No.	OFF	ON
1	Boot-up from machine	Boot-up from IC card
2 to 4	Factory Use Only: Keep these switches OFF.	

If a controller firmware download attempt failed, you must boot the machine from the IC card. To do this, set DIP SW 1 on the controller board to ON.

LED Indicators

	On	Off
Green	Linked	Not linked
Yellow	100 Mbps	10 Mbps

6.10.2 BASE ENGINE CONTROL UNIT (BCU)

Function

The BCU is at the rear-left corner of the main unit, on the left fence. The BCU controls:

- System I/O
- High-voltage supply
- AC supply
- Optional unit operations
- Engine sequence

Upgrading

To upgrade the BCU software, you must insert an IC card in the controller's IC card slot.

Nonvolatile Random Access Memory (NVRAM)

The NVRAM on the BCU stores the engine settings. These include the process control and the maintenance kit counter settings.

When the BCU board is replaced, install the NVRAM from the old board on the new board.

DIP Switch

DIP SW No.	OFF	ON
1	Boot-up from machine	Boot-up from IC card
2 to 4	Factory Use Only: Keep these switches OFF.	

If a BCU firmware download attempt failed, you must boot the machine from the IC card. To do this, set DIP SW 1 on the BCU board to ON.

6.10.3 INPUT/OUTPUT (I/O) BOARD

The board controls the following:

I/O

Motor and clutch operation

Sensors

Solenoids

6.10.4 POWER SUPPLY UNIT (PSU)

The PSU supplies power to each unit.

6.10.5 HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY

This supplies the following units with high voltage:

Charge corona unit

Image transfer unit

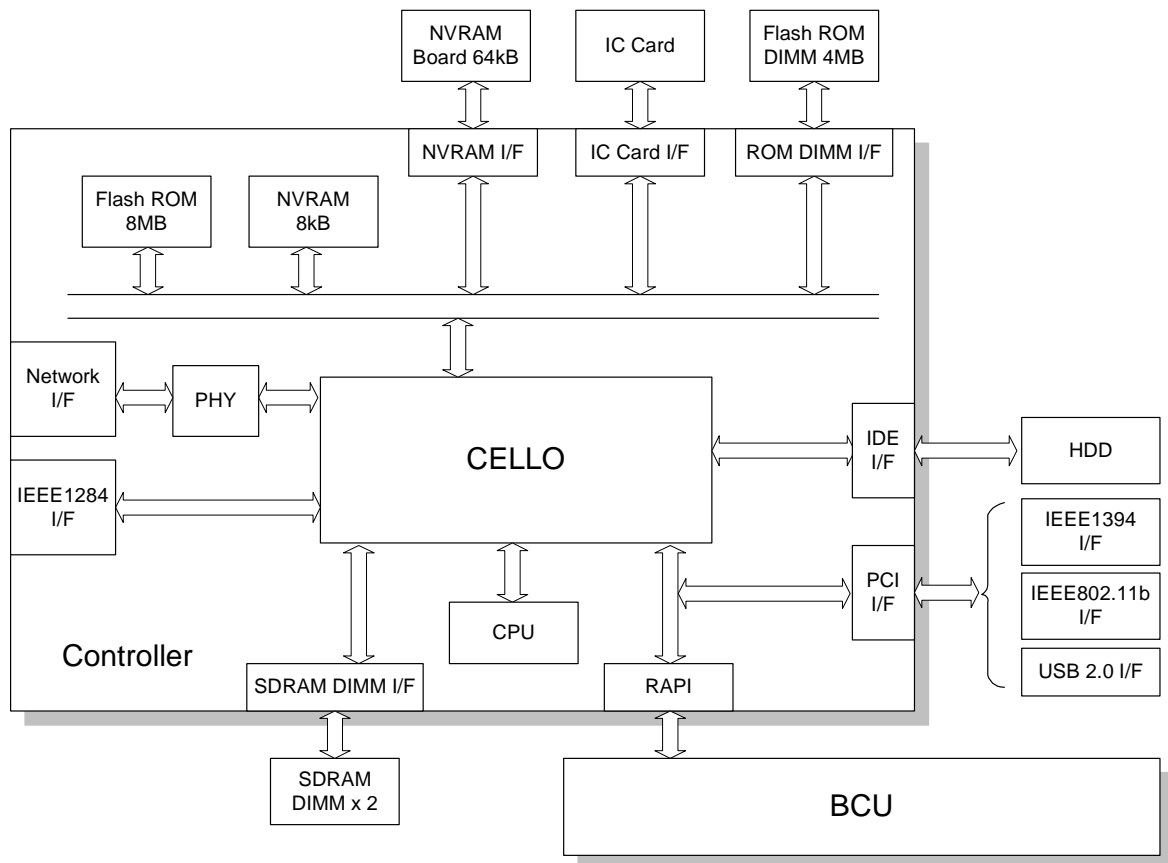
Image transfer belt cleaning unit

Development units

Paper transfer roller

6.11 CONTROLLER

6.11.1 OVERVIEW



The controller uses GW (Ground Work) architecture.

1. **CPU:**
QED RM5261 (250 MHz)
2. **CELLO:**
GW architecture ASIC. It uses a 124 MHz bus (64 bit) for interfacing with CPU and memory. It controls the interface with the CPU and also controls the following functions: memory, local bus, interrupts, PCI bus, video data, HDD, network, operation panel, IEEE1284, and image processing.
3. **SDRAM DIMM (2 slots):** 64 MB SDRAM (resident), expandable up to 384 MB with a 64 MB, 128 MB, or 256 MB SDRAM.
4. **Flash ROM:**
8 MB flash ROM programmed for system and network applications.
5. **ROM DIMM (2 slots):**
The DIMM installed in the machine includes 4 MB flash ROM programmed for printer applications. This DIMM also includes 4 kB of Mask ROM for storing internal printer fonts. Currently the remaining DIMM slot is not being used.

6. NVRAM:

8 kB NVRAM for storing the printer parameters and logged data

7. IEEE 1284 Interface:

Supports compatible, nibble, and ECP modes

8. Network Interface:

100BASE-TX/10BASE-T

9. USB Interface:

See the USB Interface section.

10. NVRAM board (option):

64 kB NVRAM used for storing a record of the number of pages printed under each "User Code".

11. IEEE 1394 Interface (option):

See the IEEE 1394 Interface section.

12. IEEE 802.11b Interface (option):

See the IEEE 802.1b Interface section.

13. HDD (option):

A 3.5" HDD (20.5 GB) can be connected using the IDE interface. The hard disk is partitioned as shown below. The sizes cannot be adjusted.

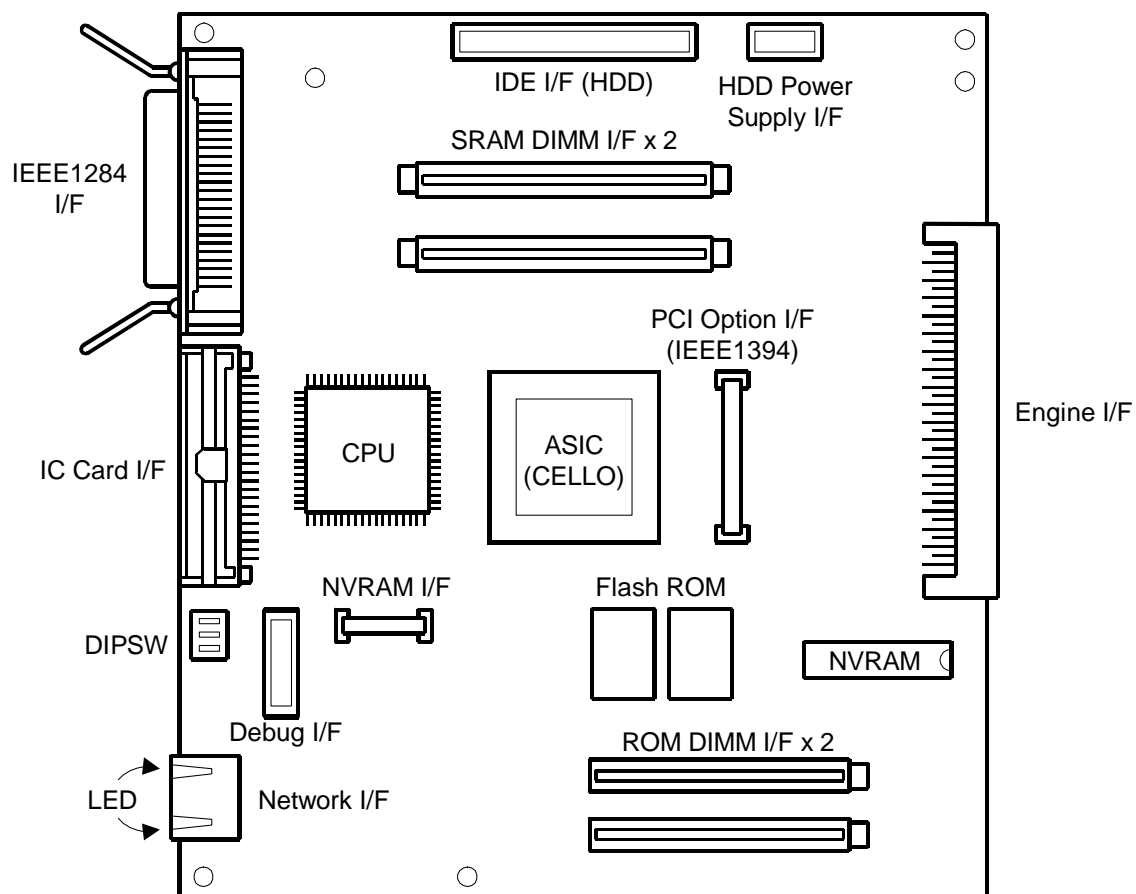
Partition	Size	Function	Comment
File System 1	500 MB	Downloaded fonts, forms.	Remain stored even after cycling power off/on.
Image TMP	9800 MB	Collation, sample print, locked print.	Commonly used area for applications, erased after power off.
Job Log	10 MB	Job log.	Remains stored even after cycling power off/on.

The system and application software for the following boards can be downloaded from the Controller IC Card.

- Controller (Flash ROM and flash ROM DIMM)
- BCU
- NIB

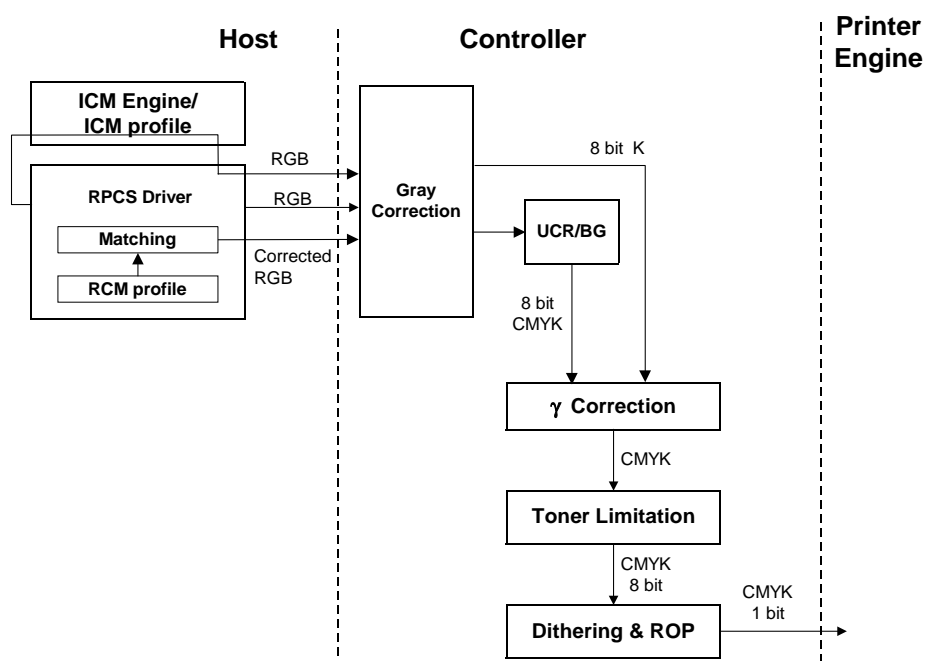
For details about downloading software from an IC card, see Service Tables – Firmware Update Procedure.

6.11.2 BOARD LAYOUT

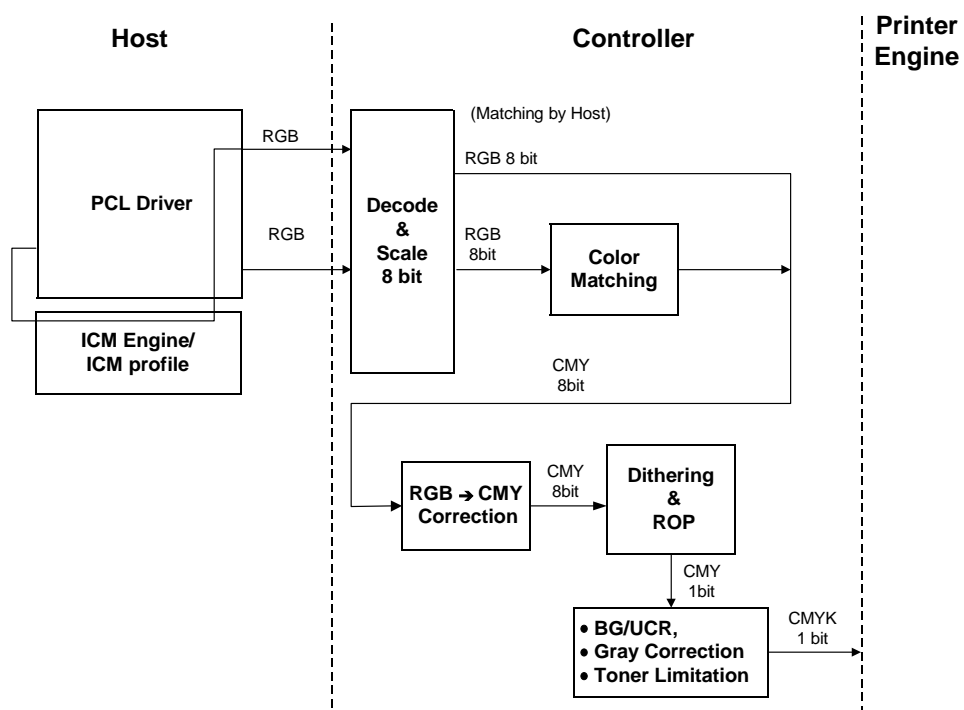


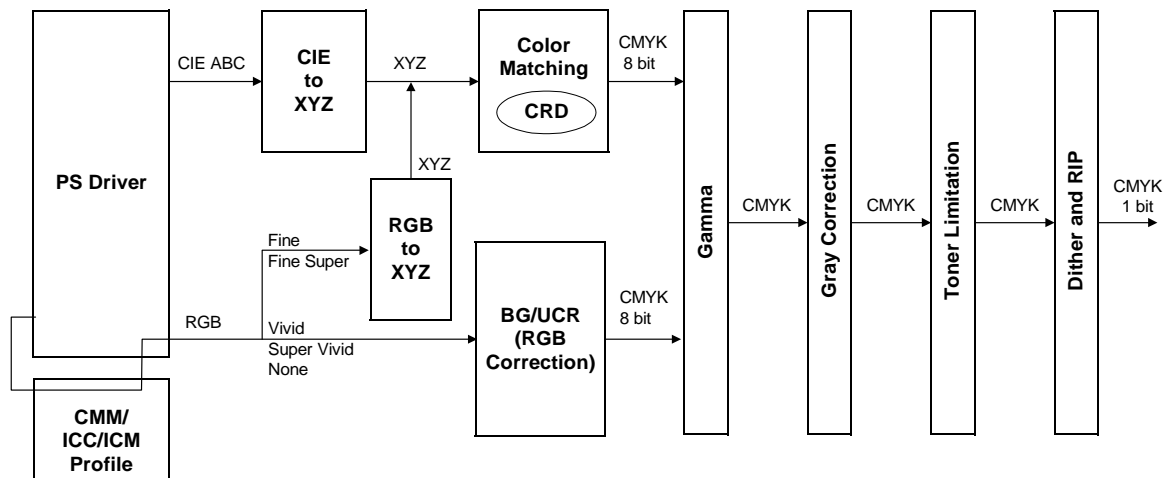
6.11.3 PRINT DATA PROCESSING

RPCS Driver



PCL5c Driver



PS3 Driver**CMS (Color Management System)**

CMS optimizes the color print quality using a color profile that is based on the characteristics of the printer. With RPCS, the color profile is applied by the driver. With PS3 and PCL5c, the color profile is applied in the matching/CRD module on the controller except when using CMM/ICC/ICM profiles.

CMS is not used when the color profile setting in the printer driver is set to “Off.”

Gray Correction

Gray correction processes gray with K or CMYK toner depending on the driver settings.

BG/UCR (Black Generation/Under Color Removal)

The RGB data is converted to CMYK data with BG/UCR. During CMYK conversion, some CMY data is replaced with K data by the BG/UCR algorithm.

Gamma Correction

The printer gamma can be adjusted with controller SP mode (Gamma Adj.). For CMYK, there are 15 points between 0 and 100%. The corrected gamma data is stored in NVRAM.

Toner Limitation

Toner limitation prevents toner from being scattered around text or printed lines.

Maximum values have been prepared independently for text and photo. They can be adjusted with controller SP mode (Toner Limit).

- Default: 190% for text, 260% for photo
- Adjustable range: 100% to 400%

Dither Processing and ROP/RIP

Dither patterns have been prepared for photo and text independently. Dithering converts the 8-bit data to 1-bit data. However, these dither patterns create the illusion of 256 gradations for high quality prints. The optimum dither pattern is selected depending on the selected resolution.

RIP: Raster Image Processing

ROP: Raster Operation

6.11.4 CONTROLLER FUNCTIONS

Sample Print

This feature was formerly known as “Proof Print”. It requires installing an optional HDD. This function gives users a chance to check the print results before starting a multiple-set print run.

- The size of the hard disk partition for the sample print feature is 5.8 GB. This partition is also used by the collation and locked print features.
- The partition can hold up to 30 files, including files stored using locked print.
- The partition can hold a log containing up to 20 errors, excluding jobs stored using locked print.
- The maximum number of pages is 2,000, including jobs using locked print and collation.

Locked Print

This feature requires installing an optional HDD. Using this feature, the print job is stored in the machine but will not be printed until the user inputs an ID at the machine's operation panel. This ID must match the ID that was input with the printer driver.

- Stored data is automatically deleted after it is printed.
- Stored data can be manually deleted at the operation panel.
- The partition can hold up to 30 files, including files stored using sample print.
- The partition can hold a log containing up to 20 errors, excluding logs stored using locked print.
- The maximum number of pages is 2,000, including jobs using sample print and collation.
- Locked print uses the same hard disk partition as sample print and collation, which is 5.8 GB.

Paper Source Selection

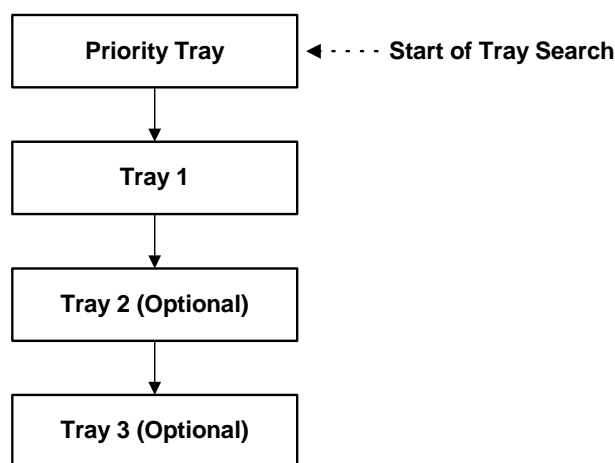
Tray Priority (Auto Tray Select)

The “Tray Priority” setting determines the start of the tray search when the user selects “Auto Tray Select” with the driver. The machine searches for a paper tray with the specified paper size and type.

When no tray contains paper that matches the paper size and type specified by the driver, the controller stops printing until the user loads the correct paper.

The “Tray Priority” setting can be specified in the “Paper Input” menu. (Menu/ Paper Input/ Tray Priority)

NOTE: The by-pass feed table is not part of the tray search.



Tray Lock

If “Tray Lock” is enabled for a tray, the controller skips the “locked” tray in the tray search process.

The “Tray Lock” setting can be specified in the “Paper Input” menu. (Menu/ Paper Input/ Tray Lock)

NOTE: The by-pass feed table cannot be unlocked (Tray Lock is always enabled).

Manual Tray Select

If the selected tray does not have the paper size and type specified by the driver, the controller stops printing until the user loads the correct paper.

Auto Continue

Overview

When this function is enabled, the machine waits for a specified period (0, 1, 5, 10, 15 minutes) for the correct paper size and type to be set in the tray. If the timer runs out, the machine starts printing, even if there is no paper tray which matches the paper size and paper type specified by the driver.

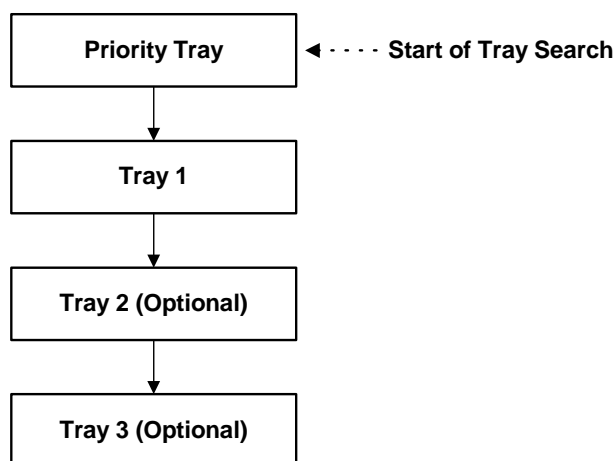
The machine searches for a paper tray in the following way.

- The interval can be set with the “System” menu in the User Tools.
(Menu/ System/ Auto Continue)

NOTE: The default setting for this feature is ‘disabled’.

Auto Tray Select

When there is no paper tray that matches the paper size and type specified by the driver, the machine searches for any tray that has paper, and prints from the first tray it finds. The start of the tray search is the tray selected as the “Priority Tray.”



Manual Tray Select

The machine prints from the selected tray even if the paper size and type do not match the setting specified from the driver.

If “Auto Continue” is disabled, the machine waits until the user loads the correct paper in the tray.

Paper Output Tray

The output tray can be selected with the “Output Tray” setting in the “System” menu (Menu/ System/ Output Tray).

If a print job does not specify an output tray or if the driver specifies the default tray, the output tray selected with this user tool will be used.

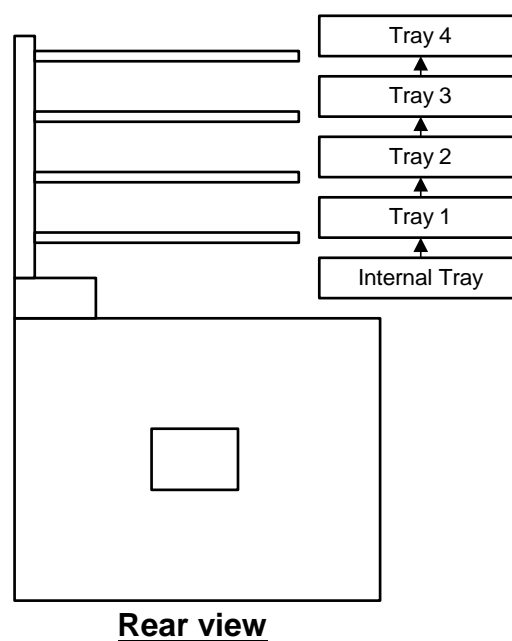
Output Tray Selected

- If the machine cannot print to the selected output tray, it prints to the default paper output tray.
- If paper overflow is detected at the selected output tray, the controller stops printing until the overflow detector goes off.

Sequential Stacking

When the 4-bin mailbox is installed, “Auto Tray SW” is selected as the output tray in the “System” menu, and “Printer Default” is specified as the output tray in the driver, the machine automatically sends the output to the lowest tray. When that tray fills up, the machine sends the output to the next lowest tray. When that tray also fills up, the machine sends the output to the next lowest tray sequentially. This feature is called “Sequential Stacking”.

- If a tray becomes full and paper is detected in the next tray, the machine displays an error and stops printing. When paper in the next tray is removed, the machine automatically resumes printing to the next tray.
- If all trays become full (overflow detected in all trays), the machine displays an error and stops printing. This time, all paper in all trays must be removed.



Stapling

Stapling is available when the finisher is installed.

The finisher has only one stapling position.

- Depending on the paper orientation, the image may have to be rotated. The controller rotates the image. If the paper cannot be physically stapled as specified by the driver, it will not be stapled.
- There is a limit for the number of sheets which can be stapled. If a job has more than this number, it will not be stapled.

A3, B4, 11" x 17", LG: 20 sheets (80 g/m², 20 lb)

A4, B5 sideways, LT: 30 sheets (80 g/m², 20 lb)

6.12 IEEE1394 INTERFACE

6.12.1 SPECIFICATIONS

Hardware Specification

Interface: IEEE1394 (6 pins)
 (no power supply, cable power repeated, IEEE1394a-2000 compliant)
 Ports: 2 ports
 Data rates: 400Mbps/200Mbps/100Mbps

System Requirements

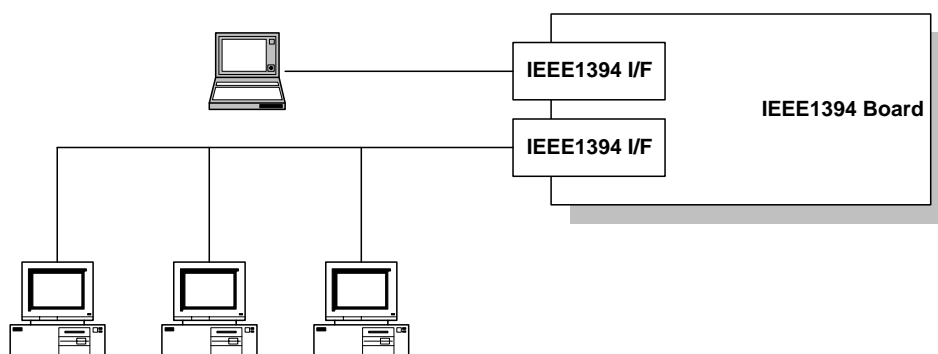
PC: Windows PC with IEEE1394 port
 OS: Microsoft Windows 2000 upgraded with service pack 1
 Cable length: 4.5m (15ft)

6.12.2 IEEE1394

IEEE1394, also known as FireWire (a name patented by Apple), is an easy-to-use peer-to-peer networking technology allowing speeds of up to 400 Mbps.

The current standard contains the following features, which are supported in most devices:

- Hot swapping (cables can be connected and disconnected while the computer and other devices are switched on)
- Peer-to-peer networking (no hub required)
- No terminator or device ID is required, unlike SCSI
- Automatic configuration of devices upon start-up, or “plug and play”.
- Real-time data transfer at 100, 200, and 400 Mbps
- Common connectors for different devices

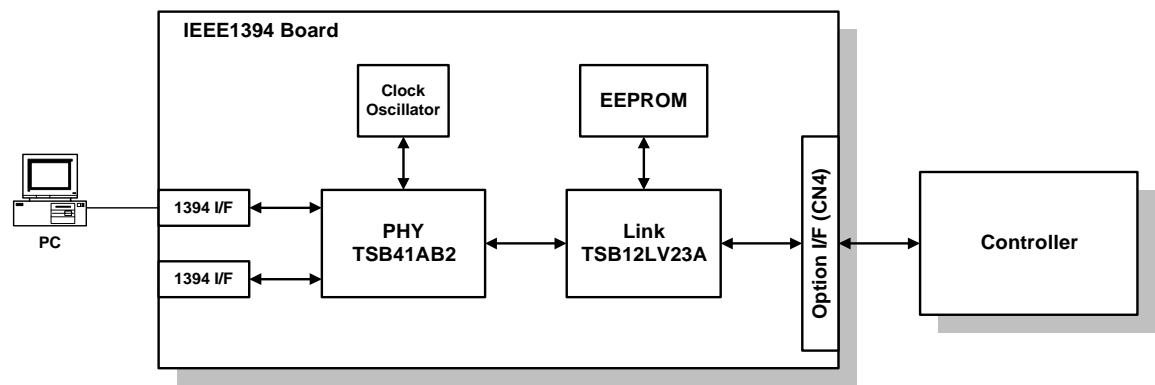


Detailed
Descriptions

The cable length is limited to 4.5 m (15ft). However, up to 16 cables and 63 devices can be connected to an IEEE1394 network.

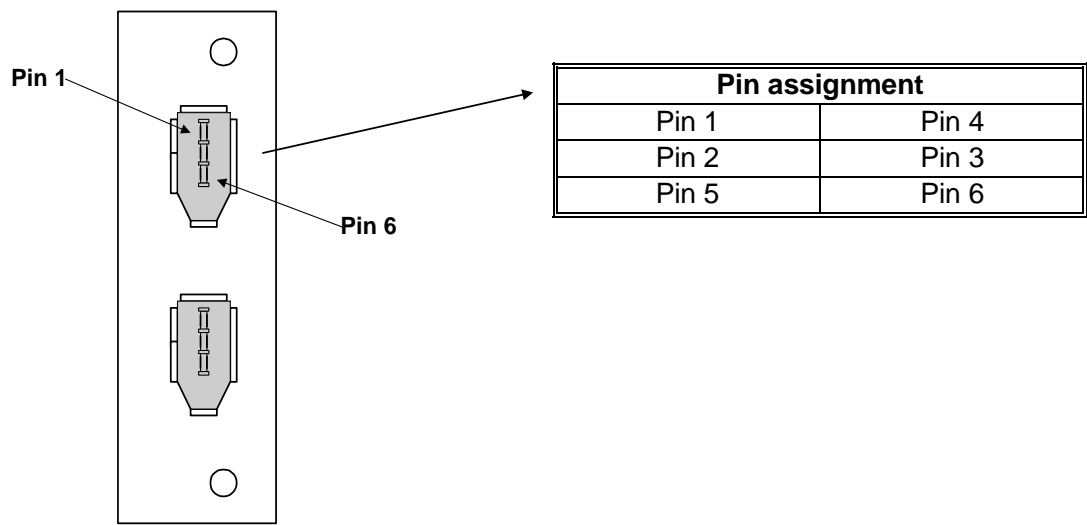
IEEE1394 cables can be either 4-pin (data only) or 6-pin (data and power). IEEE1394 allows either 6-pin or 4-pin connectors. However, this machine only uses the 6-pin connectors. The machine has two 6-pin ports.

6.12.3 BLOCK DIAGRAM



- PHY: Physical layer control device
- Link: Link layer control device
- EEPROM: 256-byte ROM

6.12.4 PIN ASSIGNMENT



Pin No.	Signal Description
1	Cable Power
2	GND
3	Receive strobe
4	Transmit data
5	Receive data
6	Transmit strobe

6.12.5 REMARKS ABOUT THIS INTERFACE KIT

Note the following points about this unit.

- The machine does not print reports specifically for IEEE1394. Just print the Configuration Page at installation to check that the machine recognizes the card.
- There is no spooler or print queue. If a computer tries to print over the IEEE1394 while the printer is busy, the IEEE1394 interface card inside the printer will return a busy signal.
- After starting a job using IEEE1394, do not switch the printer off until the job has been completed. Even though the printer may appear to be dead, it may be in the middle of an IEEE1394 protocol exchange with the computer.
- When using IEEE1394, it is not possible to check the printer status from the computer with a utility such as Printer Manager for Client.

6.12.6 TROUBLESHOOTING NOTES

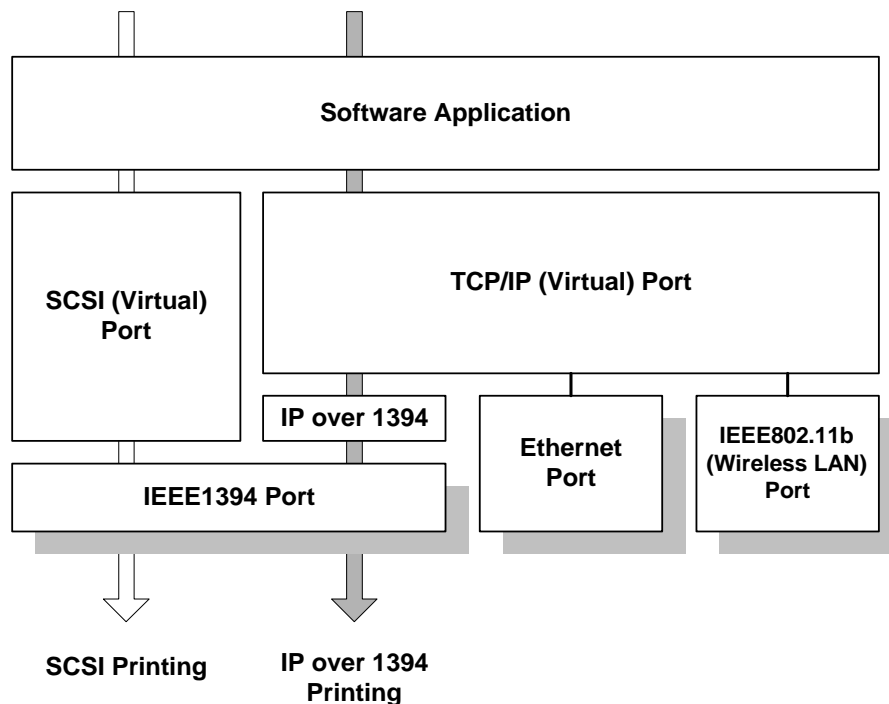
If there are problems printing using the IEEE1394 interface, check the following.

- Is the computer using Windows 2000 with service pack 1?
- Has the interface card been replaced recently? Each card has an individual address, similar to the MAC address in an Ethernet card. If the card was changed, the driver cannot find the old card. The new card is another device and a new printer appears in Windows Control panel, and this must be configured in the same way as the printer that was replaced (the old printer icon in Windows Control Panel should be deleted) has to be reconfigured.
- Is there a loop somewhere in the network? An IEEE1394 network must be a chain or a branched chain. There can be no loops.
- Try to find out where in the chain the problem is occurring. Test the machine one-to-one with the computer to determine if the printer is defective (when the printer's interface cable is plugged in, the computer should see 'Printer Ready'; when the cable is disconnected, the computer should see 'Offline').

6.12.7 IP OVER IEEE 1394

This machine supports IEEE1394 printing by setting an IP address. This feature is called 'IP over 1394'.

The former IEEE1394 printing without IP address is known as 'SCSI printing'.



- NOTE:** 1) IP over 1394 can only be used with Windows XP or Me. It only works with Windows Me if SmartNetMonitor for Client (version 5 or later) is installed.
- 2) Windows XP and 2000 supports IEEE1394 SCSI printing.

6.13 IEEE 802.11B (WIRELESS LAN)

6.13.1 SPECIFICATIONS

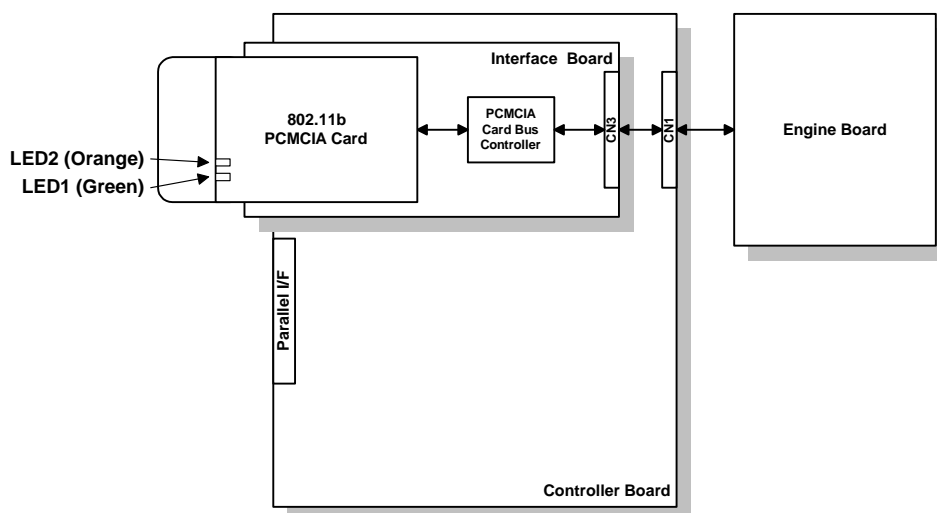
A wireless LAN is a flexible data communication system used to extend or replace a wired LAN. Wireless LAN employs radio frequency technology to transmit and receive data over the air and minimize the need for wired connections.

- With wireless LANs, users can access information on a network without looking for a place to plug into the network.
- Network managers can set up or expand networks without installing or moving wires.
- Most wireless LANs can be integrated into existing wired networks. Once installed, the network treats wireless nodes like any other physically wired network component.
- Flexibility and mobility make wireless LANs both effective extensions of and attractive alternatives to wired networks.

Standard applied: IEEE802.11b
 Data transfer rates: 11 Mbps/5.5 Mbps/2 Mbps/1 Mbps (auto sense)
 Network protocols: TCP/IP, Apple Talk, NetBEUI, IPX/SPX
 Bandwidth: 2.4GHz
 (divided over 14 channels, 2400 to 2497 MHz for each channel)

NOTE: The wireless LAN cannot be used together with the Ethernet. The “LAN Type” setting in the Host Interface menu determines the LAN interface to be used.

6.13.2 BLOCK DIAGRAM



Detailed
Descriptions

LED Indicators

LED	Description	On	Off
LED1 (Green)	Link status	Link success	Link failure
LED2 (Orange)	Power distribution	Power on	Power off

6.13.3 TRANSMISSION MODE

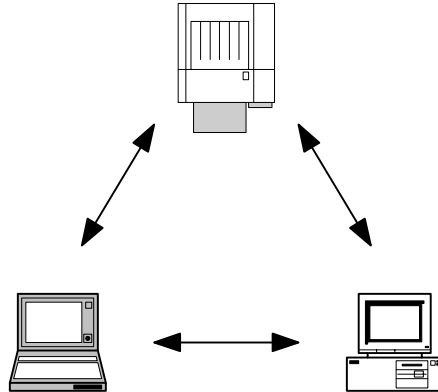
The following transmission modes are provided for wireless communication.

Ad hoc Mode

The ad hoc mode allows communication between each device (station) in a simple peer-to-peer network. In this mode, all devices must use the same channel to communicate.

In this machine, the default transmission mode is ad hoc mode and the default channel is 11. First, set up the machine in ad hoc mode and program the necessary settings, even if the machine will be used in the infrastructure mode.

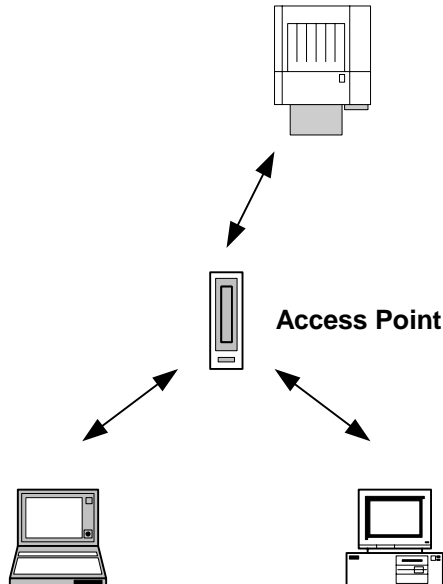
To switch between ad hoc and infrastructure modes, use the following user tool: Host Interface Menu - IEEE802.11b - Comm Mode



Infrastructure Mode

The infrastructure mode allows communication between each computer and the machine via an access point equipped with an antenna and wired into the network. This arrangement is used in more complex topologies.

- The wireless LAN client must use the same SSID (Service Set ID) as the access point in order to communicate.



6.13.4 SECURITY FEATURES

SSID (Service Set ID)

The SSID is used by the access point to recognize the client and allow access to the network. Only clients that share the same SSID with the access point can access the network.

NOTE: 3) If the SSID is not set, clients connect to the nearest access point.
4) The SSID can be set using the web status monitor or telnet.

Using the SSID in Ad hoc mode

When the SSID is used in ad hoc mode and nothing is set, the machine automatically uses "ASSID" as the SSID. In such a case, "ASSID" must also be set at the client.

NOTE: SSID in ad hoc mode is sometimes called "Network Name."

WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy)

WEP is a coding system designed to protect wireless data transmission. In order to unlock encoded data, the same WEP key is required on the receiving side. There is 128 bit WEP keys.

NOTE: The WEP key can be set using the web status monitor or telnet.

MAC Address

When the infrastructure mode is used, access to the network can also be limited at the access points using the MAC address. This setting may not be available with some types of access points.

6.13.5 TROUBLESHOOTING NOTES

Communication Status

Wireless LAN communication status can be checked with the UP mode “W.LAN Signal” in the Maintenance menu. This can also be checked using the Web Status Monitor or Telnet.

The status is described on a simple number scale.

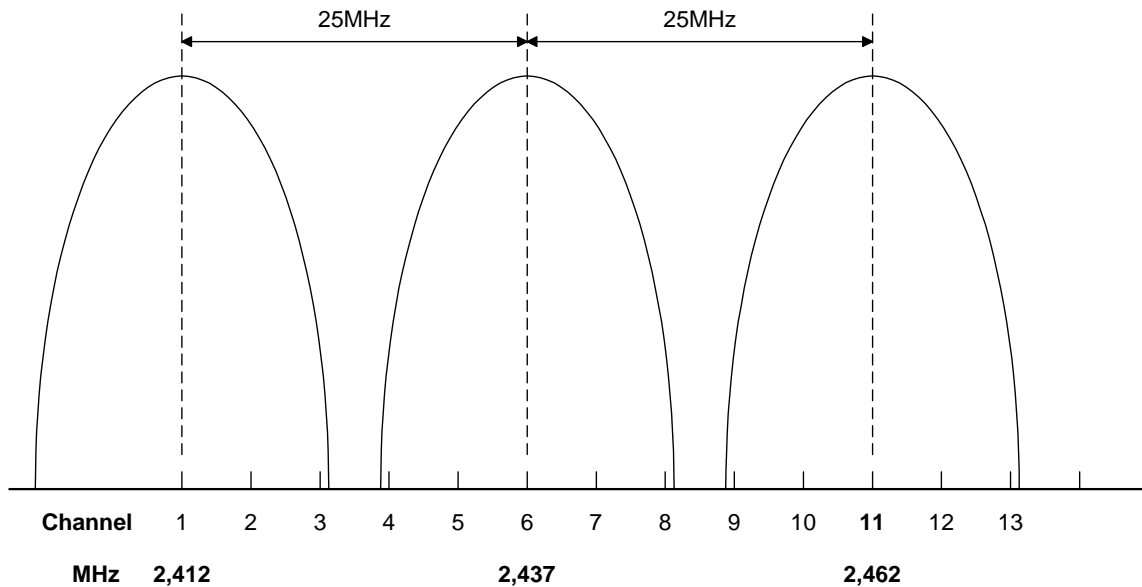
Status Display	Communication Status
Good	76~100
Fair	41~75
Poor	21~40
Unavailable	0~20

NOTE: Communication status can be measured only when the infrastructure mode is being used.

Channel Settings

If a communication error occurs because of electrical noise, interference with other electrical devices, etc., you may have to change the channel settings.

To avoid interference with neighboring channels, it is recommended to change by 3 channels. For example, if there are problems using channel 11 (default), try using channel 8.



Troubleshooting Steps

If there are problems using the wireless LAN, check the following.

- 1) Check the LED indicator on the wireless LAN card.
- 2) Check if "IEEE802.11b" is selected in the UP mode LAN Type in Network Setup in the Host Interface menu.
- 3) Check if the channel settings are correct.
- 4) Check if the SSID and WEP are correctly set.

If infrastructure mode is being used,

- 1) Check if the MAC address is properly set
- 2) Check the communication status
If the communication status is poor, bring the machine closer to the access point, or check for any obstructions between the machine and the access point.
If the problem cannot be solved, try changing the channel setting.

6.14 USB

6.14.1 SPECIFICATIONS

This model is equipped with standard USB.

Interface: USB 1.1, USB 2.0

Data rates: 480 Mbps (high speed), 12 Mbps (full speed), 1.5 Mbps (low speed);
High-speed mode is only supported by USB 2.0.

6.14.2 USB 1.1/2.0

USB (Universal Serial Bus) offers simple connectivity for computers, printers, keyboards, and other peripherals. In a USB environment, terminators, device IDs (like SCSI), and DIP switch settings are not necessary.

USB 1.1 contains the following features:

- Plug & Play
- Hot swapping (cables can be connected and disconnected while the computer and other devices are switched on)
- No terminator or device ID required
- Data rates of 12 Mbps (full speed), and 1.5 Mbps (low speed)
- Common connectors for different devices

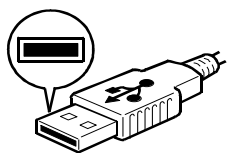
USB 2.0 is a successor to the USB 1.1 specification. It uses the same cables, connectors, and software interfaces. It provides an easy-to-use connection to a wide range of products with a maximum data rate of 480 Mbps (high speed).

Up to 127 devices can be connected and six cascade connections are allowed. Power is supplied from the computer, and the maximum cable length is 5 m.

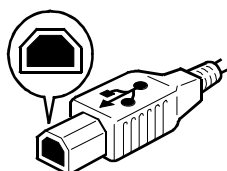
6.14.3 USB CONNECTORS

USB is a serial protocol and a physical link transmitting all data on a single pair of wires. Another pair provides power to downstream peripherals.

The USB standard specifies two types of connectors, type “A” connectors for upstream connection to the host system, and type “B” connectors for downstream connection to the USB device.



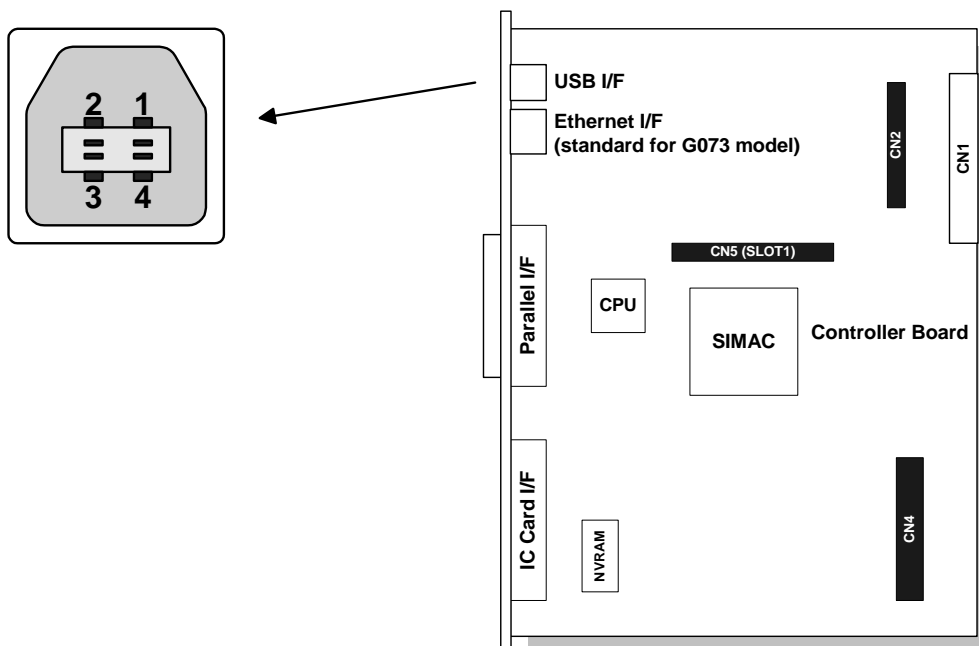
Type “A” connector



Type “B” connector

6.14.4 PIN ASSIGNMENT

The controller has a type “B” receptacle (CN10).



Detailed
Descriptions

Pin No.	Signal Description	Wiring Assignment
1	Power	Red
2	Data –	White
3	Data +	Green
4	Power GND	White

6.14.5 REMARKS

- The machine does not print reports specifically for USB.
- Only one host computer is allowed for the USB connection.
- After starting a job using USB, do not switch the printer off until the job has been completed.
When a user cancels a print job and data transmitted to the printer has not been printed at the time of cancellation, the job will continue to print up to the page where the print job was cancelled
- When the controller board is replaced, the host computer will recognize the machine as a different device.

Related SP Mode

“USB Settings” in the printer engine service mode. Data rates can be adjusted to full speed fixed (12 Mbps). This switch may be used for troubleshooting if there is a data transfer error using the high-speed mode (480 Mbps).

SPECIFICATIONS

SPECIFICATIONS

1. GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS

1.1 MAIN UNIT

Configuration:	Desktop
Print Process:	Laser beam scan & dry electrostatic transfer system
Resolution:	600 x 600 dpi
Warming-up Time:	99 seconds or less
1st Print (A4/LT LEF)*:	Color: 18.0 seconds or less Black & White: 7.5 seconds or less
	*From the start of polygon mirror rotation.
Auto Paper Tray Switch:	Available
Paper Size:	Regular sizes:

	Europe & Asia	N. America
Standard tray	A6 to A3	HLT to DLT
Bypass tray	A6 to A3	HLT to DLT

Standard tray: Paper size is automatically detected

Bypass tray: Manual input at the operation panel

Custom sizes (Europe, Asia, N. America):

	Min.	Max.
Standard tray	100 x 148 mm (3.9" x 5.8")	297 x 432 mm (11.7" x 17")
Bypass tray	90 x 148 mm (3.5" x 5.8")	305 x 457 mm (12" x 18")*

*Printable area is 297 x 432 mm (11.7 x 17").

Paper Weight:	Standard tray	60 to 105 g/m ² , 16 lb. Bond to 28 lb. Bond
	Bypass tray	60 to 163 g/m ² , 16 lb. Bond to 43 lb. Bond

Printing Speed:		Plain Paper	Thick	OHP
	Color	10 ppm	4 ppm	2 ppm
	Black & White	36 ppm	6.5 ppm	3.2 ppm

Paper Feed:	Standard tray	Friction pad
	Optional paper tray unit	FRR
	By-pass	FRR

SPECIFICATIONS

Paper Capacity:

Main	250 sheets x 1 tray
Optional paper tray unit	500 sheets x 1 or 2 trays
By-pass	100 sheets

Fusing:

Heating rollers and fusing belt

Paper Output:

Face down

Output Tray Full:

Detected

Capacity: 400 sheets (200 for A3/DLT)

Photoconductor:

OPC belt

Charging:

Corona wire with grid plate

Laser Beam:

Semiconductor laser

Development:

Mono component toner

Transfer:

Image transfer: Transfer belt with bias roller

Paper transfer: Roller

Separation:

Discharge pin

Cleaning:

OPC belt: Blade

Image transfer belt: Cleaning brush

Quenching:

Lamp

Toner Supply:

Cartridge

Waste Toner Disposal:

Toner bottle

Total Counter:

Electrical

Maintenance Counters:

Unit	Mechanical/ Electrical	Sheets/ Time	Reset
PCU	Electrical	120KD	Automatic
Development Unit (K)	Electrical	120KD	Automatic
Development Unit (Y,M,C)	Electrical	60KD	Automatic
O/B Waste Toner Bottle	Mechanical	50KD	Automatic
T/B Waste Toner Bottle	Mechanical	120KD	Automatic
Fusing Oil	Electrical	30KP	Manual
Fusing Unit	Electrical	120KP	Manual

Self-Diagnostics: Jam, Service Call

Memory Standard: 64 MB
Options: 64 MB, 128 MB, 256 MB
Maximum allowable: 384 MB

Test Printing: Available

Power Source:

	Voltage	Frequency	Amperage
NA	120 V	60 Hz	11 A
EU & Asia	220 to 240 V	50/60 Hz	7 A

Power Consumption: Regular mode: 1.2 KW (NA), 1.5 KW (EU & Asia)
Energy star mode: 35 W or less

Dimensions (W x D x H): 540 x 670 x 470 mm (by-pass tray not extended)

Weight: 60 Kg or less

Host Interfaces: Bi-directional (Centronics) IEEE1284 parallel x 1
Ethernet (100 Base-TX/10 Base-T)
USB 2.0
IEEE1394 (IP over): Optional
IEEE802.11b (Wireless LAN): Optional

NOTE: 1) USB 2.0 is on another board which occupies the optional interface slot.
2) It is necessary to remove the USB board when an optional interface is installed.

SPECIFICATIONS

2. SUPPORTED PAPER SIZES

2.1 MAIN TRAY, BYPASS TRAY, AND DUPLEX UNIT

Paper		Size	Main			By-pass			Duplex Common
			N.A.	EUR.	ASIA	N.A.	EUR.	ASIA	
A3	SEF	297 x 420 mm	Y [#]	Y	Y	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y
B4	SEF	257 x 364 mm	Y [#]	Y	Y	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y
A4	SEF	210 x 297 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y
A4	LEF	297 x 210 mm	Y [#]	Y	Y	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y
B5	SEF	182 x 257 mm	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y
B5	LEF	257 x 182 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y
A5	SEF	148 x 210 mm	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y
A5	LEF	210 x 148 mm	Y [#]	Y	Y	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y
B6	SEF	128 x 182 mm	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	N
B6	LEF	182 x 128 mm	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
A6	SEF	105 x 148 mm	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	N
A6	LEF	148 x 105 mm	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
DLT	SEF	11" x 17"	Y	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y
LG	SEF	8 1/2" x 14"	Y	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y
LT	SEF	8 1/2" x 11"	Y	Y	Y	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y
LT	LEF	11" x 8 1/2"	Y	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y
HLT	SEF	5 1/2" x 8 1/2"	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y
HLT	LEF	8 1/2" x 5 1/2"	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	N	N	N	N
Executive	SEF	7 1/4" x 10 1/2"	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y
Executive	LEF	10 1/2" x 7 1/4"	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	N
F	SEF	8" x 13"	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y
Foolscap	SEF	8 1/2" x 13"	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y
Folio	SEF	8 1/4" x 13"	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y
8 K	SEF	267 x 390 mm	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y
16 K	SEF	195 x 267 mm	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y
16 K	LEF	267 x 195 mm	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y
Customized	Width	100 to 297 mm	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	N	N	N	N
	Length	148 to 432 mm							
	Width	90 to 305 mm	N	N	N	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	N
	Length	148 to 457 mm							
Com10	SEF	4 1/8" x 9 1/2"	N	N	N	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	N
Monarch	SEF	3 7/8" x 7 1/2"	N	N	N	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	N
C6	SEF	114 x 162 mm	N	N	N	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	N
C5	SEF	162 x 229 mm	N	N	N	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	N
DL Env	SEF	110 x 220 mm	N	N	N	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]	N

Symbols

- Y: Automatically detected
- Y[#]: Needs to be manually specified
- N: Not supported

2.2 FINISHER, MAIL BOX, AND PAPER TRAY UNIT

Paper		Size	Finisher			Mail Box	Paper Tray Unit		
			Clear	Shift	Staple		Common	N.A.	EUR.
			Common						
A3	SEF	297 x 420	Y	Y	Y(30)	Y	Y	Y	Y
B4	SEF	257 x 364	Y	Y	Y(30)	Y	Y [#]	Y	Y
A4	SEF	210 x 297	Y	Y	Y(30)	Y	Y [#]	Y	Y
A4	LEF	297 x 210	Y	Y	Y(30)	Y	Y	Y	Y
B5	SEF	182 x 257	Y	N	N	Y	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]
B5	LEF	257 x 182	Y	Y	Y(30)	Y	Y	Y	Y
A5	SEF	148 x 210	N	N	N	Y	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]
A5	LEF	210 x 148	Y	N	N	Y	Y [#]	Y	Y
B6	SEF	128 x 182	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
B6	LEF	182 x 128	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
A6	SEF	105 x 148	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
A6	LEF	148 x 105	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
DLT	SEF	11" x 17"	Y	Y	Y(30)	Y	Y	Y	Y
LG	SEF	8 1/2" x 14"	Y	Y	Y(30)	Y	Y	Y [#]	Y [#]
LT	SEF	8 1/2" x 11"	Y	Y	Y(30)	Y	Y	Y [#]	Y [#]
LT	LEF	11" x 8 1/2"	Y	Y	Y(30)	Y	Y	Y	Y
HLT	SEF	5 1/2" x 8 1/2"	N	N	N	Y	N	N	N
HLT	LEF	11" x 8 1/2"	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y [#]	Y [#]
Executive	SEF	7 1/4" x 10 1/2"	Y	N	N	Y	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]
Executive	LEF	10 1/2" x 7 1/4"	N	N	N	Y	N	N	N
F	SEF	8" x 13"	N	N	N	Y	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]
Foolscap	SEF	8 1/2" x 13"	Y	Y	Y(30)	Y	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]
Folio	SEF	8 1/4" x 13"	Y	N	N	Y	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]
Folio	LEF	13" x 8 1/4"	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
A3 Long	SEF	12" x 18"	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
8 K	SEF	267 x 390	Y	Y	Y(30)	Y	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]
16 K	SEF	195 x 267	N	N	N	Y	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]
16 K	LEF	267 x 195	Y	Y	Y(30)	Y	Y [#]	Y [#]	Y [#]
Customized	Width	100 to 305	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
	Length	148 to 458	N	N	N	N	N	N	N

Symbols

- Y: Automatically detected
- Y[#]: Needs to be manually specified
- N: Not supported
- (30): Up to 30 sheets

SPECIFICATIONS

3. SOFTWARE ACCESSORIES

The printer drivers and utility software are provided on one CD-ROM. An auto-run installer allows you to select which components to install.

3.1 PRINTER DRIVERS

Printer Language	Windows 95/98/ME	Windows NT4.0	Windows 2000	Windows XP	Macintosh
PCL 5c	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
PS3	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
RPCS	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No

- NOTE:** 1) The printer drivers for Windows NT 4.0 are only for the Intel x86 platform. There is no Windows NT 4.0 printer driver for the PowerPC, Alpha, or MIPS platforms.
- 2) The PS3 drivers are all genuine AdobePS drivers, except for Windows 2000, which uses Microsoft PS. A PPD file for each operating system is provided with the driver.
- 3) The PS3 driver for Macintosh supports Mac OS 8.6, 9.x, 10.1.x, (10.0.x is not supported).
- 4) The following Unix versions are supported:
Solaris 2.6, 7, 8
HP-UX 11.0
Red Hat Linux 6.2, 7.0, 7.1, 7.2

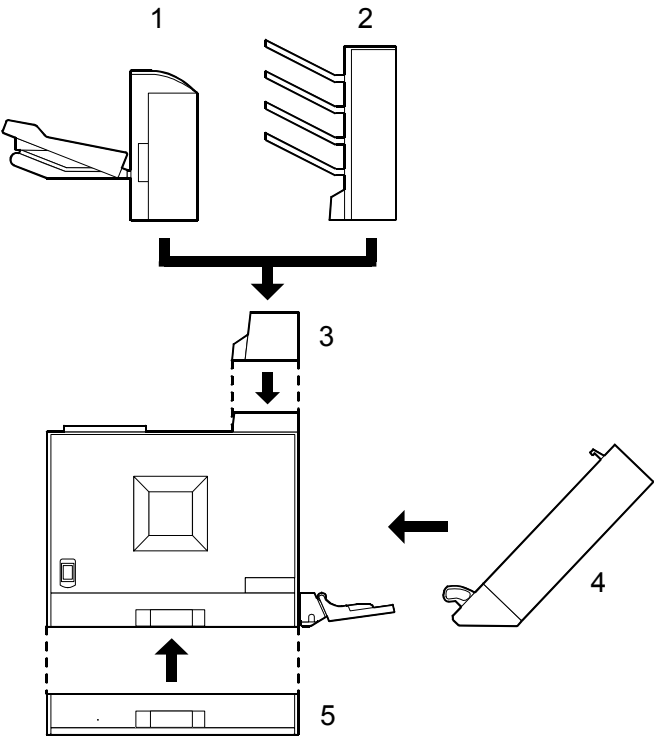
3.2 UTILITY SOFTWARE

Software	Description
Agfa Monotype Font Manager (Win 95/98/ME, NT4, W2000, XP)	A font management utility with screen fonts for the printer.
SmartNetMonitor for Admin (Win 95/98/ME, NT4, W2000, XP)	A printer management utility for network administrators. NIB setup utilities are also available.
SmartNetMonitor for Client (Win 95/98/ME, NT4, W2000, XP)	A printer management utility for client users.
Printer Utility for Mac	This software provides several convenient functions for printing from Macintosh clients.

4. MACHINE CONFIGURATION

4.1 SYSTEM COMPONENTS

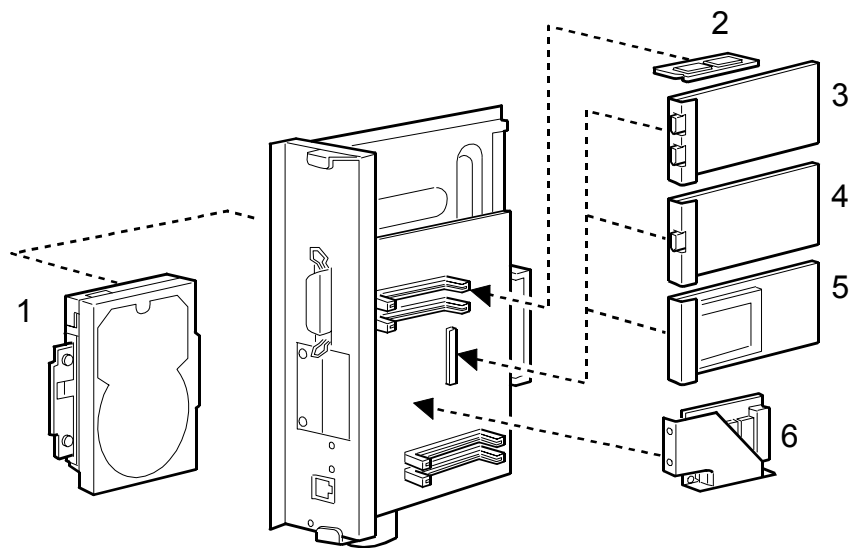
Exterior



No.	Unit	Code
—	Main unit	G071
1	500-sheet finisher	G314
2	4-bin mailbox	G312
3	Interchange unit	G305
4	Duplex unit	G303
5	Paper tray unit	G313

SPECIFICATIONS

Interior



No.	Unit	Code
1	Printer hard disk	G315
2	64 MB DIMM	G330
	128 MB DIMM	G331
	256 MB DIMM	G332
3	IEEE 1394 board	G561
4	USB 2.0 board (Standard)	—
5	IEEE802.11b (Wireless LAN)	G628
6	User account enhancement unit	G311

Maintenance Kits

Unit	Code
O/B Waste toner bottle	G778-17
I/B Waste toner bottle	G778-18
Fusing unit oil	G779
PCU	G780
Bk development unit	G781
CMY development unit	G782
Fusing unit and paper feed roller/friction pad	G783

4.2 OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT

Paper Tray Unit

Paper Feed System:	FRR
Paper Height Detection:	4 steps (100%, 50%, Near End, and Empty)
Capacity:	500 sheets x 1 (up to 59 mm)
Paper Weight:	60 to 128 g/m ² (16 to 34 lb.)
Paper Size:	A3/11" x 17" to A5/5.5 x 8.5" (LEF)
Power Source:	DC24V, 5V (from the main frame)
Power Consumption:	Less than 50W
Dimensions (W x D x H):	540 x 600 x 120 mm
Weight:	15 kg (33 lb.)

Finisher

Paper Size:	A3, B4, A4, B5 LEF, 11" x 17", LG, LT
Paper Weight:	60 to 128 g/m ² (14 to 34 lb.)
Staple Capacity:	20 sheets (A3, B4, 11" x 17", LG : 80g/m ² , 20 lb) 30 sheets (A4, B5 sideways, LT : 80g/m ² , 20 lb)
Stack Capacity:	500 sheets (A4/LT or smaller: 80 g/m ² , 20 lb.) 250 sheets (A3, B4, 11" x 17" and LG. 80 g/m ² , 20 lb.)
Staple Position:	1
Staple Replenishment:	Cartridge (3,000 staples/cartridge)
Power Source:	24V DC, 5V DC (from the main frame)
Power Consumption:	48 W
Weight:	8.5 Kg (18.9 lbs)
Dimensions:	506 x 164 x 328 mm (19.9" x 6.5" x 12.9")



SPECIFICATIONS

Mail Box

Trays:	4
Capacity:	125 sheets (A4:LEF 80 g/m ² , 20 lb)
Paper Weight:	60 to 128 g/m ² (16 to 34 lb.)
Power Source:	DC24V, 5V (from the main frame)
Power Consumption:	Less than 17 W.
Paper Size:	A3/11" x 17" to A5/LT
Dimensions (W x D x H):	440 x 520 x 370 mm (17.3" x 20.5" x 14.6")
Weight:	7 kg (15.5 lb)

Duplex Unit

Paper Size:	A3/11" x 17" to A5/5.5" x 8.5"
Paper Weight:	60 to 105 g/m ² (17 to 28 lb.)
Power Source:	DC 24V, 5V (from the main frame)
Power Consumption:	
Dimensions (W x D x H):	121 x 479 x 504 mm (4.8" x 18.9" x 19.8")
Weight:	6 kg (13 lbs.)

Interchange Unit

Paper Size:	A3/11" x 17" to A5/5.5" x 8.5"
Paper Weight:	60 to 128 g/m ²
Dimensions (W x D x H):	508 x 159 x 110 mm (20.0" x 6.3" x 4.3")
Weight:	3 kg (6.6 lbs.)

G313
PAPER TRAY UNIT

PAPER TRAY UNIT G313

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT	1
1.1 REAR COVER.....	1
1.2 PAPER FEED CLUTCH	1
1.3 LIFT MOTOR.....	2
1.4 PAPER FEED MOTOR	2
1.5 CONTROLLER BOARD	2
1.6 PICK-UP/FEED/SEPARATION ROLLERS.....	3
2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS	4
2.1 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT	4
Feed and Reverse Roller (FRR)	4
Drive Path	4
Paper End Feeler Method.....	4
2.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT	5
2.3 DRIVE LAYOUT	6
2.4 PAPER SIZE DETECTION.....	7
2.5 PAPER LIFT	8
2.6 PAPER HEIGHT AND END DETECTION	9
Paper Height Detection	9
Paper End Detection.....	9

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

⚠ CAUTION

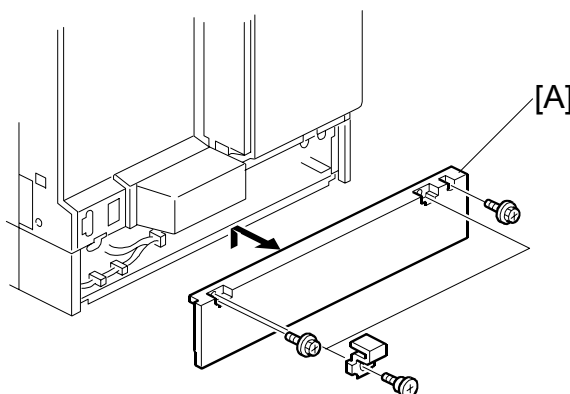
Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before beginning any of the procedures in this section.

NOTE: This manual uses the following symbols.

☞ : See or Refer to 🔩 : Screws 📌 : Connector 📎 : Clip ring

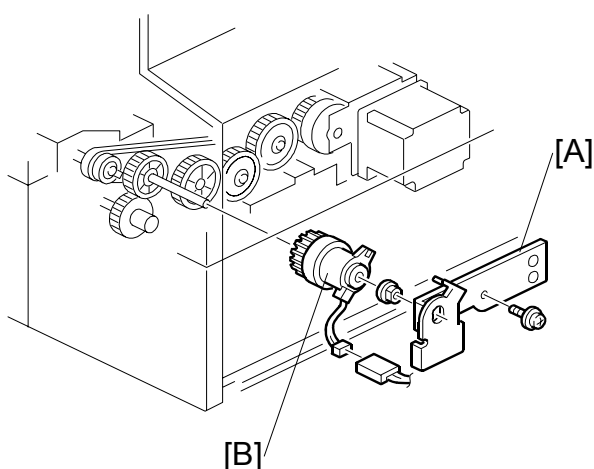
1.1 REAR COVER

1. 2 brackets (1 Cylinder-headed screw for each)
2. Rear cover [A] (🔩 x 2)



1.2 PAPER FEED CLUTCH

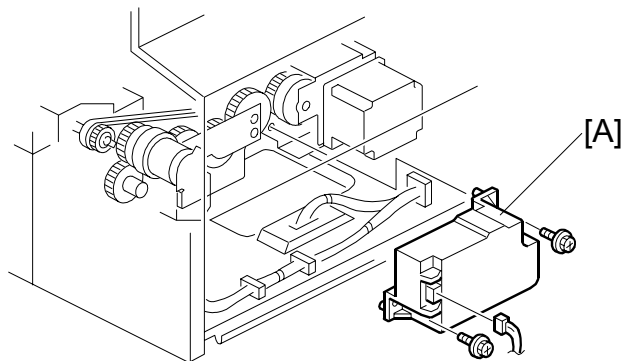
1. Rear cover (☞ 1.1)
2. Bracket [A] (🔩 x 1)
3. Clutch [B] (1 bearing, 📌 x 1)



Paper Tray
Unit
G313

1.3 LIFT MOTOR

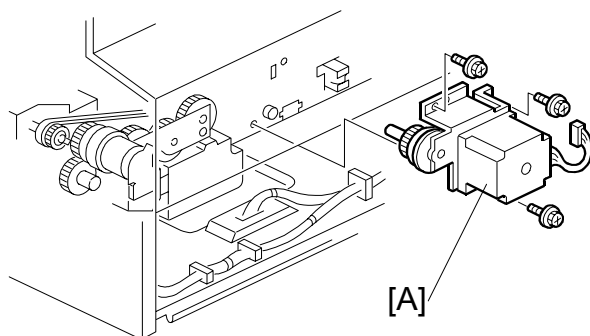
1. Rear cover (☛ 1.1)
2. Lift motor [A] (⚙ x 2, 📏 x 1)



1.4 PAPER FEED MOTOR

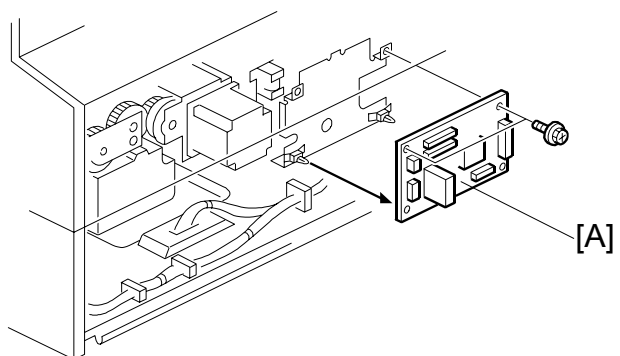
1. Rear cover (☛ 1.1)
2. Paper feed motor [A] (📏 x 1, ⚙ x 3)

NOTE: Remove the motor with its bracket, then separate the motor from the bracket.



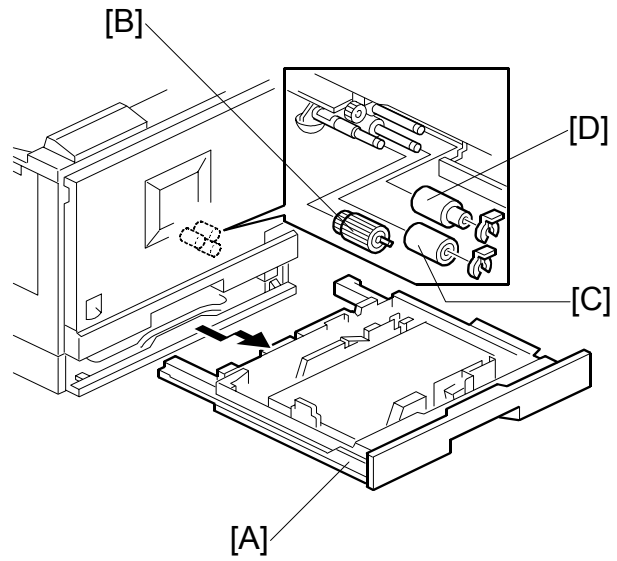
1.5 CONTROLLER BOARD

1. Rear cover (☛ 1.1)
2. Controller board [A] (📏 x 7, ⚙ x 2)



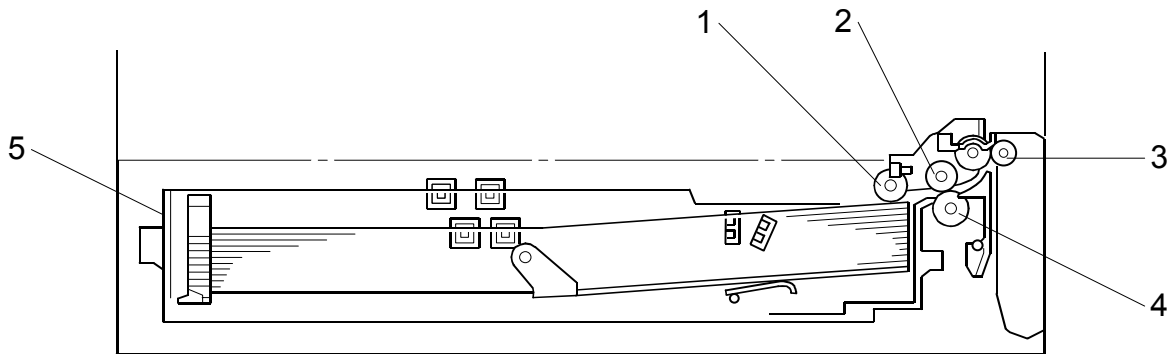
1.6 PICK-UP/FEED/SEPARATION ROLLERS

1. Paper tray [A]
2. Pick-up roller [B] (1 hook)
3. Paper feed roller [C] (🌀 x 1)
4. Separation roller [D] (🌀 x 1)



2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

2.1 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



- 1. Pick-up roller
- 2. Feed roller
- 3. Relay roller
- 4. Separation roller
- 5. Tray

Feed and Reverse Roller (FRR)

☛ **CT** Handling Paper – Paper Feed – Paper Feed Methods

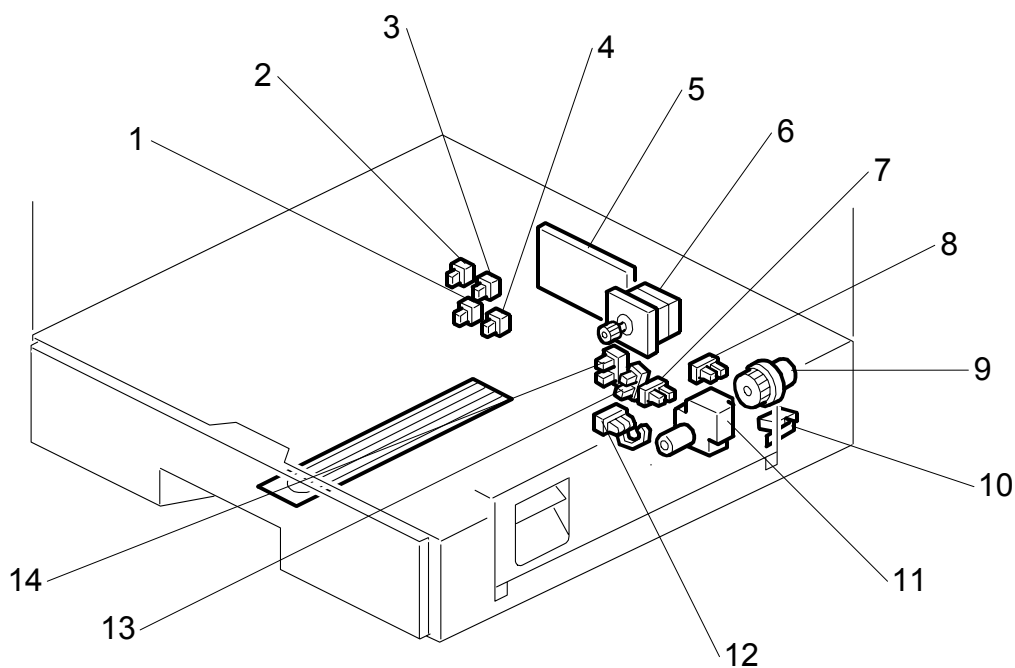
Drive Path

Paper feed motor → Timing belt → Gears → Paper feed clutch → Rollers

Paper End Feeler Method

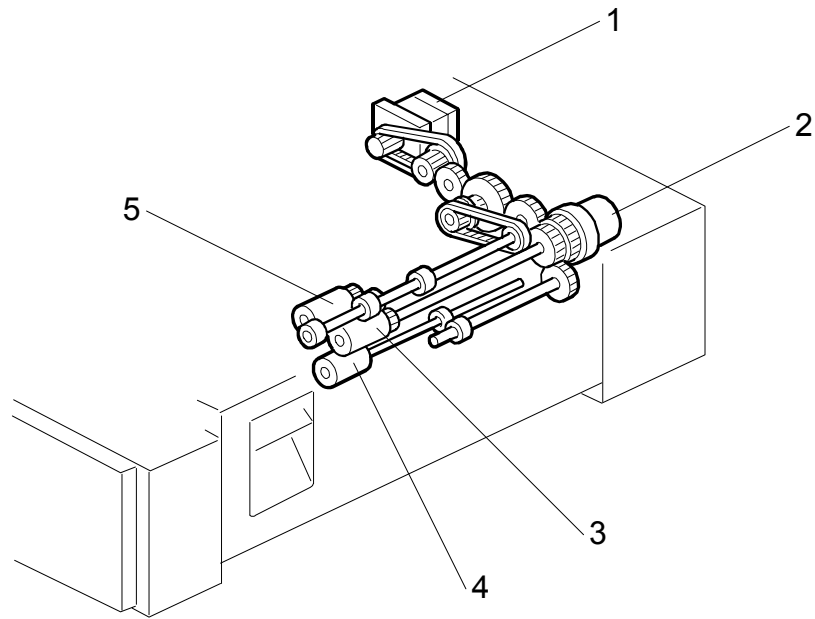
☛ **CT** Handling Paper – Paper End Detection

2.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



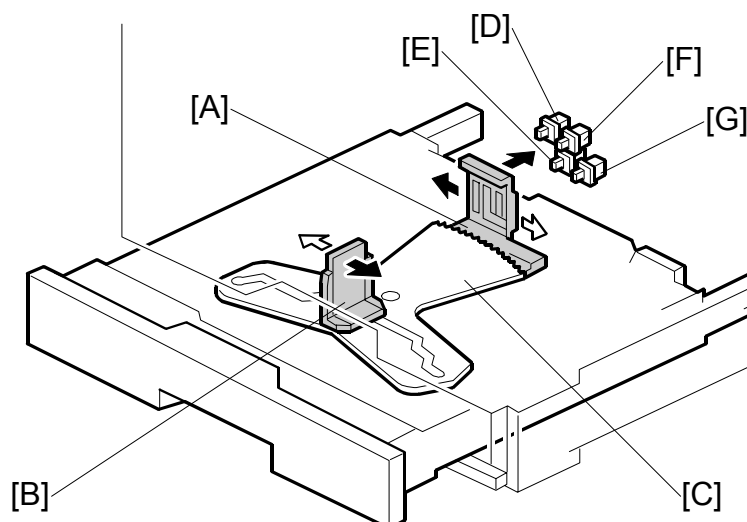
- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Paper size switch 2 | 8. Lift sensor |
| 2. Paper size switch 1 | 9. Paper feed clutch |
| 3. Paper size switch 3 | 10. Vertical guide switch |
| 4. Paper size switch 4 | 11. Tray lift motor |
| 5. Main board | 12. Relay sensor |
| 6. Paper feed motor | 13. Paper height 2 sensor |
| 7. Paper end sensor | 14. Paper height 1 sensor |

2.3 DRIVE LAYOUT



1. Paper feed motor
2. Paper feed clutch
3. Paper feed roller
4. Separation roller
5. Pick-up roller

2.4 PAPER SIZE DETECTION



Four paper size switches [D] to [G], working in combination, detect the paper size as shown in the table below. The actuators are on the side plate [A]. The side plate is moved by the end plate [B] through a cam [C].

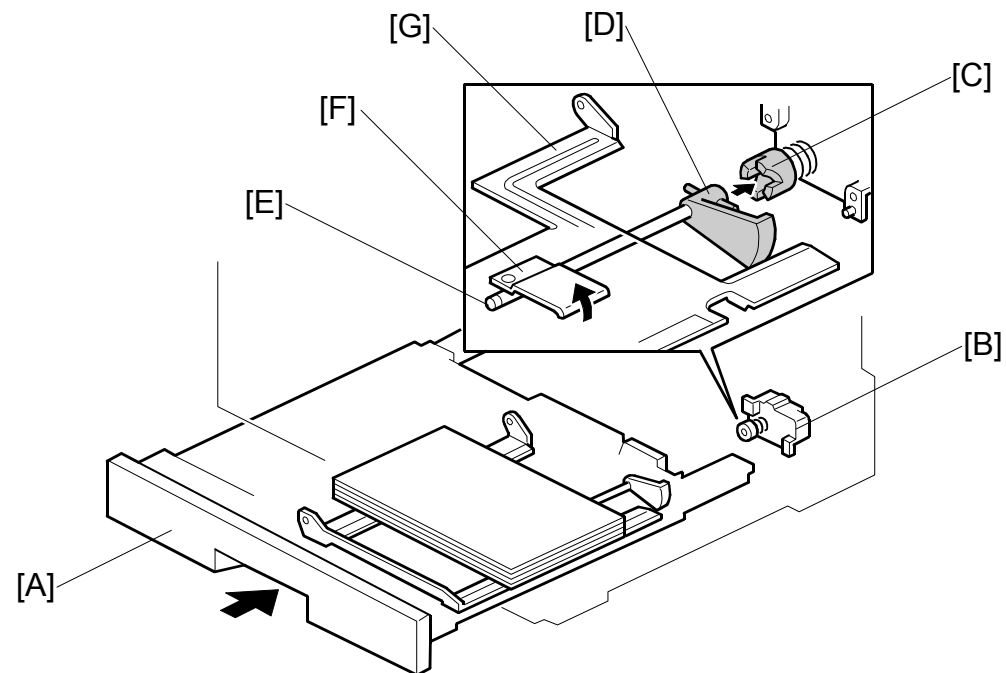
Models		Switch Location			
North America	Europe/Asia	1 [D]	2 [E]	3 [F]	4 [G]
11" x 17" SEF	11" x 17" SEF	0	0	1	0
A3 SEF	A3 SEF	0	1	0	1
8 1/2" x 14" SEF	B4 SEF	1	0	1	1
8 1/2" x 11" SEF	A4 SEF	0	1	1	0
11" x 8 1/2" LEF	11" x 8 1/2" LEF	1	1	0	1
A4 LEF	A4 LEF	1	0	1	0
B5 LEF	B5 LEF	0	1	0	0
A5 LEF	A5 LEF	1	0	0	0

1: Pushed

NOTE: 1) Other paper sizes cannot be automatically detected. Use the user tool to select them.

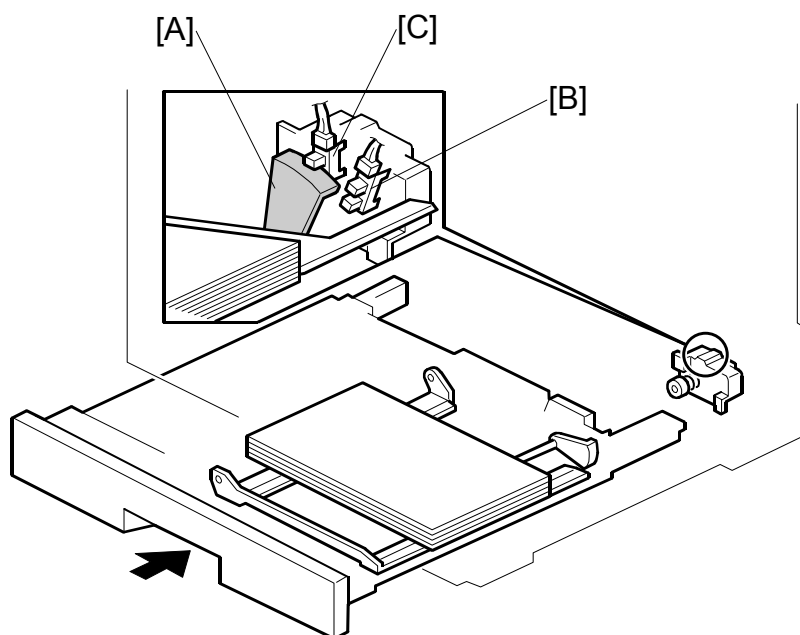
2) The machine disables feed from a tray if the paper size cannot be detected (when the paper size actuator is broken or no tray is installed).

2.5 PAPER LIFT



The paper size switches (➡ 2.4) detect when the paper tray [A] is placed in the machine. When the machine detects that a tray has been placed in the machine, the tray lift motor [B] rotates and the coupling gear [C] on the tray lift motor engages the pin [D] on the lift arm shaft [E]. Then the tray lift arm [F] lifts the tray bottom plate [G] until the paper lift sensor for the tray detects that the top of the stack is at the paper feed position.

2.6 PAPER HEIGHT AND END DETECTION



Paper Height Detection

Two paper height sensors, working in combination, detect the amount of paper in the tray.

When the amount of paper decreases, the bottom plate pressure lever moves up and the actuator [A] (on the pressure lever drive shaft) rotates.

Remaining paper	Paper height sensor 2 [B]	Paper height sensor 1 [C]
Full	ON	ON
Nearly full	OFF	ON
Near end	OFF	OFF

On: Actuator inside sensor, Off: Actuator not inside sensor

Paper End Detection

If there is some paper in the paper tray, the paper stack raises the paper end feeler and the paper end sensor deactivates.

When the paper tray runs out of paper, the paper end feeler drops into the cutout in the tray bottom plate, and this activates the paper end sensor.

G305
INTERCHANGE UNIT

INTERCHANGE UNIT G305

TABLE OF CONTENTS

- 1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT1
 - 1.1 EXTERIOR COVER AND PAPER EXIT SENSOR..... 1
 - 1.2 CONTROL BOARD 1
- 2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS2
 - 2.1 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS2
 - 2.2 DRIVE2
 - 2.3 MECHANISM.....3

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

⚠ CAUTION

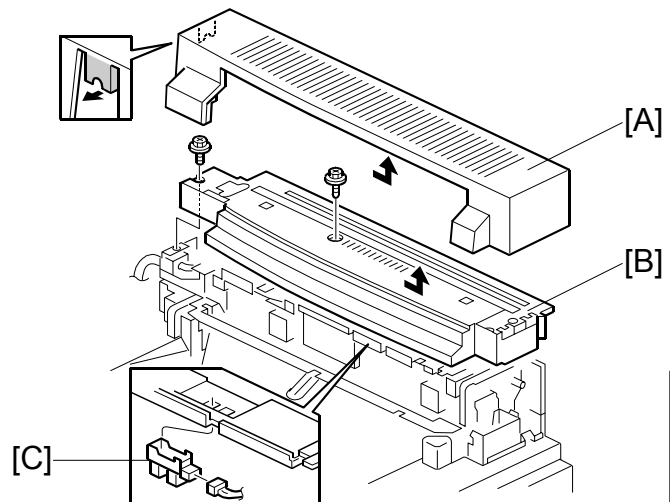
Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before beginning any of the procedures in this section.

NOTE: This manual uses the following symbols.

☞ : See or Refer to 🔩 : Screws 📡 : Connector

1.1 EXTERIOR COVER AND PAPER EXIT SENSOR

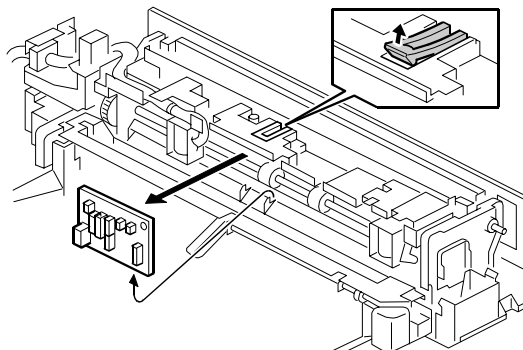
- [A]: Exterior cover
- [B]: Inner cover (🔩 x 3)
- [C]: Paper exit sensor (📡 x 1)



Interchange
Unit
G305

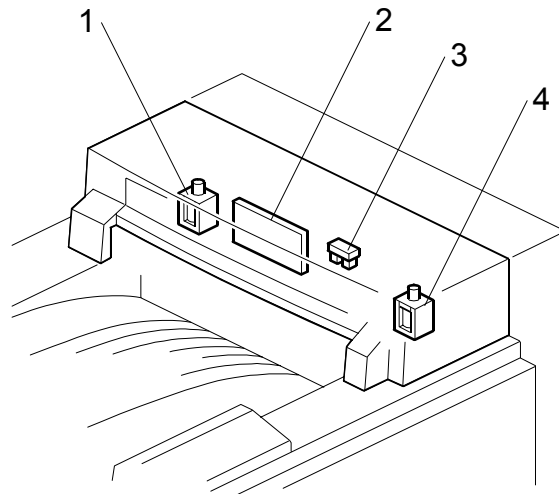
1.2 CONTROL BOARD

- [A]: Control board (1 hook, 📡 x 9)



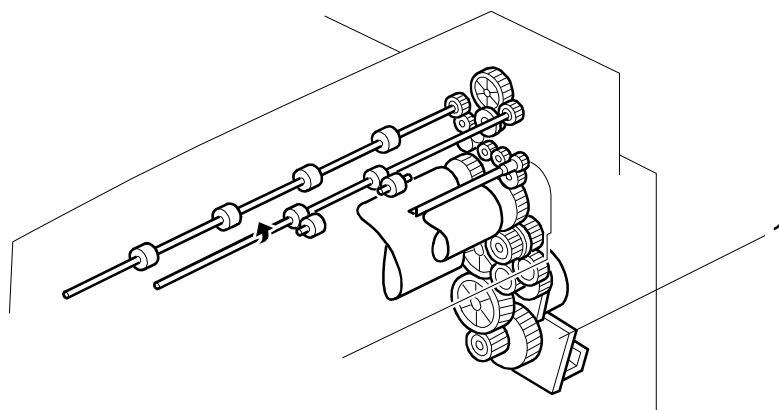
2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

2.1 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS



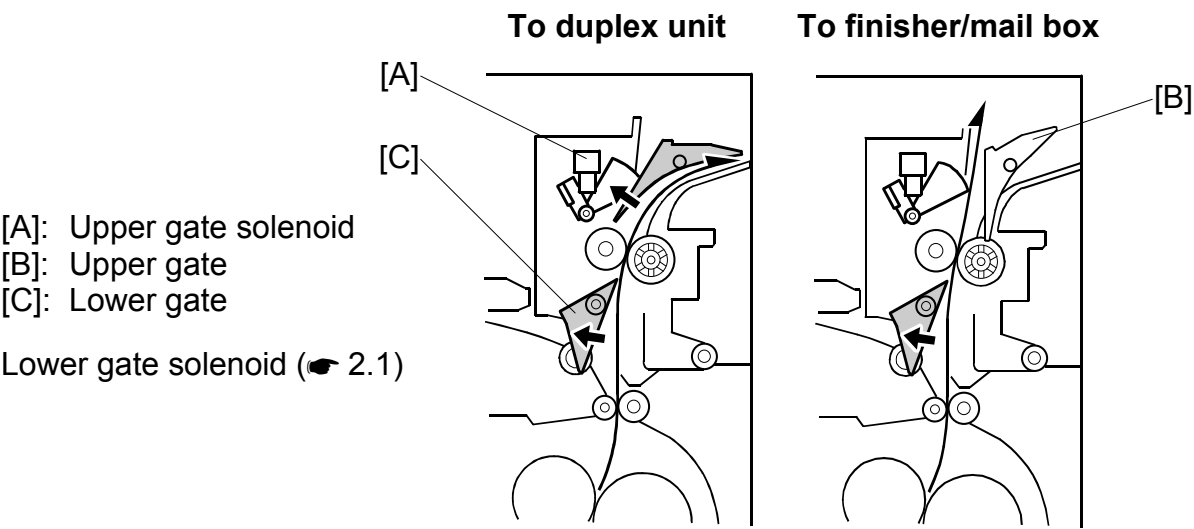
- | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Upper gate solenoid | 3. Paper exit sensor |
| 2. Control board | 4. Lower gate solenoid |

2.2 DRIVE



1. Fusing unit motor (main body)

2.3 MECHANISM



The arrows in the right-hand column indicate paper path directions through the junction gates.

To ...	Solenoid		Gate	
Main unit	Upper	Off	Upper	↑*
	Lower	Off	Lower	←
Duplex unit	Upper	On	Upper	→
	Lower	On	Lower	↑
Finisher/mail box	Upper	Off	Upper	↑
	Lower	On	Lower	↑

* Paper does not go through the upper gate.

G303
DUPLEX UNIT

DUPLEX UNIT G303

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT	1
1.1 EXTERIOR COVER	1
1.2 ENTRANCE/EXIT SENSORS	1
1.3 INVERTER MOTOR	2
1.4 CONTROLLER BOARD	2
1.5 TRANSPORT MOTOR	2
2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS	3
2.1 OVERVIEW	3
2.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT	4
2.3 DRIVE LAYOUT	5
2.4 DUPLEX PAPER FEED ORDER.....	6
2.4.1 LONGER THAN A4/LT LEF	6
2.4.2 UP TO A4/LT LEF	7
2.5 REVERSE MECHANISM	8

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

⚠ CAUTION

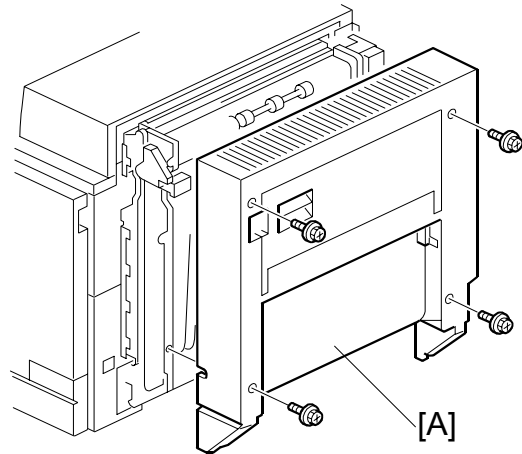
Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before beginning any of the procedures in this section.

NOTE: This manual uses the following symbols.

☛ : See or Refer to 🔩 : Screws 📡 : Connector

1.1 EXTERIOR COVER

1. Exterior cover [A] (🔩 x 4)



Duplex Unit
G303

1.2 ENTRANCE/EXIT SENSORS

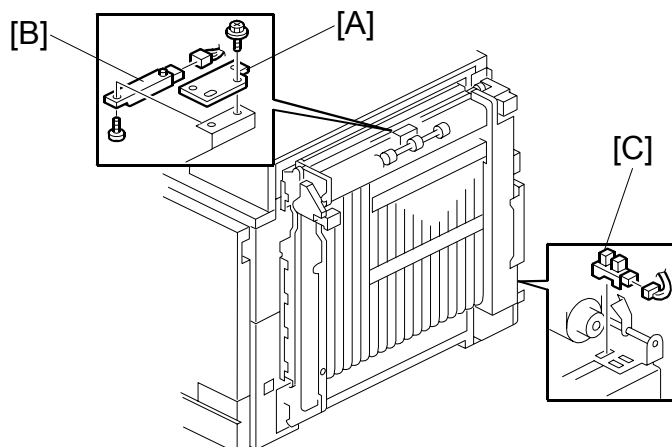
1. Exterior cover (☛ 1.1)

Entrance Sensor

2. Sensor bracket [A] (🔩 x 1)
3. Feed sensor [B] (📡 x 1, 🔩 x 1)

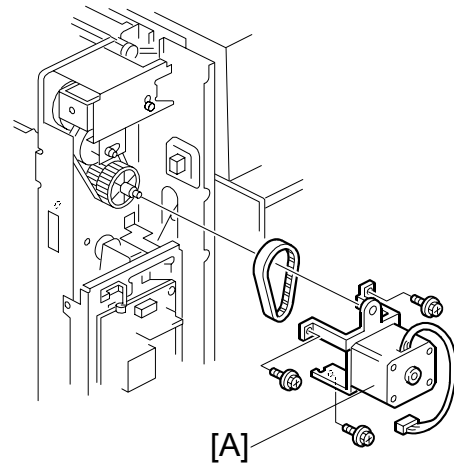
Exit Sensor

4. Exit sensor [C] (📡 x 1)



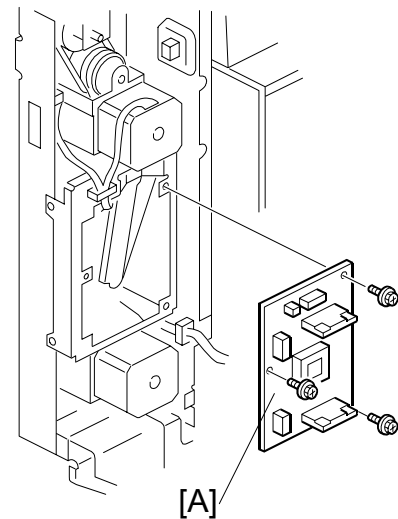
1.3 INVERTER MOTOR

1. Exterior cover (☛ 1.1)
2. Inverter motor [A] (☛ x 1, ⚙ x 3)



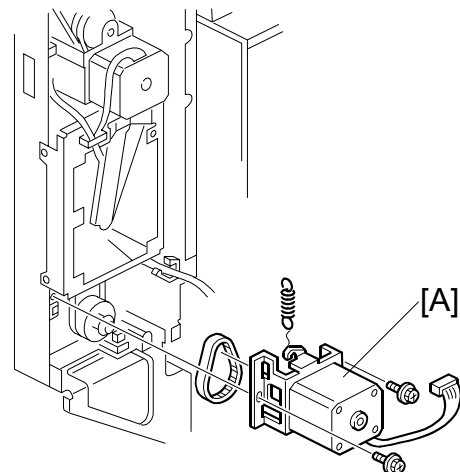
1.4 CONTROLLER BOARD

1. Exterior cover (☛ 1.1)
2. Controller board [A] (☛ x 5, ⚙ x 3)



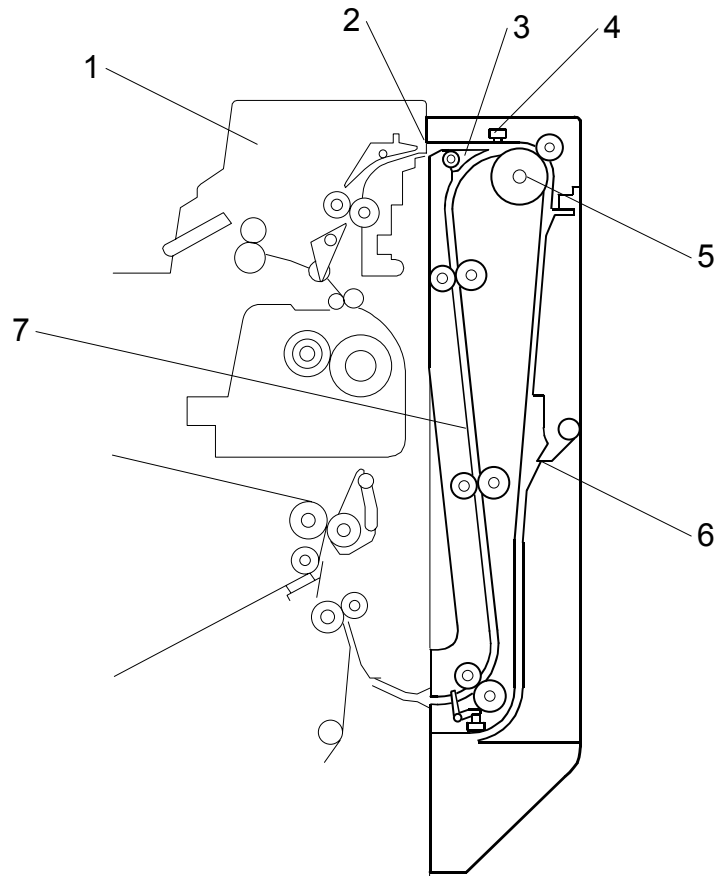
1.5 TRANSPORT MOTOR

1. Exterior cover (☛ 1.1)
2. Controller board (☛ 1.4)
3. Transport motor (1 spring, ☛ x 1, ⚙ x 2)



2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

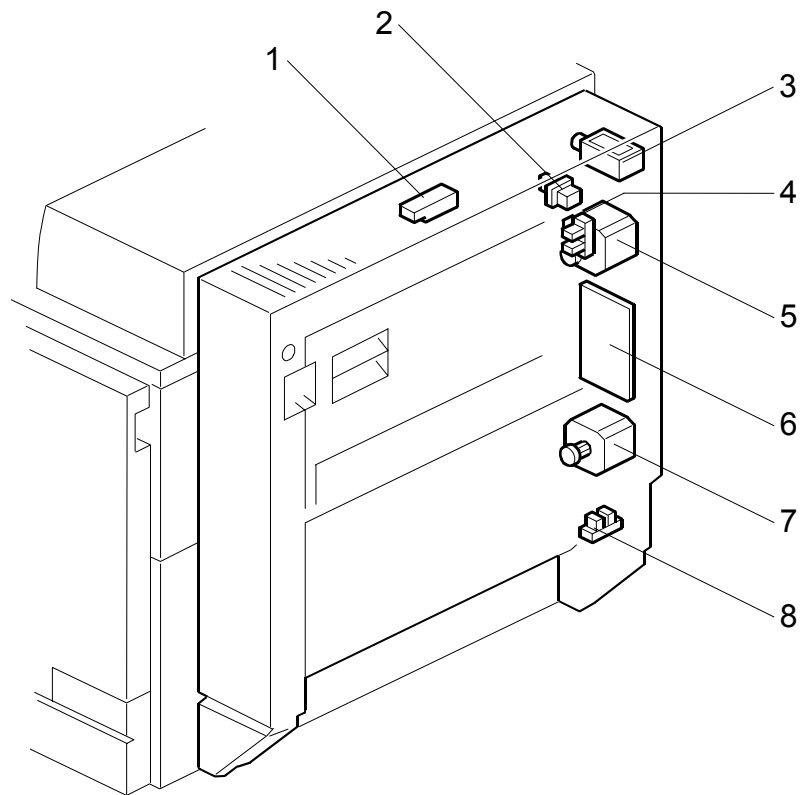
2.1 OVERVIEW



- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Interchange unit | 5. Inverter roller |
| 2. Paper entrance | 6. Inverter section |
| 3. Inverter gate | 7. Paper exit path |
| 4. Entrance sensor | |

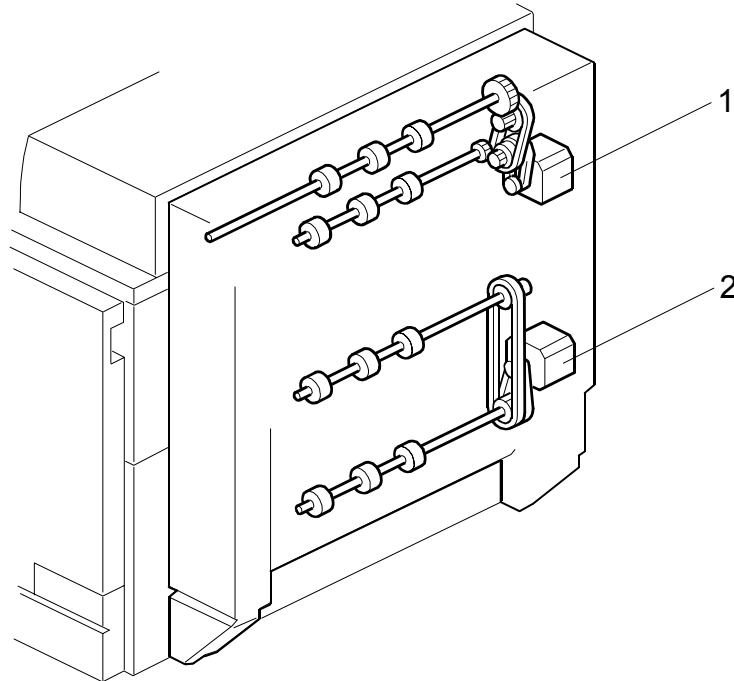
Duplex Unit
G303

2.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Entrance sensor | 5. Inverter motor |
| 2. Duplex unit open switch | 6. Controller board |
| 3. Inverter gate solenoid | 7. Transport motor |
| 4. Cover sensor | 8. Exit sensor |

2.3 DRIVE LAYOUT



- 1. Inverter motor
- 2. Transport motor

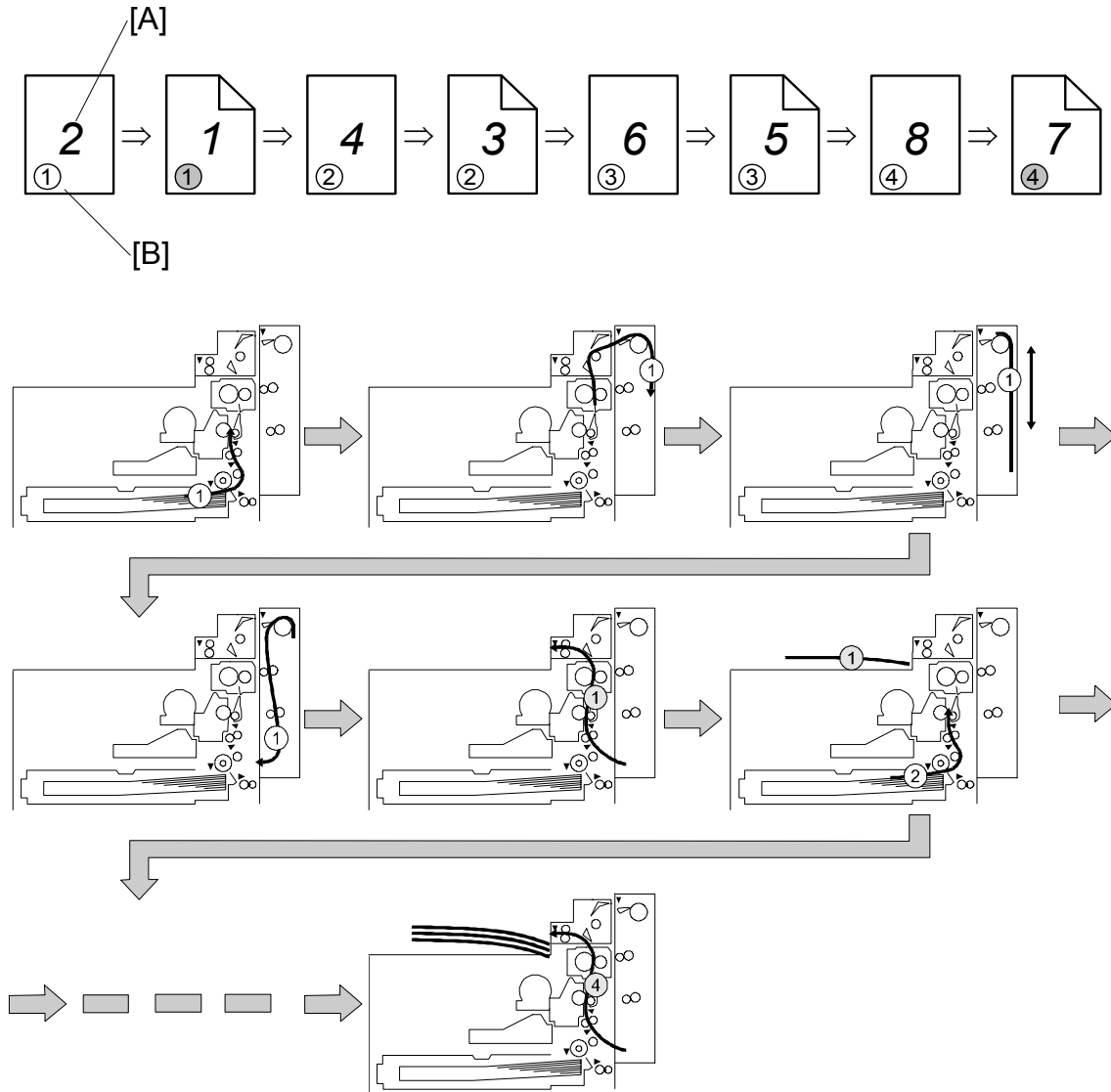
Duplex Unit
G303

2.4 DUPLEX PAPER FEED ORDER

2.4.1 LONGER THAN A4/LT LEF

The feed path through the duplex unit can only hold one sheet of paper.

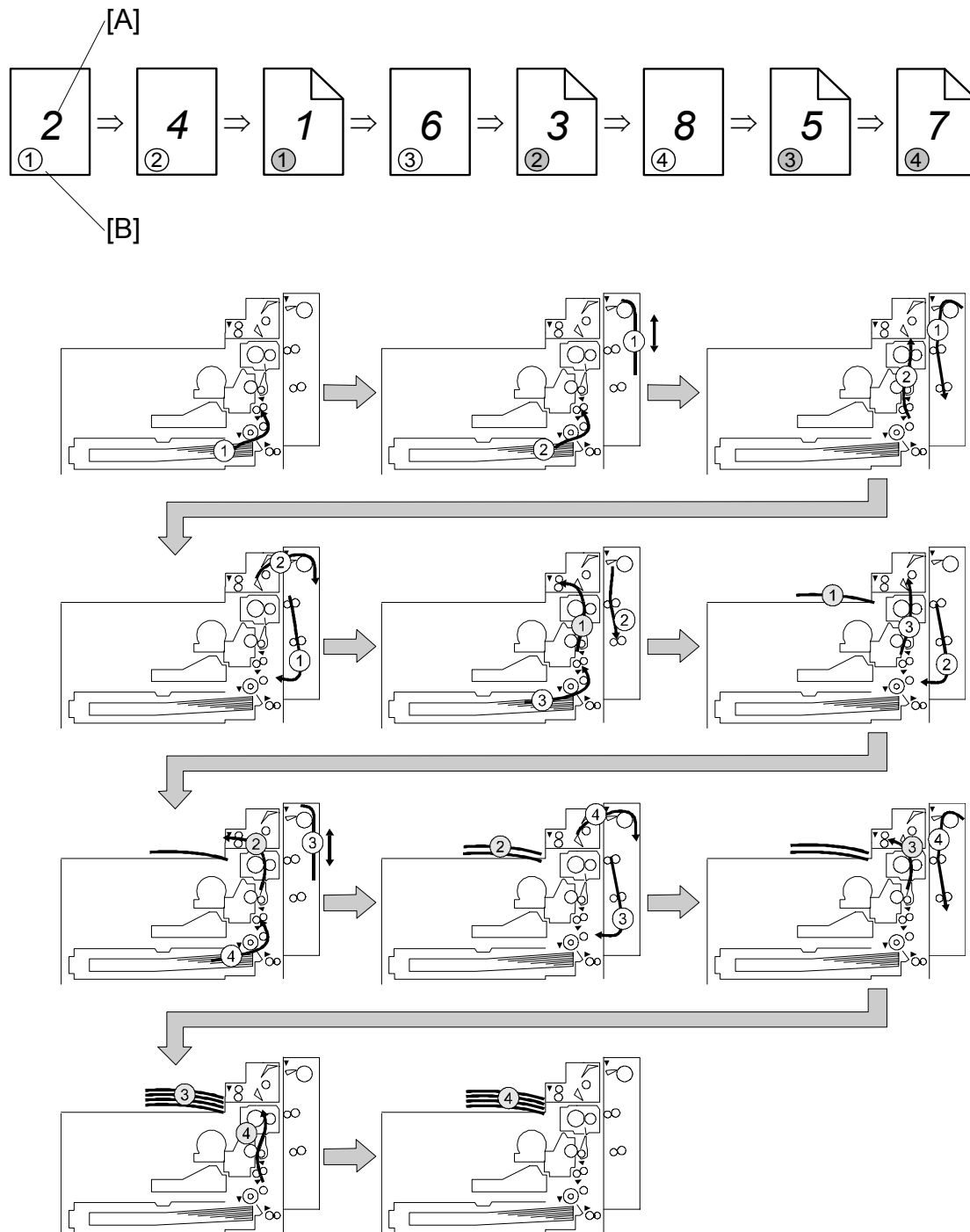
Example: 8 pages. The number [A] in the illustration shows the order of pages. The number [B] in the illustration shows the order of sheets of paper (if shaded, this indicates the second side).



2.4.2 UP TO A4/LT LEF

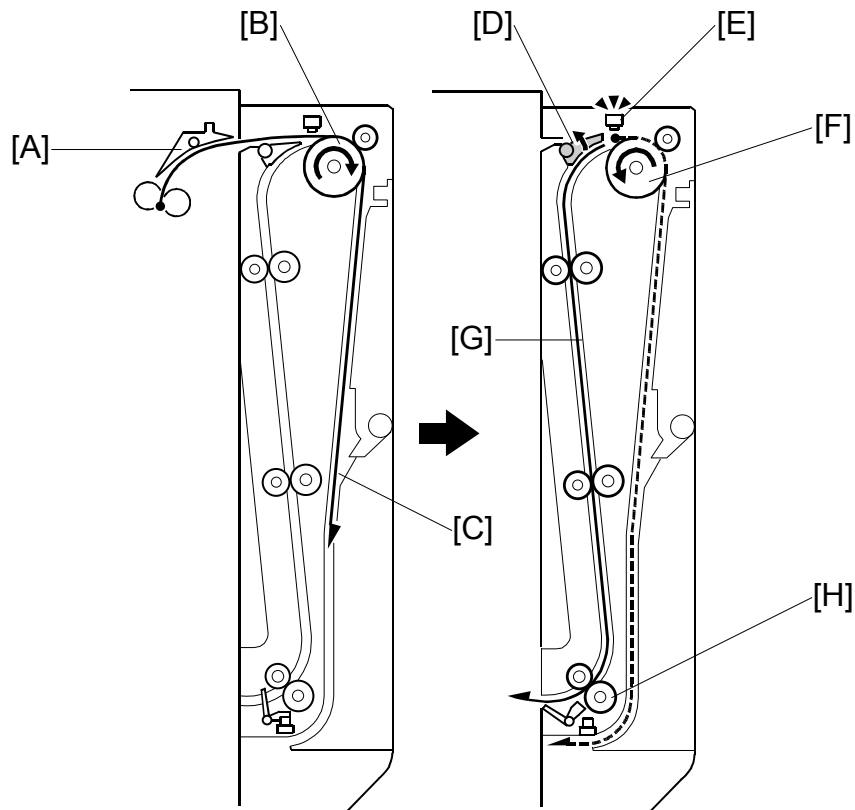
The feed path through the duplex unit can hold 2 sheets of paper

Example: 8 pages. The number [A] in the illustration shows the order of pages. The number [B] in the illustration shows the order of sheets of print paper (if shaded, this indicates the second side).



Duplex Unit
G303

2.5 REVERSE MECHANISM



The duplex unit starts when the entrance sensor [E] detects paper coming in.

1. **Interchange unit gate [A]**
Directs the paper to the duplex unit (up to A3 SEF)
2. **Inverter roller [B]**
Sends the paper to the inverter section [C]
3. **Entrance sensor [E]**
Detects the trailing edge of the paper
4. **Inverter gate solenoid (behind [D])**
Activates the inverter gate [D]
5. **Inverter gate [D]**
Switches the paper path
6. **Inverter roller [F]**
Changes its rotation direction (sends the paper to the exit path [G])
7. **Transport roller [H]**
Sends the paper to the main unit registration roller

G314
500-SHEET FINISHER

500-SHEET FINISHER G314

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT	1
1.1 EXTERIOR COVERS	1
Front Cover	1
Rear Cover	1
Lower Guide	2
Upper Cover	3
Right Cover	3
1.2 ENTRANCE UPPER GUIDE AND PAPER EXIT UNIT	4
1.3 MOTORS	5
1.3.1 MAIN MOTOR	5
1.3.2 JOGGER MOTOR	5
1.4 STAPLER	6
1.5 PADDLE ROLLER SOLENOID	6
1.6 MAIN CONTROL PCB	7
1.7 OUTPUT TRAY UNIT	8
2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS	10
2.1 OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION	10
2.1.1 COMPONENT LAYOUT	10
2.1.2 DRIVE LAYOUT	11
2.1.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS	12
2.2 DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS	14
2.2.1 OUTPUT TRAY	14
Stack Height Detection	14
Output Tray Up/Down Mechanism	15
2.2.2 PAPER FEED	16
Overview	16
Straight Feed-out Mode	16
Shift Sorting Mode	17
Stapling Mode	19
2.2.3 JAM CONDITIONS	20
2.2.4 ERROR DETECTION	20

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

⚠ CAUTION

Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before beginning any of the procedures in this section.

NOTE: This manual uses the following symbols.

☞ : See or Refer to

🔩 : Screws

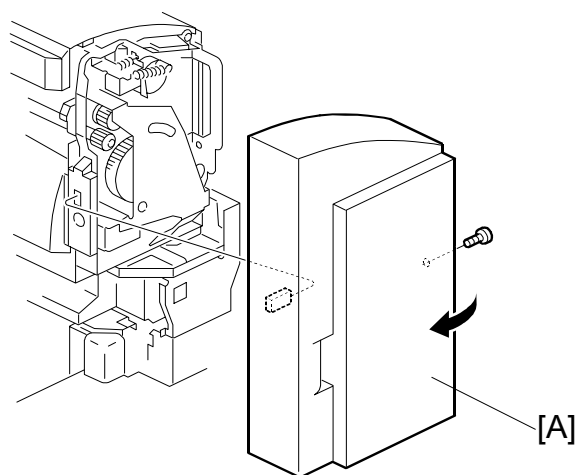
🔌 : Connector

🔗 : Clip ring

1.1 EXTERIOR COVERS

Front Cover

[A]: Front cover (🔩 x 1)

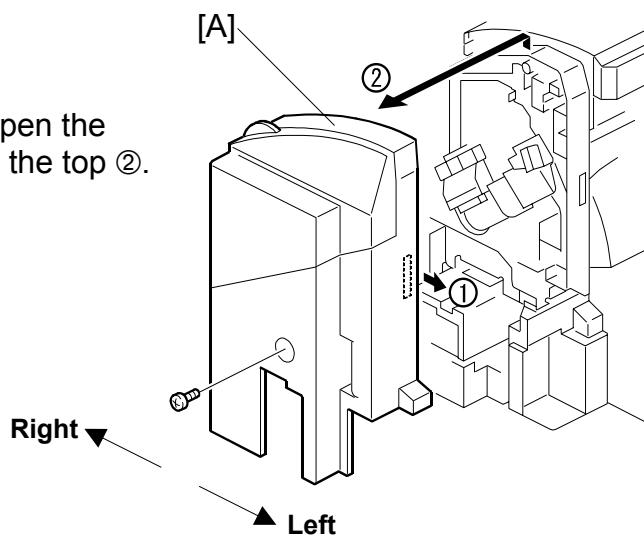


500-Sheet
Finisher
G314

Rear Cover


[A]: Rear cover (🔩 x 1)

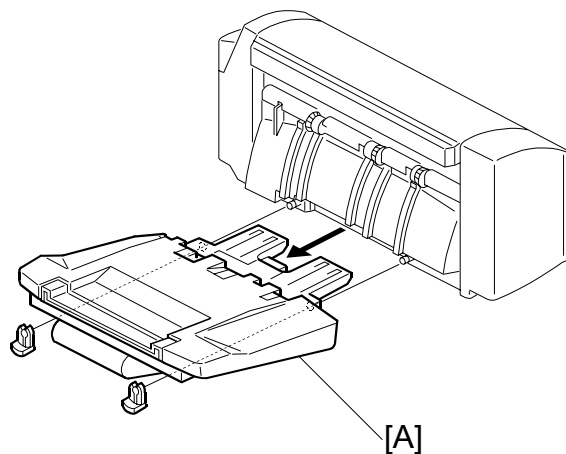
NOTE: Unhook the left side ①, open the upper cover, and unhook the top ②.




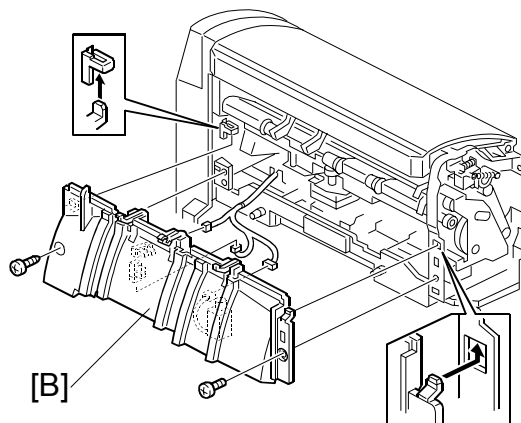
EXTERIOR COVERS

Lower Guide

[A]: Output tray ( x 2)

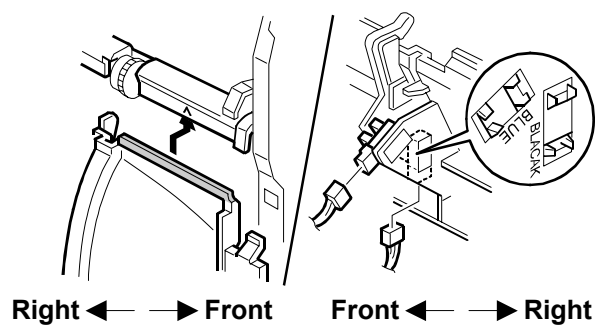


[B]: Lower guide ( x 2,  x 3)



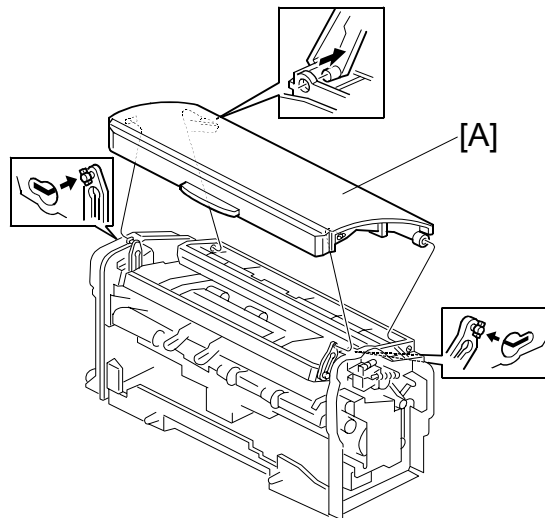
Reassembly

1. Check that the connectors are in the right places. (The wire colors are embossed on the rear side of the connector base.)
2. Insert the front-side hook.



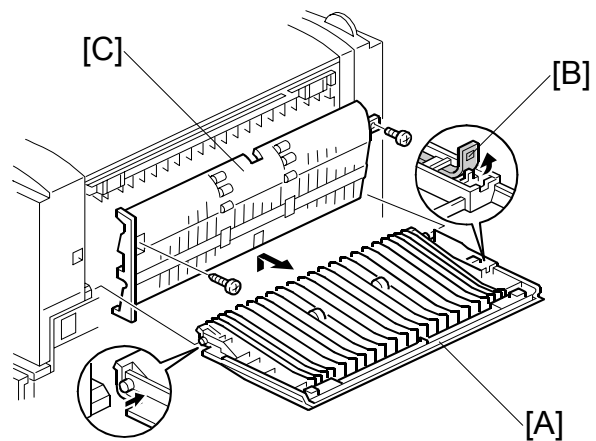
Upper Cover

[A]: Upper cover (2 hinges, 2 links)



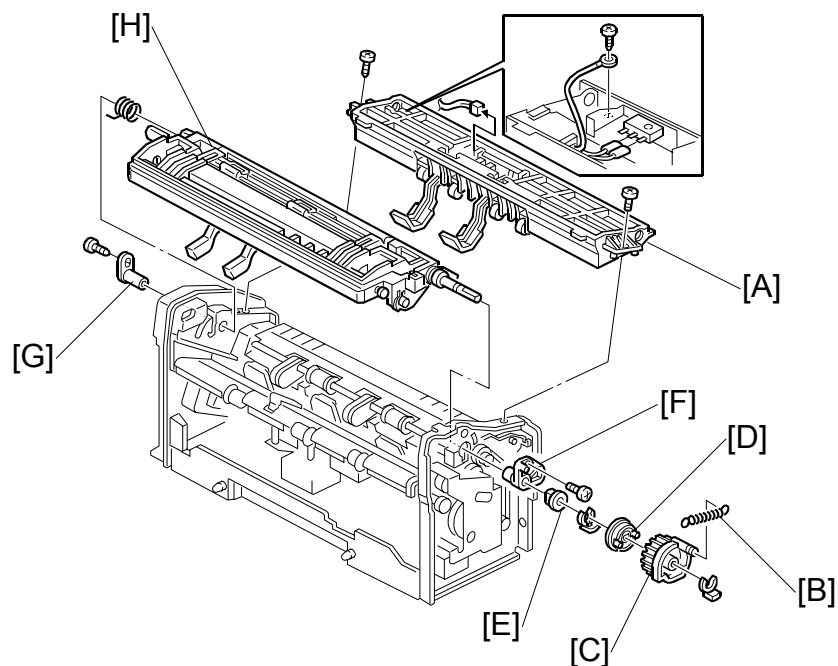
Right Cover

1. Right cover [A] (1 belt [B])
2. Inner cover [C] (⌘ x 2)



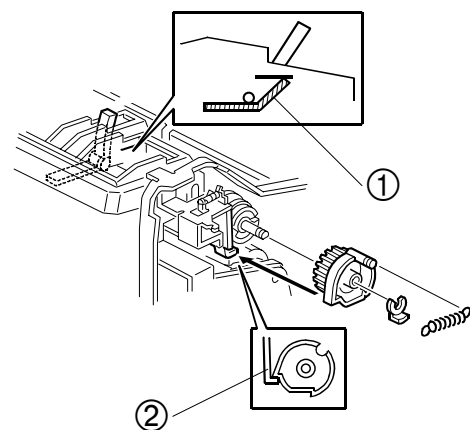
500-Sheet
Finisher
G314

1.2 ENTRANCE UPPER GUIDE AND PAPER EXIT UNIT



1. All exterior covers (☛ 1.1)
2. Entrance upper guide [A] (☛ x 3, ☛ x 3)
3. Paddle gear spring [B]
4. Paddle gear [C] (☛ x 1)
5. Paddle gear holder [D]
6. Bushing [E] (☛ x 1)
7. Paper exit unit holder [F] (☛ x 1)
8. Rear paper exit unit holder [G] (☛ x 1)
9. Exit unit [H]

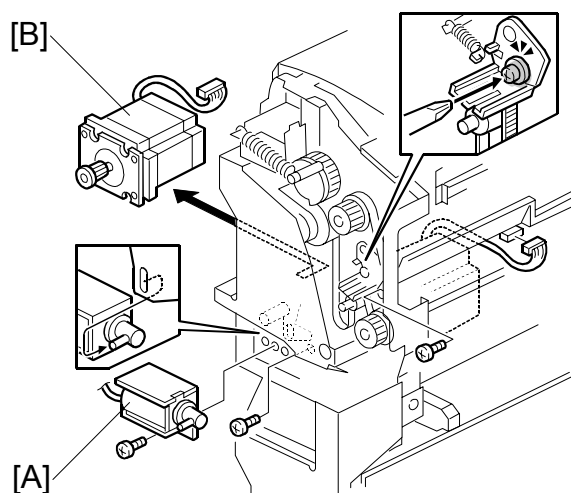
NOTE: When reassembling, put the paper exit unit stay in the uppermost position and the paddle roller stay in the ready position ①. Insert the paddle gear with the pawl resting on the clutch link ②.



1.3 MOTORS

1.3.1 MAIN MOTOR

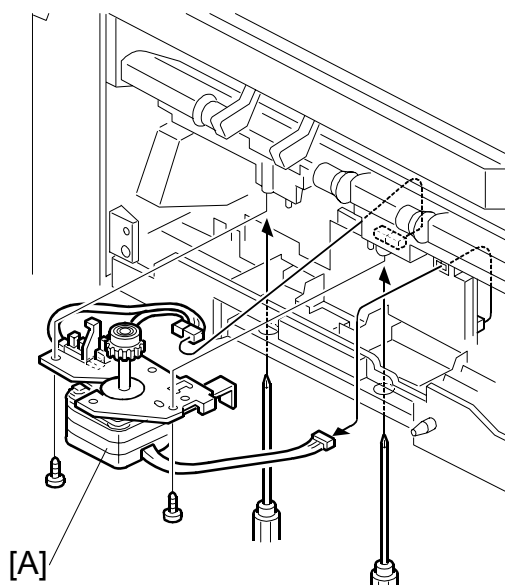
1. Front cover (☞ 1.1)
2. Solenoid [A] (⚙ x 1)
3. Main motor [B] (⚙ x 1, ⚙ x 2)



1.3.2 JOGGER MOTOR

1. Lower guide, right cover (☞ 1.1)
2. Remove the finisher from the main unit.
3. Jogger motor [A] (⚙ x 3, ⚙ x 2)

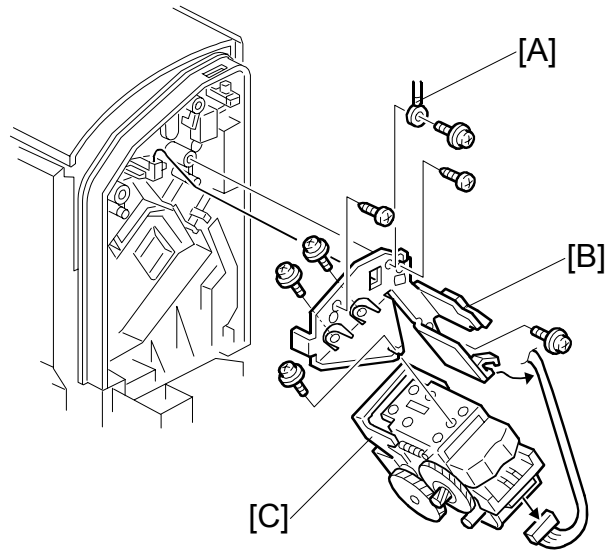
NOTE: When reassembling, connect the connectors first. (After the motor is installed, it is difficult to connect the connectors.)



STAPLER

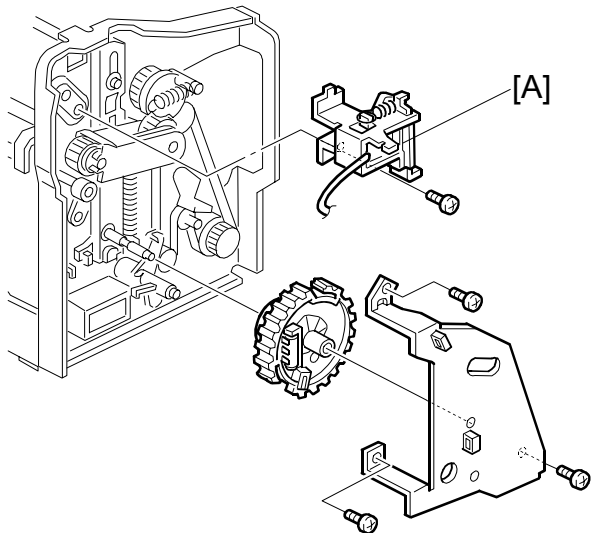
1.4 STAPLER

1. Rear cover (🔑 1.1)
2. Ground wire [A] (🔩 x 1)
3. Bracket [B] (🔩 x 2, 🌀 x 3)
4. Stapler [C] (🔩 x 1, 🌀 x 3)



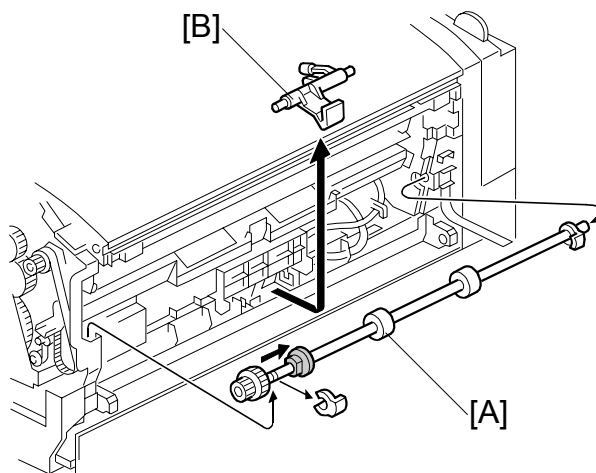
1.5 PADDLE ROLLER SOLENOID

1. Front cover (🔑 1.1)
2. Paddle roller solenoid [A]
(1 spring, 🌀 x 1)

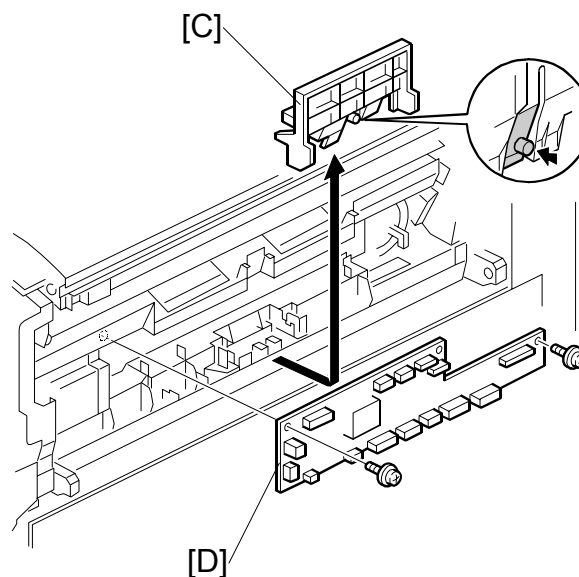


1.6 MAIN CONTROL PCB

1. Right cover, inner cover (➡ 1.1)
2. Transport roller [A] (🔩 x 1)
3. Feeler [B]



4. Protector [C]
5. Main control PCB [D] (🔩 x 15, 🔩 x 2, 1 projection)



500-Sheet
Finisher
G314

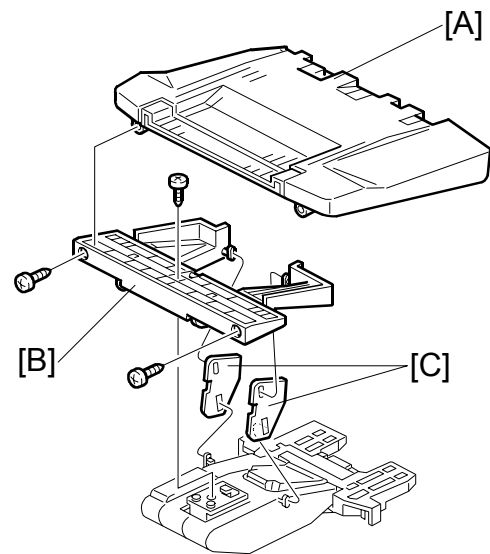
OUTPUT TRAY UNIT

1.7 OUTPUT TRAY UNIT

[A]: Output tray cover (⌀ x 2)

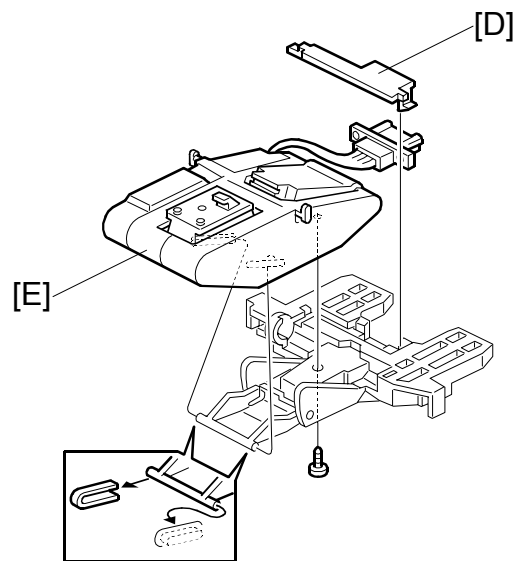
[B]: Tray holder (⌀ x 1)

[C]: Links



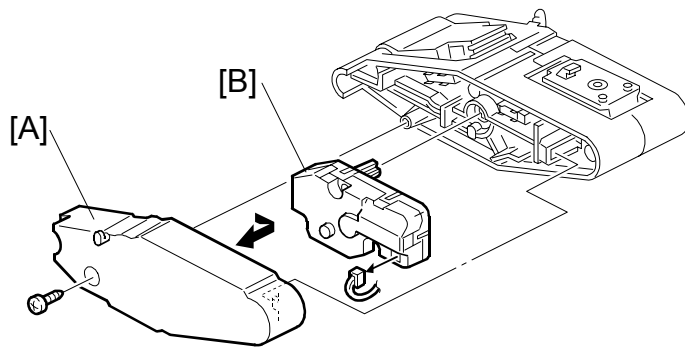
[D]: Connector cover

[E]: Output tray motor link unit (⌀ x 1)

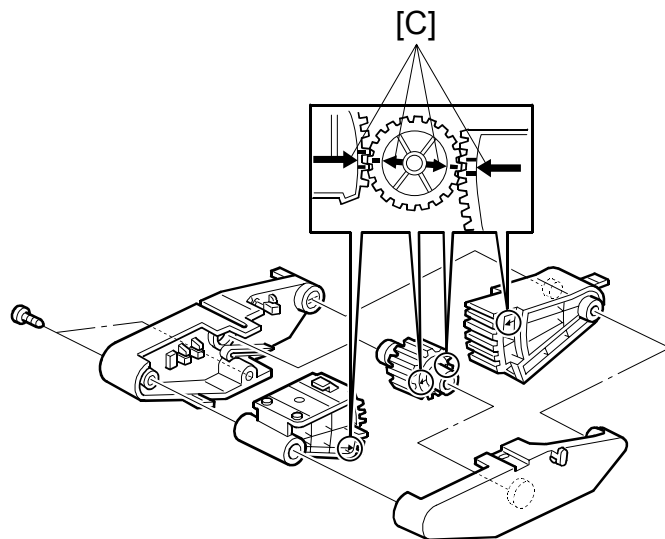


OUTPUT TRAY UNIT

- [A]: Rear cover (🔩 x 1)
 [B]: Output tray motor (🔌 x 1)



NOTE: When putting back the output tray motor, make sure that the arrows [C] indicated on the gears are aligned as shown.

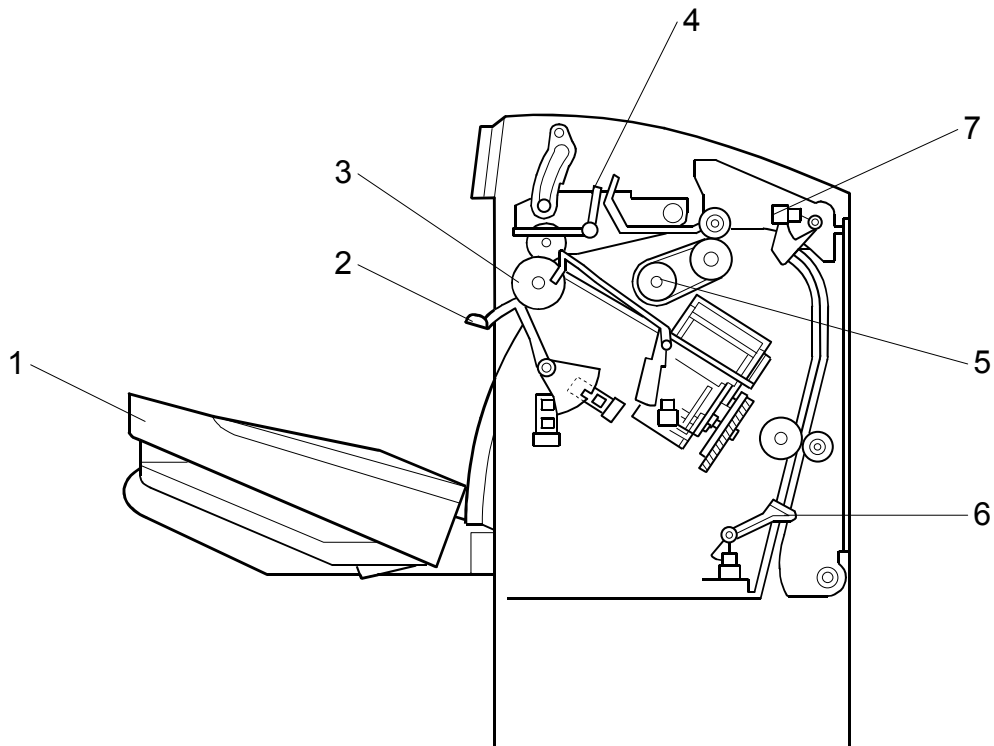


500-Sheet
 Finisher
 G314

2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

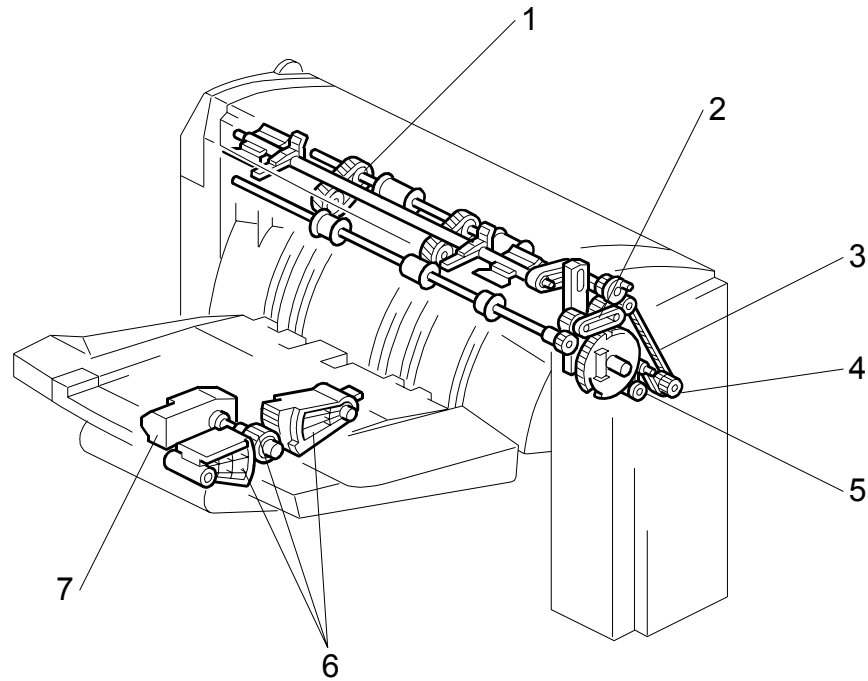
2.1 OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION

2.1.1 COMPONENT LAYOUT



- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Output tray | 5. Reverse roller |
| 2. Stack height detection lever | 6. Base sensor |
| 3. Paper exit roller | 7. Entrance sensor |
| 4. Paddle roller | |

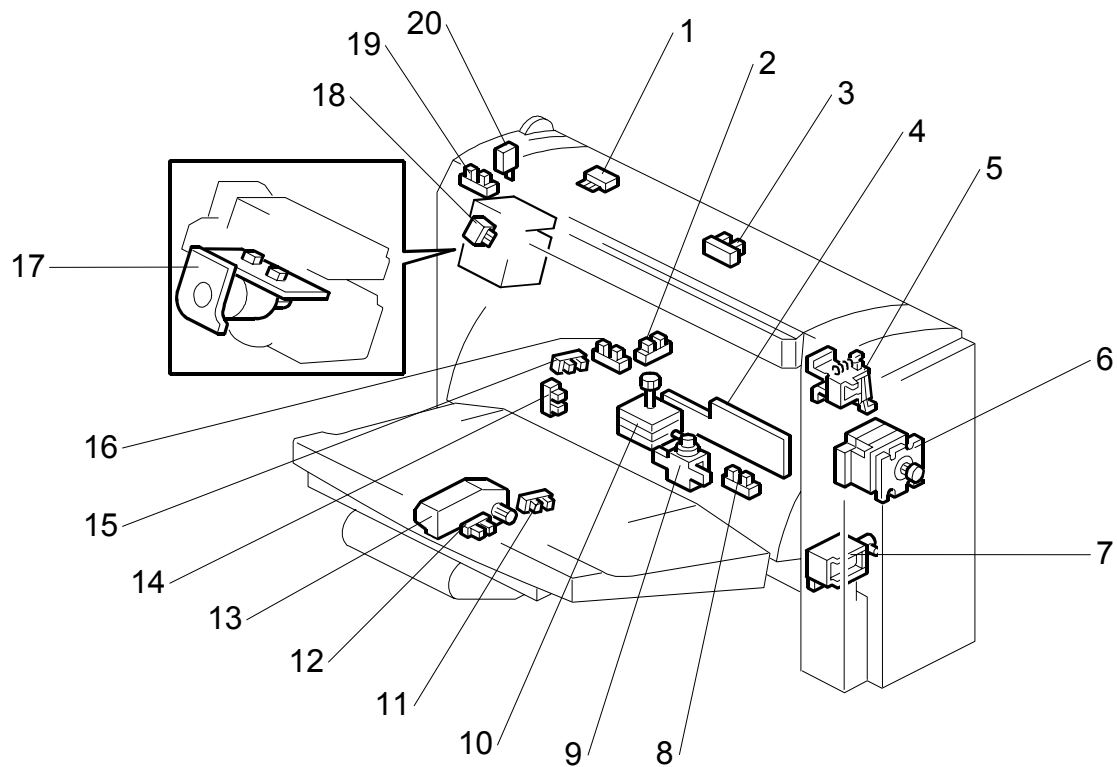
2.1.2 DRIVE LAYOUT



- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Reverse roller | 5. Paper exit unit drive gear |
| 2. Exit roller timing belt | 6. Output tray link gears |
| 3. Main motor timing belt | 7. Output tray motor |
| 4. Main motor | |

500-Sheet
Finisher
G314

2.1.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS



See the next page for the component description table.

OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION

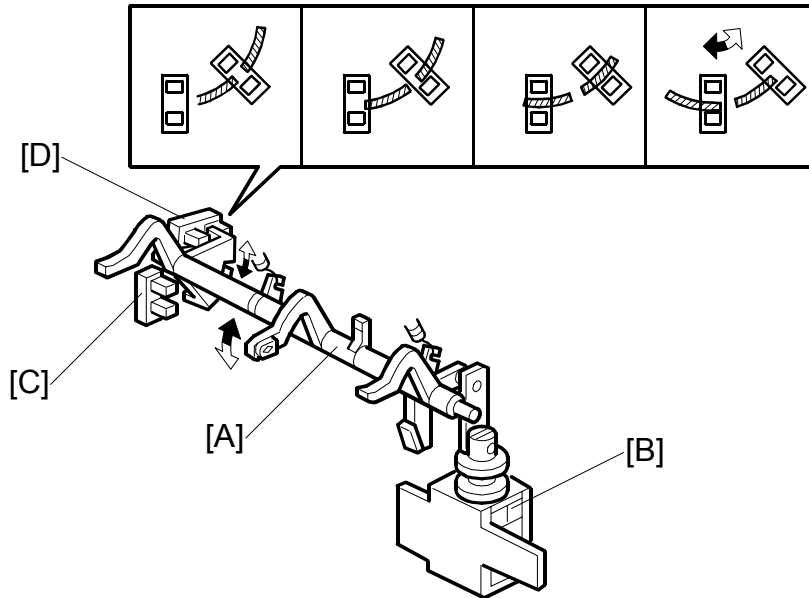
Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
Motors			
M1	Main	Drives all the rollers.	6
M2	Jogger	Drives the jogger fence	10
M3	Output Tray	Drives the tray up and down	13
M4	Stapler	Drives the stapler	17
Sensors			
S1	Entrance	Detects paper at the entrance	3
S2	Exit	Detects paper at the exit	16
S3	Stack height	Detects the top of the paper stack	14
S4	Lever	Detects the position of stack height lever	15
S5	Jogger home position	Detects the position of the jogger fence	2
S6	Top cover	Detects if the top cover is open.	19
S7	Tray upper limit	Detects when the tray is lifted up to the upper limit.	12
S8	Stack near-limit	Detects when the tray is at its lowest limit (almost full).	11
S9	Base	Jam detector.	8
Switches			
SW1	Paper exit unit	Switches DC for the stapler unit on and off.	20
SW2	Staple unit cover	Cuts DC when the staple unit cover is open.	18
SW3	Right cover	Detect if the finisher right cover is open.	1
Solenoids			
SOL1	Exit unit gear	Moves the paper exit unit up and down	7
SOL2	Paddle roller	Switches paddle roller rotation on and off.	5
SOL3	Stack height lever	Moves the stack height lever into contact with the top of the stack.	9
PCBs			
PCB1	Main control	Controls all finisher functions	4

500-Sheet
Finisher
G314

2.2 DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS

2.2.1 OUTPUT TRAY

Stack Height Detection



Stack height detection lever [A]: Driven by stack height lever solenoid [B].

Two sensors detect the height of the stack in the output tray: the stack height [C] and lever [D] sensors.

Stack height sensor	Lever sensor	Status
Off	Off	The stack height is below the target. The output tray is lifted to the target position.
Off	On	Target position
On	On	The stack height is more than the target. The output tray is lowered to the target position.
On	Off	The stack height detection lever is at home position.

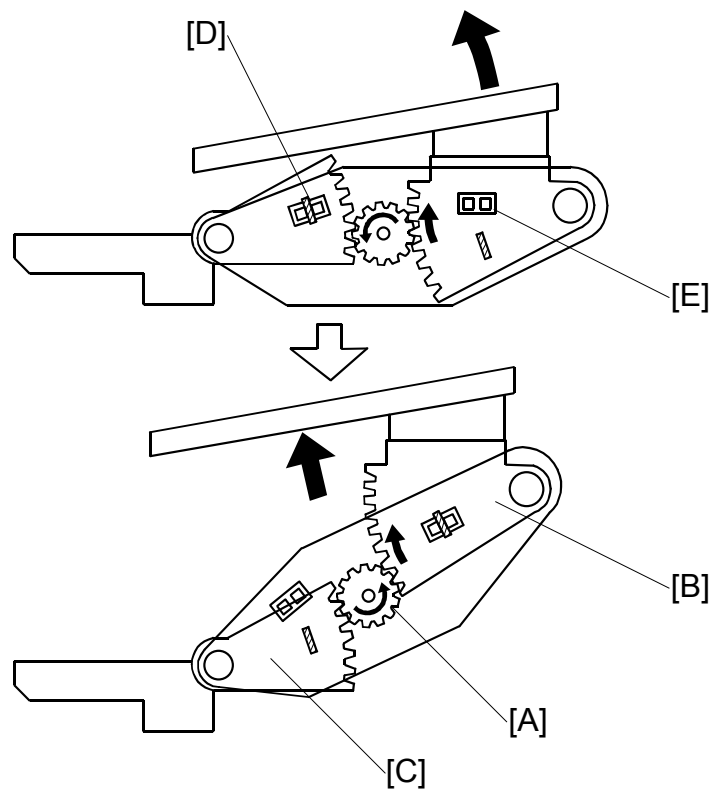
Off: Actuator not in sensor

At the start of a print job, the solenoid turns off. The stack height detection lever comes down, to detect the current stack level.

When a sheet of paper is being fed out, the solenoid turns on and the lever goes back up to home position (inside the unit).

After paper has been fed out, the solenoid turns on again, and the lever detects the level of the stack.

Output Tray Up/Down Mechanism



500-Sheet
Finisher
G314

Overview

The output tray motor [A] lifts/lowers the tray if the stack height is not at the target position.

Gears [B] and [C] keep the angle of the tray constant at any tray position.

Output Tray Downward Movement

The top of the paper stack is checked after every page (or set of pages) has been fed out. If the top of the stack is higher than the target level, the output tray motor moves the tray down.

When the stack near-limit sensor [D] detects the actuator on gear [C], a stack near-limit signal is transferred to the main frame. The tray cannot move any lower. The next time the top of the stack height is above the target level, printing stops.

Output Tray Upward Movement

If paper is removed from the stack, the top of the stack will be lower than the target level, and the output tray motor moves the tray up.

When the tray upper limit sensor [E] detects the actuator on gear [B], the tray cannot be moved up any more, so the motor stops.

2.2.2 PAPER FEED

Overview

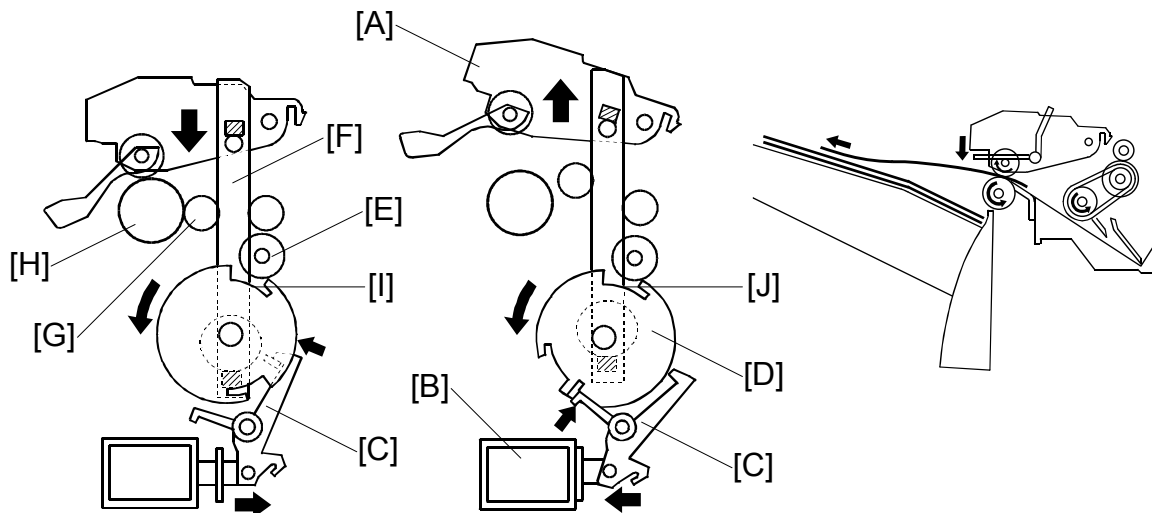
The following paper feed out modes can be selected at the printer driver.

Mode	Description
Straight feed out mode	Paper is fed directly to the output tray without shifting or stapling.
Shift sorting mode	Alternate sets are shifted before being fed to the output tray.
Stapling mode	All sets are shifted and stapled, then fed to the output tray.

Straight Feed-out Mode

Before the job, the exit unit [A] is up, and the exit unit gear solenoid [B] is on, pulling lever [C] away from the exit unit gear [D].

At the start of the job, the stack height detection lever detects the top of the stack. The tray moves up or down if the top of the stack is not at the correct level.



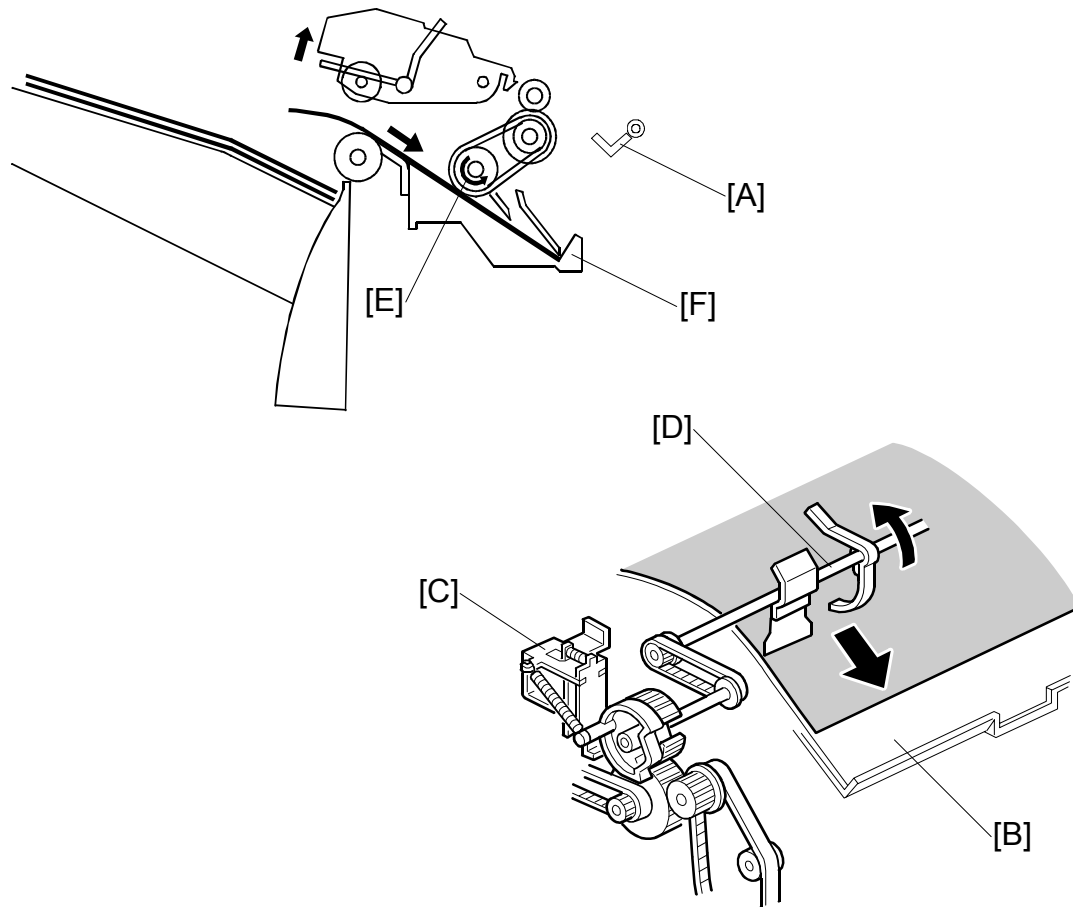
When the paper exit sensor in the main frame turns on, the finisher main motor starts. It drives the exit unit gear [D] through idle gear [E]. The gear pulls paper exit unit [A] down, using the paper exit link [F]. The link also moves the paper exit roller [H] up through the exit roller drive gear [G].

When the motor starts, the solenoid switches off and a spring pushes lever [C] into contact with the exit unit gear [D].

When a part of the exit unit gear without threads [I] faces the idle gear, the gear stops turning (see the left-hand diagram). The lever [C] catches a peg on the exit unit gear, to make sure that it stops at the correct position. The paper exit rollers [H] now contact each other and the main motor feeds out the paper.

When the last page has been fed out, the solenoid turns on to pull the lever away from the gear. The gear starts turning, to lift the exit unit to the standby position.

When the other part of the exit unit gear without threads [J] faces the idle gear, the exit unit gear stops. Then, the main motor stops and the solenoid turns off.

Shift Sorting Mode

500-Sheet
Finisher
G314

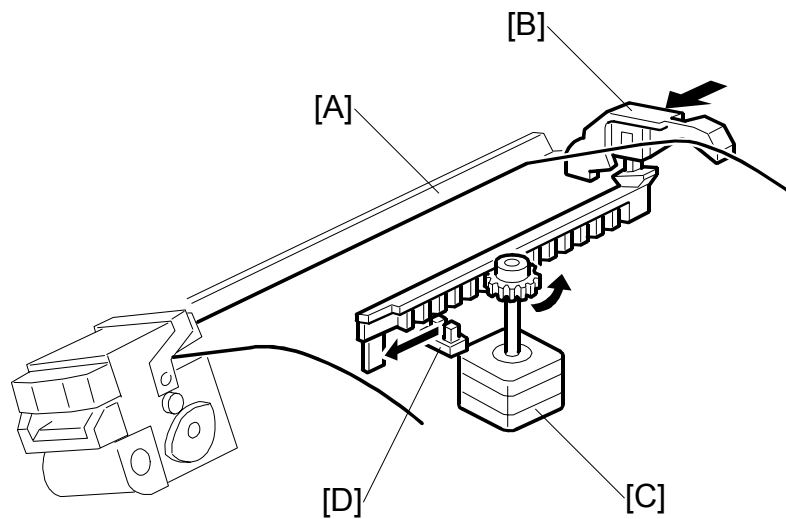
At the start of the job, and for odd numbered sets of copies, the mechanism is the same as the straight feed out mode. However, even numbered sets are fed back to the jogger tray, which shifts the sets to one side before feeding them out.

This section describes what happens for even-numbered sets (sets 2, 4, 6 etc) of the job.

A short time after the entrance sensor [A] detects the first page of the set, the paper exit unit solenoid turns on to restart the rotation of the paper exit unit gear, raising the paper exit unit to the standby position. It stays there until after the last page of the set.

The paper cannot feed out, so it drops into the jogger tray [B]. The paddle roller solenoid [C] turns on and the paddle roller [D] feeds the paper to the reverse roller [E]. The reverse roller feeds the paper to the end fence [F] of the jogger tray.

DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS



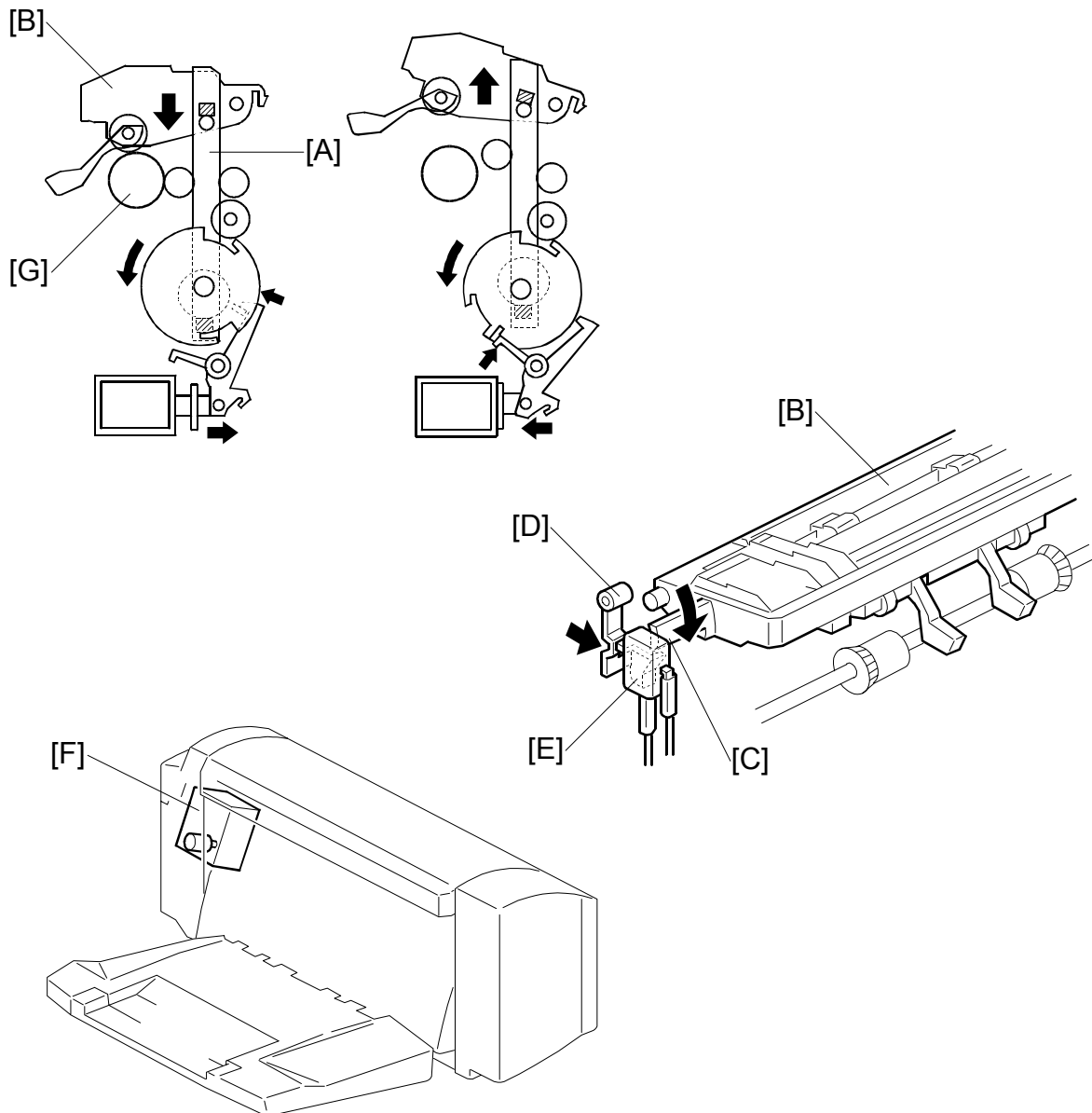
After the paper reaches the end fence [A], the jogger fence [B] shifts the paper across. The jogger motor [C] drives the jogger fence. The home position sensor [D] detects when the jogger fence has returned to home position.

When the next set begins, the paper exit unit moves down, and the machine operates the same way as straight feed out mode. At this time, the entire set in the jogger tray is fed out at the same time as the first page of the next set. However, the set coming from the jogger tray has been shifted to one side.

If the last set is an even-numbered set, the paper exit unit must be pulled down to feed the final set out of the jogger tray. Then the exit unit moves back up to the standby position.

The capacity of the jogger tray is 30 sheets. If the set contains more than 30 sheets, the machine feeds out the first 30 from the jogger tray, then continues with the rest of the set, using the jogger tray.

Stapling Mode



500-Sheet
Finisher
G314

The stapler is attached to the jogger tray, so all sets go to the jogger tray.

After all pages of a set have entered the jogger tray and been shifted across, the paper exit link [A] pulls the paper exit unit [B] down until knob [C] on the exit unit pushes the link lever [D] for the exit unit switch [E]. This turns on the exit unit switch. When this switch is on, dc is supplied to the stapler unit [F] and the main motor is turned off.

The exit unit switch is activated when the exit unit is pulled part-way down. After stapling the set of prints, the paper exit unit is pulled down again until the unit comes in contact with the paper exit roller [G], and the stapled set is fed out.

2.2.3 JAM CONDITIONS

	Sensors	Conditions
Remaining paper detection	Entrance Exit	Either the entrance or exit sensor detects paper just after the unit is initialized.
Non-feed at the entrance	Entrance	The entrance sensor is not activated within a certain period after the paper exit sensor detects paper.
Jamming at the entrance	Entrance	The entrance sensor is not de-activated after paper is fed 1.3 times the length of the paper.
Non-feed inside the unit (Straight feed out mode only)	Exit	The exit sensor is not activated within a certain period after the entrance sensor detects paper.
Jamming at the exit	Exit	The exit sensor is not de-activated after paper is fed for a certain period.
Jogger tray	Exit	The exit sensor is de-activated during paper shifting or stapling.

2.2.4 ERROR DETECTION

	Conditions
Jogger motor error	Jogger home position sensor does not shut off after jogger motor starts.
Jogger motor home position detection error	Jogger home position sensor does not turn on after paper shifting.
Stapler error	Stapler home position sensor (inside stapler unit) does not turn on after stapling.
Output tray upper limit error	Tray upper limit sensor is activated.
Output tray motor error	The output tray is away from the target position for more than 10 seconds.
Stack height detection error	The stack height detection lever does not return to its home position before going to detect the stack height.

NOTE: The above errors are indicated as “Finisher jam” at the first occurrence.
If the same error happens again in the next job, “finisher error” is indicated.

G312
FOUR-BIN MAILBOX

FOUR-BIN MAILBOX G312

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT	1
1.1 EXTERIOR COVER	1
1.2 MAIN MOTOR AND CONTROLLER BOARD.....	1
1.3 VERTICAL TRANSPORT AND PAPER OVERFLOW SENSORS	2
2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS	3
2.1 OVERVIEW	3
2.2 DRIVE	4
Drive Path	4
2.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT	5
2.4 PAPER DISTRIBUTION	6
Mechanism	6
Paper Overflow Sensor	6
2.5 BASIC OPERATION.....	7
2.6 PAPER MISFEED DETECTION TIMING	7

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

⚠ CAUTION

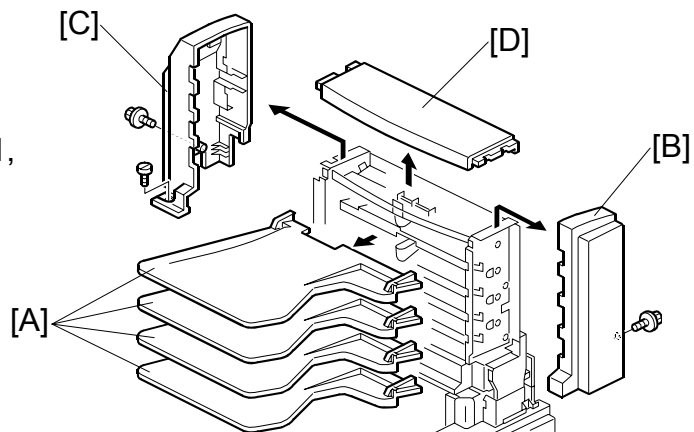
Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before beginning any of the procedures in this section.

NOTE: This manual uses the following symbols.

☛ : See or Refer to 🔩 : Screws 📡 : Connector

1.1 EXTERIOR COVER

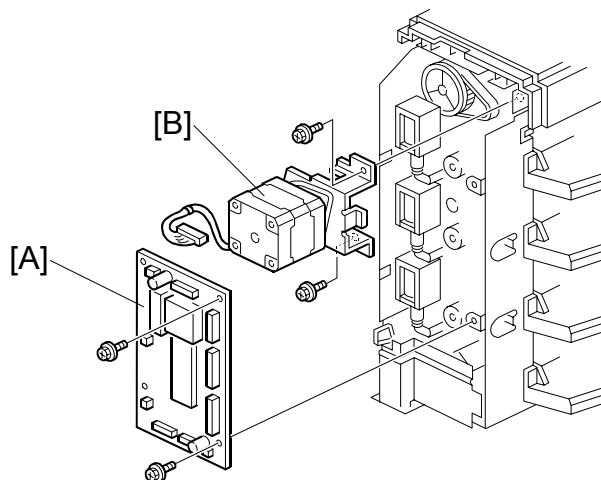
- [A]: Tray
- [B]: Front cover (🔩 x 1)
- [C]: Rear cover (Flat-head screw x 1, 🔩 x 1)
- [D]: Upper cover



Four-Bin
Mailbox
G312

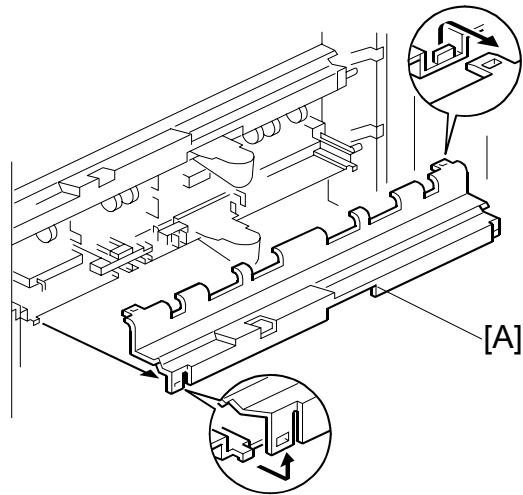
1.2 MAIN MOTOR AND CONTROLLER BOARD

1. Rear cover (☛ 1.1)
2. Controller board [A] (📡 x 9, 🔩 x 2)
3. Main motor [B] (🔩 x 2)

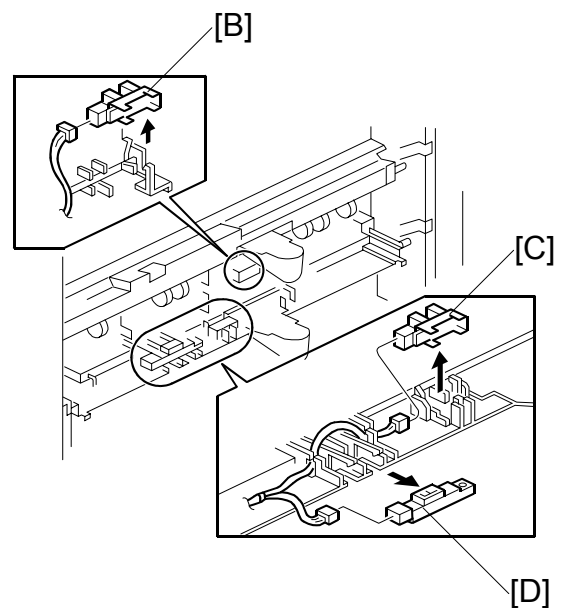


1.3 VERTICAL TRANSPORT AND PAPER OVERFLOW SENSORS

1. Tray (☛ 1.1)
2. Transport cover [A] (4 hooks)

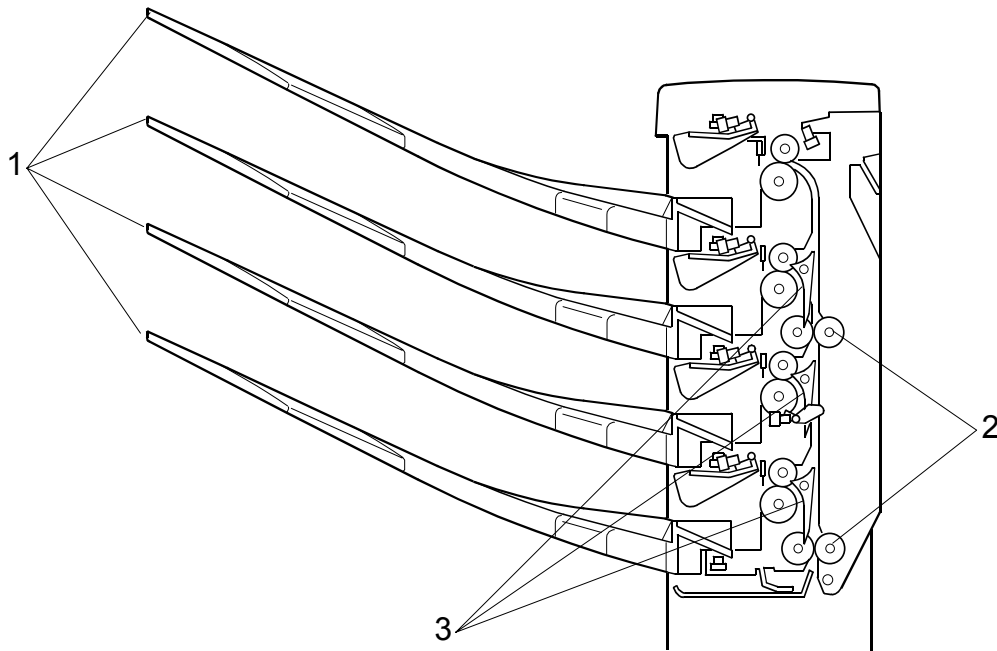


3. Vertical transport sensor [B] (☛ x 1)
NOTE: There are 2 sensors: one on the 1st tray, the other on the 3rd tray.
4. Paper overflow sensor [C] (☛ x 1)
5. Paper sensor [D] (☛ x 1)



2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

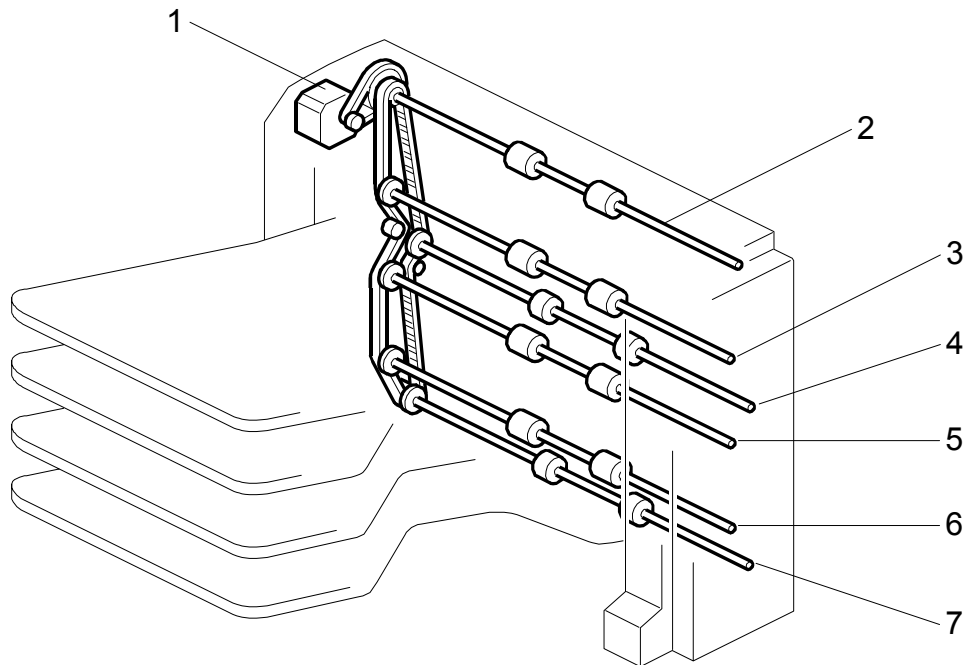
2.1 OVERVIEW



- 1. Trays
- 2. Transport rollers
- 3. Turn gates

Four-Bin
Mailbox
G312

2.2 DRIVE

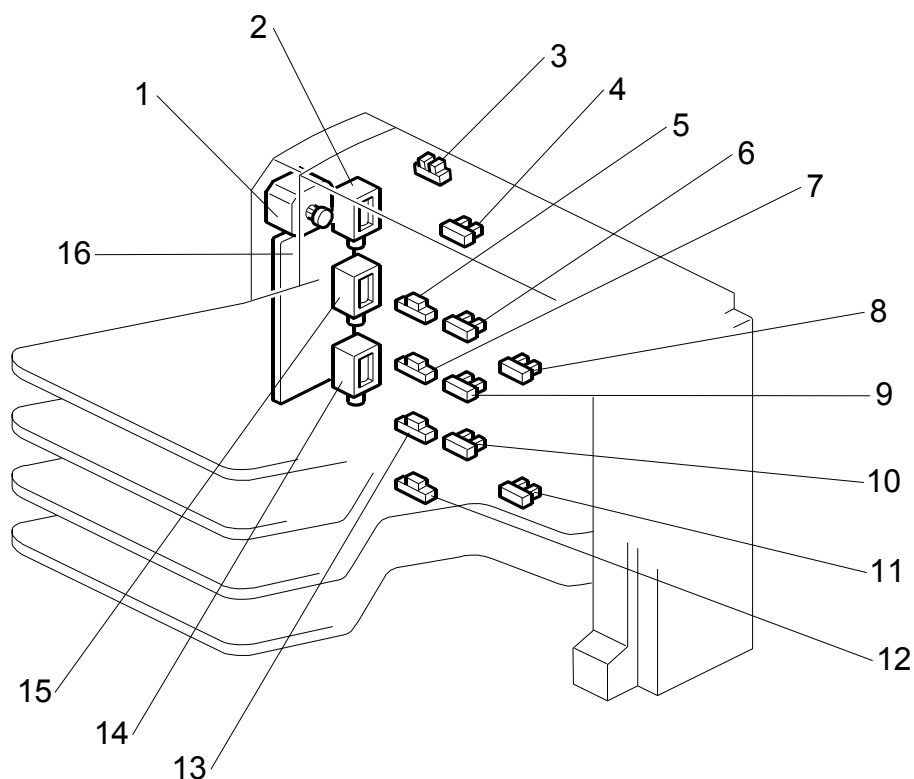


1. Main motor
2. Exit roller 4
3. Exit roller 3
4. Transport roller 2
5. Exit roller 2
6. Exit roller 1
7. Transport roller 1

Drive Path

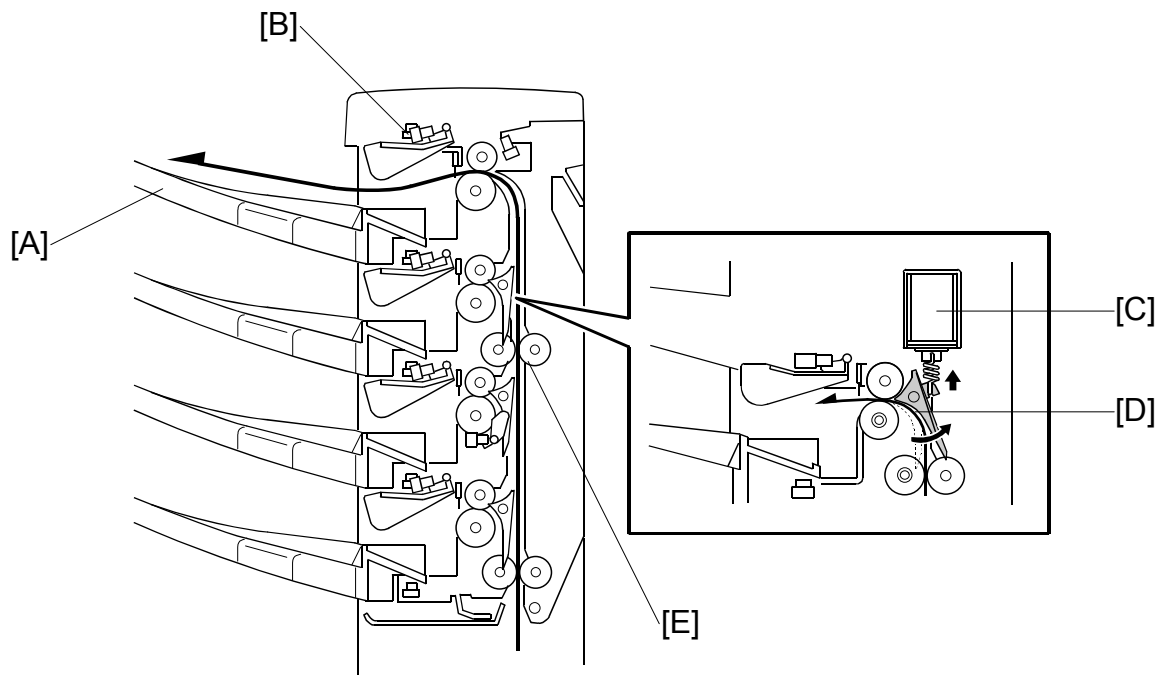
Main motor → Timing belts → Transport/exit rollers

2.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



- | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Main motor | 9. Tray 2 paper overflow sensor |
| 2. Turn gate solenoid 3 | 10. Tray 1 paper overflow sensor |
| 3. Door safety switch | 11. Lower vertical transport sensor |
| 4. Tray 4 paper overflow sensor | 12. Tray 1 paper sensor |
| 5. Tray 4 paper sensor | 13. Tray 2 paper sensor |
| 6. Tray 3 paper overflow sensor | 14. Turn gate solenoid 1 |
| 7. Tray 3 paper sensor | 15. Turn gate solenoid 2 |
| 8. Upper vertical transport sensor | 16. Main control board |

2.4 PAPER DISTRIBUTION



Mechanism

1. **Transport roller [E]**
Transports the paper
2. **Turn gate solenoid [C]**
Operates the turn gate
3. **Turn gate [D]**
Opens to direct the paper to the correct tray
4. **Bin [A]**
Stacks the paper

Paper Overflow Sensor

When a tray becomes full, the paper overflow sensor [B] detects it and printing is suspended. If the paper is removed, printing automatically restarts.

2.5 BASIC OPERATION

A 10-pin connector links the mailbox with the main unit.

When the leading edge of the paper activates the exit sensor in the interchange unit, the mailbox main motor turns on and the mailbox rollers begin to turn. The paper is then fed out to the tray that has been selected.

Solenoids [C] open and close junction gates [D] as shown, to direct the paper to the selected tray. When the top tray (tray 4) is selected, none of the solenoids are activated.

When the trailing edge of the last sheet turns off the vertical transport sensor, both the mailbox motor and the junction gate solenoid of the selected bin turn off.

2.6 PAPER MISFEED DETECTION TIMING

- J1 Timing:** After the leading edge of the paper activates the exit sensor in the interchange unit, a misfeed is detected if this sensor does not turn off within $X + 0.52$ s, where X is equal to the amount of time a given paper size takes to pass the sensor (e.g. A4 LEF = 1.74 s).
- J2 Timing:** After the paper exit sensor in the interchange unit is activated, the machine determines that the paper has not yet fed and detects a misfeed if the vertical transport sensor does not activate within 1.94 s (in the case of A4 paper).
- J3 Timing:** After the vertical transport sensor is activated, a misfeed is detected if this sensor does not turn off within $X + 0.52$ s (see above for an explanation of X). For example, this value would be 2.26 s for A4 LEF.

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETINS

BULLETIN NUMBER: G071 - 001
01/24/2003
APPLICABLE MODEL:
GESTETNER - C7010
RICOH - AFICIO CL5000
SAVIN - CLP1036
SUBJECT: SERVICE MANUAL - LEGEND PAGE CORRECTION
GENERAL:

The LEGEND PAGE in the G071 Service Manual and G071 Parts Catalog listed the wrong model name/number for the SAVIN product.

Please refer to the table below for the correct SAVIN model name/number for the G071 Product Code.

Service Manual:

PRODUCT CODE	COMPANY			
	GESTETNER	LANIER	RICOH	SAVIN
G071	C7010	LP 036c	Aficio CL5000	CLP1036

PARTS CATALOG:

PRODUCT CODE	COMPANY			
	GESTETNER	LANIER	RICOH	SAVIN
G071	C7010	LP 036c	Aficio CL5000	CLP1036
G303	Duplex Unit Type 5000			
G305	Interchange Unit Type 5000			
G312	Mail Bin Type 5000			
G313	Paper Feed Unit Type 5000			
G314	SR780			
G315	Printer Hard Disk Type 5000			

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.



BULLETIN NUMBER: G071 - 002

03/14/2003

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER - C7010

RICOH - AFICIO CL5000

SAVIN - CLP1036

SUBJECT: IMAGE SKEW

SYMPTOM:

Image skew when feeding from mainframe Tray 1.

CAUSE:

The operator does not set the Side Fence flush against the paper stack.

FIELD COUNTERMEASURE 1:

Advise customers that the Side Fence should be set flush against the loaded paper stack, or in cases where the customer gives approval, secure the Side Fences in place by two screws.

NOTE: *The level of skew will increase twofold if there is a 1mm gap between the paper and Side Fence.*

FIELD COUNTERMEASURE 2:

As a supplement, increasing the paper buckle in SP1-003 can further minimize the level of skew. Try adjusting this value several times while checking the level of skew on the printouts, keeping in mind that a higher value tends to cause Z-folds and a lower value tends to cause paper jams.

Note: This copy is intended as a master original
for reproduction of additional bulletins.



MECHANICAL



PARTS

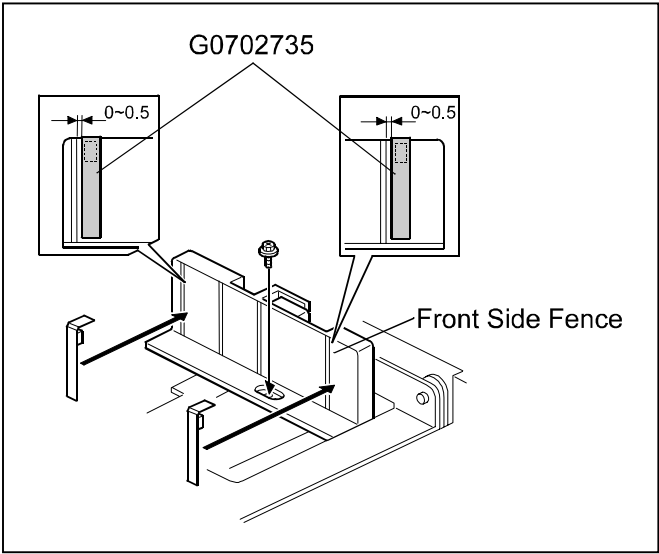
Continued.....

FIELD COUNTERMEASURE 3:

The following sheets of Mylar have been added to the Side Fence from the September production machines. For the field machines, please refer to the procedure below:

MYLAR (G0702735) ATTACHING PROCEDURE

Clean the attachment surface on the Front Side Fence (AF016097) with alcohol then attach the Mylar (G0702735) to the Front Side Fence as shown in the illustration.



				REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	NEW PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	PAGE	ITEM
	G0702735	Guide Plate - Side Fence	2/Tray	17	29*

* DENOTES NEW ITEM NUMBER

UNITS AFFECTED:

All G071 printers manufactured after the serial numbers listed below will have the new style Guide Plate - Side Fence installed during production.

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner C7010	P75268xxxxx
Ricoh AFICIO CL5000	P75268xxxxx
Savin CLP1036	P75268xxxxx

BULLETIN NUMBER: G071 - 003

03/19/2003

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER - C7010

RICOH - AFICIO CL5000

SAVIN - CLP1036

SUBJECT: SERVICE MANUAL - INSERT

GENERAL:

The Service Manual pages listed below must be replaced with the pages supplied. Each bulletin package contains 1 set of replacement pages.

PAGES:

The revised areas have been highlighted by an arrow ⇒.

- 3-23 Updated Information (Transfer Roller illustration)

Note: This copy is intended as a master original
for reproduction of additional bulletins.

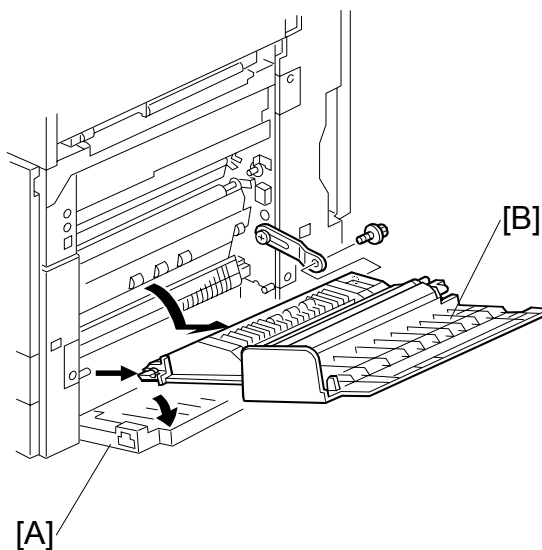


**SERVICE
MANUAL**

3.8 PAPER TRANSFER UNIT

3.8.1 VERTICAL TRANSPORT UNIT

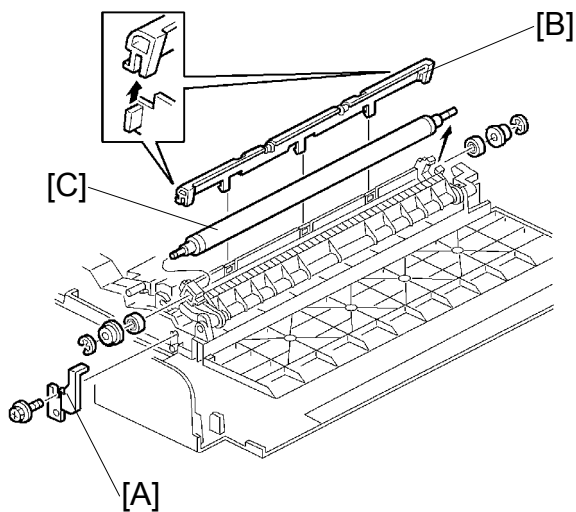
1. Open the right lower cover [A].
2. Right cover [B] (⌘ x 1)



Replacement
Adjustment

⇒ 3.8.2 TRANSFER ROLLER

1. Brace [A] (⌘ x 1)
 2. Guide [B]
 3. Transfer roller [C]
(⌘ x 2, Bushing x 2, Bearing x 2)
- NOTE:** To remove the screws, turn the roller unit on its pivot.



TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: G071 - 004

03/26/2003

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER - C7010

LANIER - LP036c

RICOH - AFICIO CL5000

SAVIN - CLP1036

SUBJECT: PARTS CATALOG UPDATES

GENERAL:

The following parts updates are being issued for all G071 Parts Catalogs.



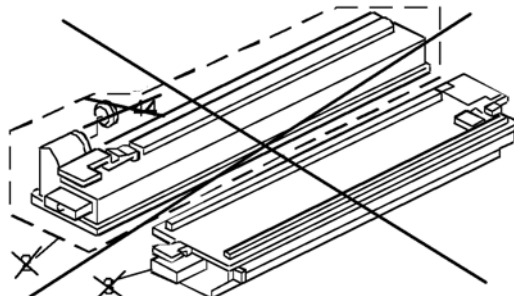
● **UPDATE 1:**

Pressure Roller Assembly– The part number for the Pressure Roller Assembly was incorrect. Please update your G071 Parts Catalog with the following information.

					REFERENCE	
INCORRECT PART NO.	CORRECT PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	INT	PAGE	ITEM
AE020119	AE020132	Pressure Roller - Assembly	1	-	31	20

● **UPDATE 2:**

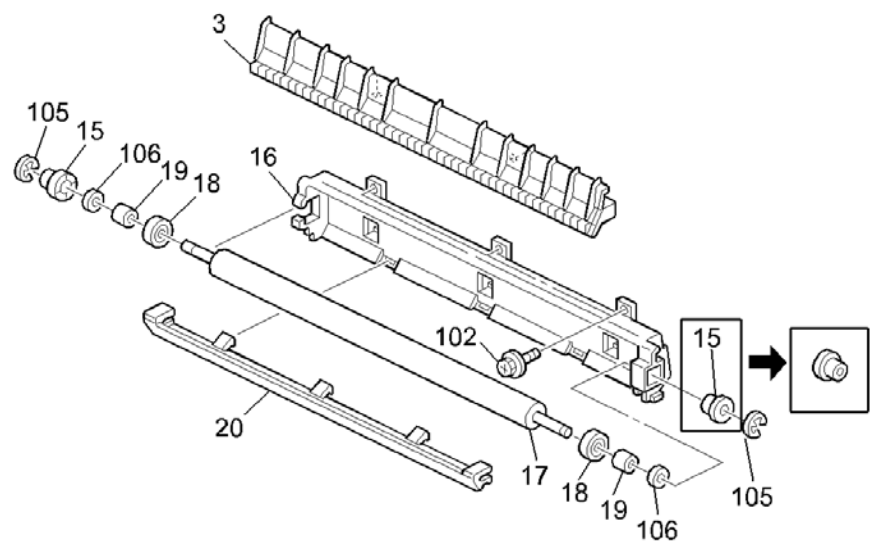
OPC Waste Toner and Transfer Belt Waste Toner Bottles – The OPC Waste Toner and Transfer Belt Waste Toner Bottles were mistakenly registered as spare parts (they are supplied as maintenance kits). Please remove them from the illustration and the parts list. Please update your G071 Parts Catalog with the following information.



			REFERENCE	
PART NUMBER	DESCRIPTION	QTY	PAGE	ITEM
G0702100	OPC Belt Waste Toner Bottle	1→0	25	2
G0706310	Transfer belt Waste Toner Bottle	1→0	25	3
A2573490	Cap – 20 mm	1→0	25	44

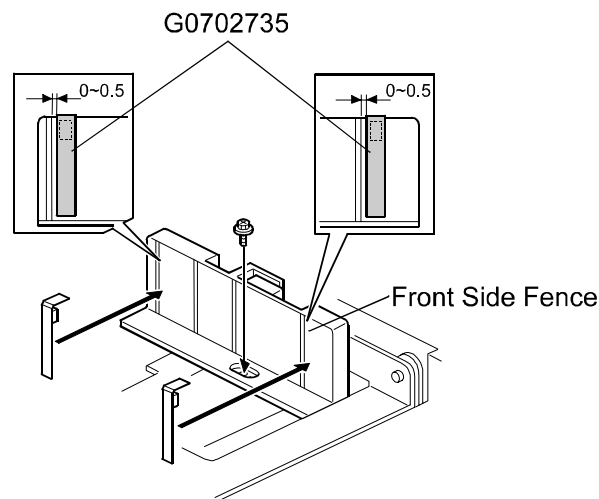
● **UPDATE 3:**

Vertical Transport Illustration – The orientation of the Transfer Roller Bushing was incorrect in the Vertical Transport 2 illustration. Please correct the illustration in your parts catalog as shown below.



● **UPDATE 4:**

Guide Plate – Side Fence – To reduce paper skew, two pieces of mylar have been added to the Front Side Fence. Refer to TSB G071 – 002 for more information. Please update your G071 Parts Catalog with the following information



			REFERENCE	
NEW PART NUMBER	DESCRIPTION	QTY	PAGE	ITEM
G0702735	Guide Plate – Side Fence	2	17	29 *

* DENOTES NEW ITEM NUMBER

● **UPDATE 5:**

Charge Corona Assembly– The following changes have been applied to the Charge Corona Assembly to ensure even image density:

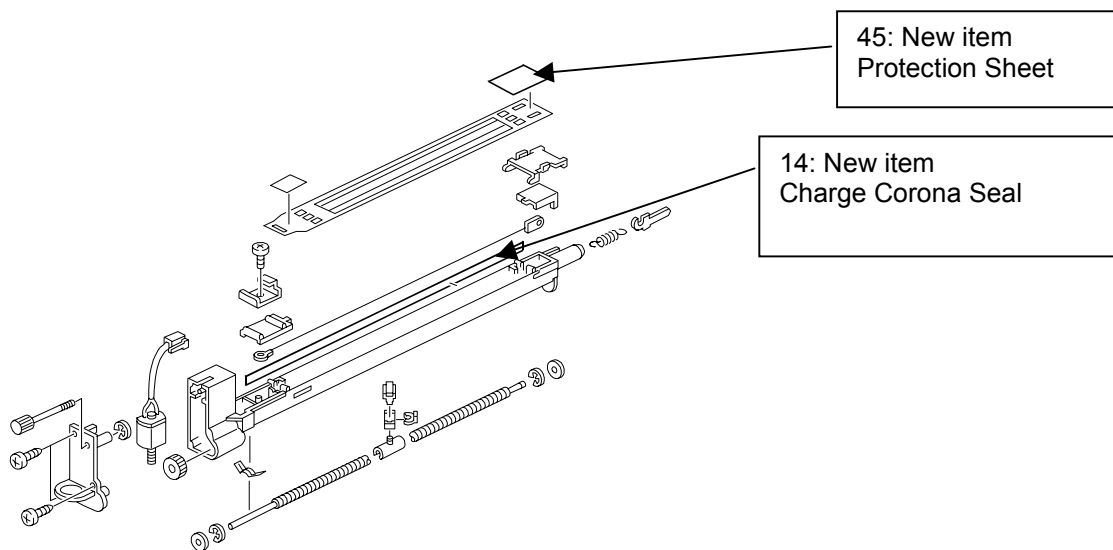
1. The charge corona wire has been changed from a gold-plated to a platinum-plated wire.

NOTE: The new part number is listed in the parts catalog.

2. The material of the charge corona seal has been changed to reduce the friction between the seal and OPC belt.

3. To reduce the possibility of damaging the OPC belt when the charge corona unit is removed from and installed into the PCU, a protection sheet has been added to the rear end of the charge corona grid

Please update your G071 Parts Catalog with the following information.



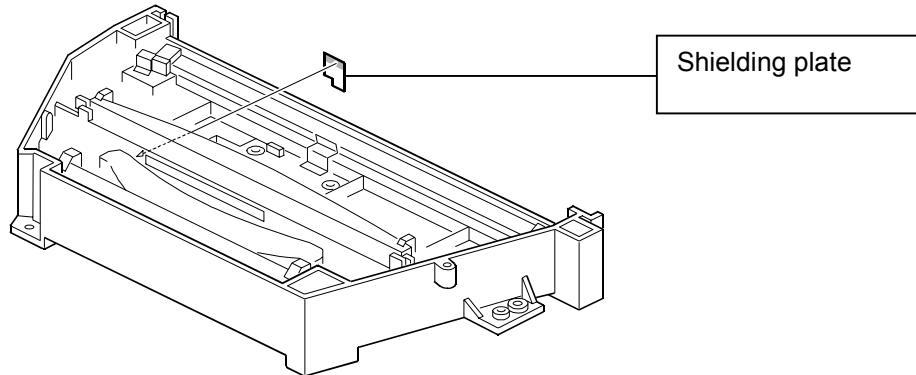
					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	NEW PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	INT	PAGE	ITEM
B0512151	B0512160	Charge Corona Assembly	1	3/S	25	1
(G0702178)	G0702110	Charge Corona Wire	1	3/S	25	10
(G0702177)	G0702142	Seal – Charge Corona	1	3/S	25	14 *
-	G0702116	Protection Sheet	1		25	45 *

* DENOTES NEW ITEM NUMBER

NOTE: The following modifications were applied to the production line from the beginning of September '02 production.

● **UPDATE 6:**

Shielding Plate – To improve image quality, a Shielding Plate has been added to filter out excessive light. Please update your G071 Parts Catalog with the following information



			REFERENCE	
NEW PART NUMBER	DESCRIPTION	QTY	PAGE	ITEM
B0511969	Shielding Plate	1	23	22 *

* DENOTES NEW ITEM NUMBER

UNITS AFFECTED:

All G071 printers manufactured after the serial numbers listed below will have the new style Shielding Plate installed during production.

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner C7010 Lanier LP036c Ricoh Aficio CL5000 Savin CLP1036	P7527200282

INTERCHANGEABILITY CHART:

0	OLD and NEW parts can be used in both OLD and NEW machines.	2	NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines. OLD parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines.
1	NEW parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines. OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines.	3	OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines. NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines.
3/S	Must be installed as a set on units manufactured prior to the S/N cut-in. On units manufactured after the S/N cut-in or previously modified, use the new part numbers individually.		

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: G071 - 005

04/29/2003

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER - C7010

LANIER - LP036C

RICOH - AFICIO CL5000

SAVIN - CLP1036

SUBJECT: SERVICE MANUAL - INSERT

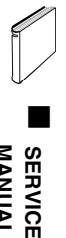
The Service Manual pages listed below must be replaced with the pages supplied.

The revised areas have been highlighted by an arrow ⇒.

PAGES:

- iii & iv TOC (Page Numbers Have Changed)
- 5-11 thru 5-31 SP Data Values Have Changed & Additional SP's Have Been Added
- 5-32 thru 5-60 No Changes to SP's (**Only Page Numbers Have Changed**)

NOTE: For additional information please refer to the G071 Firmware History Bulletin; Dated 04/09/2003



3.11.1 PICKUP/FEED ROLLER	3-36
3.11.2 PAPER FEED CLUTCH	3-37
3.11.3 REVERSE ROLLER	3-37

TROUBLESHOOTING

4. TROUBLESHOOTING	4-1
4.1 SERVICE CALL	4-1
4.1.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS	4-1
4.1.2 SC TABLE	4-2
4.2 CONTROLLER ERROR TABLE	4-9
4.3 BLOWN FUSE CONDITIONS	4-12
4.4 CHECK POINTS FOR IMAGE PROBLEMS AT REGULAR INTERVALS	4-12

SERVICE TABLES

5. SERVICE TABLES	5-1
5.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE	5-1
5.1.1 OPERATION PANEL KEYS	5-1
5.1.2 STARTING SERVICE PROGRAM MODE	5-2
Procedure 1	5-2
Procedure 2	5-2
5.1.3 MAIN MENU	5-2
5.1.4 SPECIFYING A VALUE OR SETTING	5-3
5.1.5 LEAVING SERVICE MODE	5-3
5.2 SP MODE TABLES	5-4
5.2.1 SERVICE (CONTROLLER SERVICE MODES)	5-4
Bit Switch Settings	5-6
Gamma Adjustment	5-8
5.2.2 ENGINE SERVICE MODES	5-11
SP1-XXX: (Feed)	5-11
SP2-XXX: (Drum)	5-15
SP3-XXX: (Process)	5-29
SP5-XXX: (Mode)	5-32
SP7-XXX: (Data Log)	5-39
Input Check Table	5-47
Table 1: Tray 1 Paper Size	5-50
Table 2: 1st/2nd Bank Paper Size	5-50
Table 3: 1st/2nd Bank Near End	5-50
Output Check Table	5-51
5.3 CONTROLLER SELF-DIAGNOSTICS	5-53
5.3.1 OVERVIEW	5-53
5.3.2 DETAILED SELF-DIAGNOSTICS	5-54
5.4 USER PROGRAM MODE	5-55
5.5 UPGRADING SOFTWARE	5-56
5.5.1 OVERVIEW	5-56

5.5.2 UPGRADING	5-57
Procedure	5-57
Error Recovery.....	5-58
5.6 DIP SWITCHES.....	5-59
Controller Board.....	5-59
BCU Board.....	5-59
5.7 PRINTING A TEST PATTERN	5-60

DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS

6. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS	6-1
6.1 OVERVIEW	6-1
6.1.1 MAJOR COMPONENTS	6-1
6.1.2 PAPER PATH.....	6-2
6.1.3 DRIVE COMPONENTS.....	6-3
6.1.4 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS	6-4
Image Transfer	6-4
Development Units.....	6-5
Paper Path.....	6-6
Drive Components	6-7
Circuit Boards	6-8
6.2 PRINTING PROCESS OVERVIEW.....	6-9
6.3 PROCESS CONTROL	6-11
6.3.1 OVERVIEW	6-11
6.3.2 PROCESS CONTROL STEPS.....	6-12
Six Steps.....	6-12
When is Process Control Done?	6-12
6.4 PHOTOCONDUCTOR UNIT (PCU)	6-13
6.4.1 OVERVIEW	6-13
6.4.2 NEW PHOTOCONDUCTOR UNIT DETECTION	6-14
New PCU Sensor.....	6-14
Mechanism	6-14
PCU Counter	6-14
6.4.3 CHARGE CORONA UNIT	6-15
Power Supply.....	6-15
Wire Cleaning	6-15
Cleaning Interval.....	6-15
Quenching	6-16
6.4.4 OPC BELT DRIVE	6-16
6.4.5 OPC BELT CLEANING UNIT	6-17
Toner Collection Augers	6-17
Counter Blade + Brush	6-17
Waste Toner Bottle Sensors	6-17
Drive	6-18
6.4.6 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT UNIT	6-19
Drive	6-19
Belt Mark Sensor	6-19
Bias Roller	6-20

5.2.2 ENGINE SERVICE MODES

The SP numbers do not appear on the screen, but they may appear on reports.

NOTE: The Service Program Mode is for use by service representatives only, so that they can properly maintain product quality. If this mode is used by anyone other than service representatives for any reason, data might be deleted or settings might be changed. In such case, product quality cannot be guaranteed any more.

SP1-XXX: (Feed)

1	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
001*	Lead_Edge_Reg.		
	1	Tray: Plain	Adjusts the leading edge registration by changing the registration clutch operation timing for each mode. [-4.0 ~ 4.0 / 0.0 / 0.1 mm/step] • <i>The user mode cannot adjust the settings for thick paper or OHP sheets.</i>
	2	Tray: Thick	
	3	Tray: OHP	
	4	Bank1	
	5	Bank2	
	6	By-pass: Plain	
	7	By-pass: Thick	
	8	By-pass: OHP	
	9	Duplex	
002*	S-to-S_Reg.		
	1	By-pass	Adjusts the side-to-side registration by changing the laser main scan start position for each mode. [-4.0 ~ 4.0 / 0.0 / 0.1 mm/step]
	2	Tray1	
	3	Bank1	
	4	Bank2	
	5	Duplex	
003*	Paper_Buckle		
	1	Tray: Plain	Adjusts the amount of paper buckle at the registration roller by changing the paper feed timing. [-9 ~ 9 / 0 / 1 mm/step]
	2	Tray: Thick	[-9 ~ 9 / -2 / 1 mm/step]
	3	Tray: OHP	[-9 ~ 9 / -2 / 1 mm/step]
	4	Tray: SmallSize	[-9 ~ 9 / -2 / 1 mm/step] (Small size: A4/LT or narrower)
	6	By-pass: Plain	[-9 ~ 9 / 0 / 1 mm/step]
	7	By-pass: Thick	[-9 ~ 9 / -2 / 1 mm/step]
	8	By-pass: OHP	[-9 ~ 9 / -2 / 1 mm/step]
	9	Duplex	[-9 ~ 9 / 0 / 1 mm/step]
105*	Fusing_Temp.		
	1	H: Pre	Sets the temperature at which the heating roller starts idling. [100 ~ 180 / 140 / 1°C/step]
	2	H: _Ready	Sets the temperature at which the heating roller enters the print ready condition. [100 ~ 180 / 155 / 1°C/step]

1	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
⇒ 105*	3	H: _Standby	Sets the heating roller temperature for the ready (standby) condition. After the main switch has been turned on, the machine enters this condition when the heating roller temperature reaches the temperature specified in this SP mode. When the machine is recovering from energy saver or auto off mode, the machine becomes ready when both heat and pressure roller temperatures reach the specified temperature. Pressure roller: SP1-105-16 [100 ~ 180 / 160 / 1°C/step]
	4	H: Plain/1C	Sets the heating roller temperature for plain paper in single-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 155 / 1°C/step]
	5	H: Plain/FC	Sets the heating roller temperature for plain paper in full-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 160 / 1°C/step]
	6	H: M-Thick/1C	Sets the heating roller temperature for medium thickness paper in single-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 165 / 1°C/step]
	7	H: M-Thick/FC	Sets the heating roller temperature for medium thickness paper in full-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 170 / 1°C/step]
	8	H: Thick/1C	Sets the heating roller temperature for thick paper in single-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 165 / 1°C/step]
	9	H: Thick/FC	Sets the heating roller temperature for thick paper in full-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 170 / 1°C/step]
	10	H: OHP/1C	Sets the heating roller temperature for OHP sheets in single-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 165 / 1°C/step]
	11	H: OHP/FC	Sets the heating roller temperature for the OHP sheets in full-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 175 / 1°C/step]
	12	H: Duplex/1C	Sets the heating roller temperature for duplex printing (both sides) in single-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 150 / 1°C/step]
	13	H: Duplex/FC	Sets the heating roller temperature for duplex printing (both sides) in full-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 155 / 1°C/step]
	14	P: Pre	Sets the temperature at which the pressure roller starts idling. [30 ~ 100 / 10 / 1°C/step]
	15	P: _Ready	Sets the temperature at which the pressure roller becomes ready for printing. [60 ~ 150 / 65 / 1°C/step]



1	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
105*	16	P: _Standby	Sets the pressure roller temperature for the ready (standby) condition. After the main switch has been turned on, the machine enters this condition when the pressure roller temperature reaches the temperature specified in this SP mode. When the machine is recovering from energy saver or auto off mode, the machine becomes ready when both heat and pressure roller temperatures reach the specified temperature. Heating roller: SP1-105-3 [60 ~ 150 / 110 / 1°C/step]
	27	H: OFFSET+	Sets the heating roller temperature correction for when room temperature is 15°C or lower. [0 ~ 20 / 5 / 1°C/step]
	28	P: OFFSET+	Sets the pressure roller temperature correction for when room temperature is 15°C or lower. [0 ~ 20 / 0 / 1°C/step]
	29	H: OFFSET-	Sets the heating roller temperature correction for when room temperature is 30°C or higher. [0 ~ 20 / 5 / 1°C/step]
	30	P: OFFSET-	Sets the pressure roller temperature correction for when room temperature is 30°C or higher. [0 ~ 20 / 0 / 1°C/step]
106	Temp. _Display		
	1	H_Roller	Displays the current temperature of the heating or pressure roller. [0 ~ 255 / 0 / 1/step]
	2	P_Roller	
109	Fusing_Nip		
	1	ExecuteMode	Checks the fusing nip width using an OHP sheet. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>The OHP sheet stops in the fusing unit for the specified time (☛ SP1-109-2).</i> • <i>The nip width should be 9 ± 0.5 mm at front and rear. If this requirement is not met, change the fusing unit.</i>
	2	Stop_Duration	Adjusts the stoppage time for the OHP sheet in the fusing unit (☛ SP1-109-1). [0 ~ 100 / 10 / 1 s/step]
902*	PaperSize		
	1	B4/LG	Specifies how the machine interprets the paper size sensor output for the main unit tray. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For Europe: 0: B4 SEF, 1: LG SEF • For N. America: 0: LG SEF, 1: B4 SEF
	2	A3/DLT	Specifies how the machine interprets the paper size sensor output for the main unit tray. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For Europe: 0: A3 SEF, 1: DLT SEF • For N. America: 0: DLT SEF, 1: A3 SEF



1	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
902*	3	A4/LT	Specifies how the machine interprets the paper size sensor output for the main unit tray. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For Europe: 0: A4 SEF, 1: LT SEF • For N. America: 0: LT SEF, 1: A4 SEF
	4	B5/Executive	Specifies how the machine interprets the paper size sensor output for the main unit tray. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For Europe: 0: B5 SEF, 1: Executive (10.5" x 7.25") SEF • For N. America: 0: B5 SEF, 1: Executive (10.5" x 7.25") SEF
905	1	Pressure Roller Type	0: New Pressure Roller Type (2.1mm) 1: Old Pressure Roller Type (1.5mm) The New Pressure Roller (2.1mm) has been applied from first mass production of the machine.
910	Empty Rev		Specifies the settings for when fusing idling is done after printing on A4/LT LEF or smaller paper sizes. [0 ~ 2 / 0 / 1/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>After printing on small-width paper (A4 LEF/LT LEF or smaller), fusing idling evens the oil thickness on the roller surface.</i> • 0 (Int): Enables printing during fusing idling. • 1 (NoRev): Disables this type of fusing idling. • 2 (NoInt): Disables printing during fusing idling.
920	Paper Feed Motor Delay Timing		
	1	Tray: Plain	Adjust the timing of the paper feed motor when the registration roller feeds the paper by the fusing motor. This adjusts the paper buckle at the registration by the start timing of the paper feed motor. Normally, the paper buckle is adjusted by SP1-003. It is not necessary to adjust in the field. (The copier version has clutch to control the timing. This adjustment is only for printer model.) [0 ~ 50 / 15 / 5/step] DFU
	2	By-pass: Plain	
	3	Tray: Small Size	[0 ~ 50 / 0 / 5/step] DFU (Small size: A4/LT or narrower)

SP2-XXX: (Drum)

2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
001*	Charge_Bias		
	1	[M]	Adjusts the charge corona unit grid voltage. [300 ~ 800 / 500 / 1 Volt/step] Only effective is SP3-003 (Lub_Interval) is set to 0.
	2	[C]	
	3	[Y]	
	4	[K]	
	5	NoImageArea	
	6	ChargerCurrent	Adjusts the charge corona unit current. [400 ~ 800 / 500 / 1 μA/step]
100*	Mag._Adjust		
	1	MainDirection	Adjusts the magnification in the main scan direction. [-12.8 ~ 12.7 / 0.0 / 0.1%/step]
101*	Mag._Adjust		
	1	SubDirection	Adjusts the magnification in the sub scan direction. [-12.8 ~ 12.7 / 0.2 / 0.1%/step]
201*	DevelopBiasAdj		
	1	[M]	Adjusts the development bias. [0 ~ 500 / 220 / 1 Volt/step] Only effective is SP3-003 (Lub_Interval) is set to 0.
	2	[C]	
	3	[Y]	
	4	[K]	
208	Forced_Toner		
	1	[K]	Forces toner to be supplied to the development unit. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step]
	2	[C]	
	3	[M]	
	4	[Y]	
	5	AllColor	
301	TransBeltBias		
	1	1C/1st/1	Adjusts the transfer belt current. [3.0 ~ 14.0 / 8.0 / 0.1 μA/step] <i>The front side image of 1-color duplex printing</i>
	2	1C/2nd/2	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 8.0 / 0.1 μA/step] <i>The rear side image of 1-color duplex printing</i>
	3	2C/--/1	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 13.0 / 0.1 μA/step] <i>The first color toner image of 2-color printing</i>
	4	3C/--/1	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 13.0 / 0.1 μA/step] <i>The first color toner image of 3-color printing</i>
	5	4C/--/1	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 7.5 / 0.1 μA/step] <i>The first color toner image of 4-color printing</i>
	6	2C/--/2	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 13.0 / 0.1 μA/step] <i>The second color toner image of 2-color printing</i>
	7	3C/--/2	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 13.0 / 0.1 μA/step] <i>The second color toner image of 3-color printing</i>

2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
301	8	4C/--/2	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 13.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>The second color toner image of 4-color printing</i>
	9	3C/--/3	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 13.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>The third color toner image of 3-color printing</i>
	10	4C/--/3	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 13.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>The third color toner image of 4-color printing</i>
	11	4C/--/4	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 13.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>The fourth color toner image of 4-color printing</i>
	12	--/--/1	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 7.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>After the first color toner image</i>
	13	--/--/2	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 7.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>After the second color toner image</i>
	14	--/--/3	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 7.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>After the third color toner image</i>
	15	--/--/last	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 7.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>After the final color toner image</i>
	16	DevStart	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 7.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>Development start</i>
	17	DevEnd	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 7.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>Development end</i>
	18	1C/1st/--	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 7.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>Waiting for thick paper or OHP before creating the front side image for 1-color printing</i>
	19	1C/2nd/--	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 7.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>Waiting for thick paper or OHP before creating the rear side image for 1-color duplex printing</i>
	20	2C/--/--	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 7.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>Waiting for thick paper or OHP before creating an image for 2-color printing</i>
	21	3C/--/--	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 7.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>Waiting for thick paper or OHP before creating an image for 3-color printing</i>
	22	4C/--/--	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 7.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>Waiting for the thick paper or OHP before creating an image for 4-color printing</i>
	23	PowerOnRecovery	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 7.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] <i>Machine start and jam recovery</i>
303*	TransBeltEnv		
	1	1	Adjusts the environmental threshold for the transfer belt. [0 ~ 100.0 / 3.5 / 0.1 g/m ³ /step] DFU
	2	2	[0 ~ 100.0 / 19.0 / 0.1 g/m ³ /step] DFU
305*	TransBeltStart		
	1	BiasOnOff	Sets the bias for the image transfer start to on or off. [0 ~ 1 / 1 / 1/step] DFU <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0: Bias off 1: Bias on

2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
306	TransBeltFirst		
	1	1C	This value is added to the transfer current for the first page to improve insufficient transfer of solid images. [3.0 ~ 14.0 / 9.0 / 0.1 $\mu\text{A}/\text{step}$]
	2	2C-4C	[3.0 ~ 14.0 / 13.0 / 0.1 $\mu\text{A}/\text{step}$]
⇒ 310*	PaperTrans_LL1 (Paper Transfer LL1) The display indicates: Paper Weight/Side 1 or 2/Paper Width (mm)		
	1	Nrml/1st/-297	Sets the paper transfer current when absolute humidity AH (g/m^3) is in the following range: 0 < AH ≤ 3.5 (this is the 'LL1' humidity range) Adjust only if there are problems with insufficient transfer in the image area of the copy for a particular paper type or mode, or in response to field problems as directed by technical support staff. [0 ~ 70.0 / 25.0 / 0.2 $\mu\text{A}/\text{step}$]
	2	Nrml/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 25.0 / 0.2 $\mu\text{A}/\text{step}$]
	3	Nrml/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 25.0 / 0.2 $\mu\text{A}/\text{step}$]
	4	Nrml/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 25.0 / 0.2 $\mu\text{A}/\text{step}$]
	5	Nrml/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 25.0 / 0.2 $\mu\text{A}/\text{step}$]
	6	Mid/1st/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 26.0 / 0.2 $\mu\text{A}/\text{step}$]
	7	Mid/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 26.0 / 0.2 $\mu\text{A}/\text{step}$]
	8	Mid/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 26.0 / 0.2 $\mu\text{A}/\text{step}$]
	9	Mid/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 26.0 / 0.2 $\mu\text{A}/\text{step}$]
	10	Mid/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 26.0 / 0.2 $\mu\text{A}/\text{step}$]
	11	Thk/1st/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 / 0.2 $\mu\text{A}/\text{step}$]
	12	Thk/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 / 0.2 $\mu\text{A}/\text{step}$]
	13	Thk/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 16.0 / 0.2 $\mu\text{A}/\text{step}$]
	14	Thk/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 18.0 / 0.2 $\mu\text{A}/\text{step}$]
	15	Thk/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 20.0 / 0.2 $\mu\text{A}/\text{step}$]
	16	Nrml/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 $\mu\text{A}/\text{step}$]
	17	Nrml/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 $\mu\text{A}/\text{step}$]
	18	Nrml/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 $\mu\text{A}/\text{step}$]
	19	Nrml/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 $\mu\text{A}/\text{step}$]
	20	Nrml/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 $\mu\text{A}/\text{step}$]
	21	Mid/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 $\mu\text{A}/\text{step}$]
	22	Mid/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 $\mu\text{A}/\text{step}$]

⇒	2		Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
	310			
		23	Mid/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		24	Mid/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		25	Mid/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		26	Thk/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 12.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		27	Thk/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 16.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		28	Thk/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 20.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		29	Thk/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 24.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		30	Thk/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		31	OHP/297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 16.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		32	OHP/210	[0 ~ 70.0 / 20.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
⇒	311*	PaperTrans_LL2 (Paper Transfer LL2) The display indicates: Paper Weight/Side 1 or 2/Paper Width (mm)		
		1	Nrml/1st/-297	Sets the paper transfer current when absolute humidity AH (g/m^3) is in the following range: 3.5 < AH \leq 8.0 (this is the 'LL2' humidity range) See SP2-310 for comments. [0 ~ 70.0 / 27.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		2	Nrml/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		3	Nrml/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		4	Nrml/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		5	Nrml/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 27.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		6	Mid/1st/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		7	Mid/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		8	Mid/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		9	Mid/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		10	Mid/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		11	Thk/1st/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		12	Thk/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		13	Thk/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		14	Thk/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 16.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		15	Thk/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 17.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		16	Nrml/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		17	Nrml/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		18	Nrml/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		19	Nrml/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		20	Nrml/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		21	Mid/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		22	Mid/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		23	Mid/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		24	Mid/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		25	Mid/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
		26	Thk/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 13.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]

2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
⇒ 311*	27	Thk/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 16.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	28	Thk/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 19.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	29	Thk/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 23.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	30	Thk/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	31	OHP/297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 17.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	32	OHP/210	[0 ~ 70.0 / 21.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
⇒ 312*	PaperTrans_NN1 (Paper Transfer NN1) The display indicates: Paper Weight/Side 1 or 2/Paper Width (mm)		
	1	Nrml/1st/-297	Sets the paper transfer current when absolute humidity AH (g/m^3) is in the following range: 80 < AH \leq 14 (this is the 'NN1' humidity range) See SP2-310 for comments. [0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	2	Nrml/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	3	Nrml/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 32.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	4	Nrml/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	5	Nrml/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	6	Mid/1st/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	7	Mid/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	8	Mid/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 33.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	9	Mid/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 32.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	10	Mid/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	11	Thk/1st/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	12	Thk/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	13	Thk/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	14	Thk/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	15	Thk/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	16	Nrml/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 27.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	17	Nrml/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	18	Nrml/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	19	Nrml/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	20	Nrml/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	21	Mid/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	22	Mid/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	23	Mid/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	24	Mid/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	25	Mid/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	26	Thk/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	27	Thk/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 16.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	28	Thk/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 17.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	29	Thk/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 23.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	30	Thk/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	31	OHP/297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 17.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]
	32	OHP/210	[0 ~ 70.0 / 21.0 / 0.2 μ A/step]

2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
⇒	313*	PaperTrans_NN2 (Paper Transfer NN2) The display indicates: Paper Weight/Side 1 or 2/Paper Width (mm)
	1	Nrml/1st/-297 Sets the paper transfer current when absolute humidity AH (g/m ³) is in the following range: 14 < AH ≤ 19 (this is the 'NN2' humidity range) See SP2-310 for comments. [0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	2	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	3	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	4	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	5	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	6	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	7	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	8	[0 ~ 70.0 / 32.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	9	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	10	[0 ~ 70.0 / 39.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	11	[0 ~ 70.0 / 16.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	12	[0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	13	[0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	14	[0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	15	[0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	16	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	17	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	18	[0 ~ 70.0 / 33.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	19	[0 ~ 70.0 / 32.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	20	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	21	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	22	[0 ~ 70.0 / 32.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	23	[0 ~ 70.0 / 34.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	24	[0 ~ 70.0 / 33.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	25	[0 ~ 70.0 / 32.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	26	[0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	27	[0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	28	[0 ~ 70.0 / 17.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	29	[0 ~ 70.0 / 23.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	30	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	31	[0 ~ 70.0 / 18.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	32	[0 ~ 70.0 / 22.0 / 0.2 μA/step]



2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
314*	PaperTrans_HH (Paper Transfer HH). The display indicates: Paper Weight/Side 1 or 2/Paper Width (mm)	
	1	Nrml/1st/-297 Sets the paper transfer current when absolute humidity AH (g/m ³) is in the following range: 19 < AH (this is the 'HH' humidity range) See SP2-310 for comments. [0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	2	Nrml/1st/257-296 [0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	3	Nrml/1st/210-256 [0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	4	Nrml/1st/129-209 [0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	5	Nrml/1st/-128 [0 ~ 70.0 / 26.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	6	Mid/1st/-297 [0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	7	Mid/1st/257-296 [0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	8	Mid/1st/210-256 [0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	9	Mid/1st/129-209 [0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	10	Mid/1st/-128 [0 ~ 70.0 / 27.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	11	Thk/1st/-297 [0 ~ 70.0 / 16.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	12	Thk/1st/257-296 [0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	13	Thk/1st/210-256 [0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	14	Thk/1st/129-209 [0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	15	Thk/1st/-128 [0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	16	Nrml/2nd/-297 [0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	17	Nrml/2nd/257-296 [0 ~ 70.0 / 33.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	18	Nrml/2nd/210-256 [0 ~ 70.0 / 36.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	19	Nrml/2nd/129-209 [0 ~ 70.0 / 34.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	20	Nrml/2nd/-128 [0 ~ 70.0 / 32.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	21	Mid/2nd/-297 [0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	22	Mid/2nd/257-296 [0 ~ 70.0 / 34.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	23	Mid/2nd/210-256 [0 ~ 70.0 / 37.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	24	Mid/2nd/129-209 [0 ~ 70.0 / 35.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	25	Mid/2nd/-128 [0 ~ 70.0 / 33.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	26	Thk/2nd/-297 [0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	27	Thk/2nd/257-296 [0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	28	Thk/2nd/210-256 [0 ~ 70.0 / 16.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	29	Thk/2nd/129-209 [0 ~ 70.0 / 22.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	30	Thk/2nd/-128 [0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	31	OHP/297 [0 ~ 70.0 / 18.0 / 0.2 μA/step]
	32	OHP/210 [0 ~ 70.0 / 22.0 / 0.2 μA/step]

2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
320*	PaperTrans_Col (Paper Transfer Correction) The display indicates: Paper Type/Side 1 or 2/Printing mode	
	1	Nrml/1st/1C Corrects the electric current for paper transfer. DFU [0 ~ 100 / 45 / 1%/step]
	2	Nrml/1st/2C [0 ~ 100 / 90 / 1%/step]
	3	Nrml/1st/3C [0 ~ 100 / 100 / 1%/step]
	4	Nrml/2nd/1C [0 ~ 100 / 45 / 1%/step]
	5	Nrml/2nd/2C [0 ~ 100 / 90 / 1%/step]
	6	Nrml/2nd/3C [0 ~ 100 / 100 / 1%/step]
	7	Thick/1st/1C [0 ~ 100 / 45 / 1%/step]
	8	Thick/1st/2C [0 ~ 100 / 90 / 1%/step]
	9	Thick/1st/3C [0 ~ 100 / 100 / 1%/step]
	10	Thick/2nd/1C [0 ~ 100 / 45 / 1%/step]
	11	Thick/2nd/2C [0 ~ 100 / 90 / 1%/step]
	12	Thick/2nd/3C [0 ~ 100 / 100 / 1%/step]
	13	OHP/1C [0 ~ 100 / 60 / 1%/step]
	14	OHP/2C [0 ~ 100 / 90 / 1%/step]
	15	OHP/3C [0 ~ 100 / 100 / 1%/step]
400*	ClnBiasLL1	
	1	1C Adjusts the transfer belt cleaning bias voltage when absolute humidity AH (g/m ³) is in the following range: 0 < AH ≤ 3.5 (this is the 'LL1' humidity range) DFU [0 ~ 2000 / 1200 / 10 Volt/step]
	2	2C-4C [0 ~ 2000 / 1200 / 10 Volt/step]
	3	HalfSpeed/1C [0 ~ 2000 / 1200 / 10 Volt/step]
	4	HalfSpeed/2C-4C [0 ~ 2000 / 1200 / 10 Volt/step]
	5	Ppattern [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	6	NoImageArea [0 ~ 2000 / 1400 / 10 Volt/step]
	7	JamRecovery [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
401*	ClnBiasLL2	
	1	1C Adjusts the transfer belt cleaning bias voltage when absolute humidity AH (g/m ³) is in the following range: 3.5 < AH ≤ 8.0 (this is the 'LL2' humidity range) DFU [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	2	2C-4C [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	3	HalfSpeed/1C [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	4	HalfSpeed/2C-4C [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	5	Ppattern [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	6	NoImageArea [0 ~ 2000 / 1400 / 10 Volt/step]
	7	JamRecovery [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]



2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
402*	ClnBiasNN1	
	1	1C Adjusts the transfer belt cleaning bias voltage when absolute humidity AH (g/m ³) is in the following range: 8.0 < AH ≤ 14 (this is the 'NN1' humidity range) DFU [0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	2	2C-4C [0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	3	HalfSpeed/1C [0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	4	HalfSpeed/2C-4C [0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	5	Ppattern [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	6	NoImageArea [0 ~ 2000 / 1400 / 10 Volt/step]
	7	JamRecovery [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
403*	ClnBiasNN2	
	1	1C Adjusts the transfer belt cleaning bias voltage when absolute humidity AH (g/m ³) is in the following range: 14 < AH ≤ 19 (this is the 'NN2' humidity range) DFU [0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	2	2C-4C [0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	3	HalfSpeed/1C [0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	4	HalfSpeed/2C-4C [0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	5	Ppattern [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	6	NoImageArea [0 ~ 2000 / 1400 / 10 Volt/step]
	7	JamRecovery [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
404*	ClnBiasHH	
	1	1C Adjusts the transfer belt cleaning bias voltage when absolute humidity AH (g/m ³) is in the following range: 19 < AH (this is the 'HH' humidity range) DFU [0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	2	2C-4C [0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	3	HalfSpeed/1C [0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	4	HalfSpeed/2C-4C [0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	5	Ppattern [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	6	NoImageArea [0 ~ 2000 / 1400 / 10 Volt/step]
	7	JamRecovery [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
500*	FusingBias (Discharge pin)	
	1	Nrml/1C/1st Adjusts the discharge pin voltage (paper separation) and fusing bias voltage. DFU [4000 ~ 1000 / 3000 / 100 Volt/step] • Same bias voltage is applied to the fusing unit and the discharge pin.
	2	Nrml/1C/2nd [4000 ~ 1000 / 3000 / 100 Volt/step]
	3	Nrml/FC/1st [4000 ~ 1000 / 2500 / 100 Volt/step]
	4	Nrml/FC/2nd [4000 ~ 1000 / 2500 / 100 Volt/step]
	5	Thk/1C/1st [4000 ~ 1000 / 3000 / 100 Volt/step]
	6	Thk/1C/2nd [4000 ~ 1000 / 3000 / 100 Volt/step]
	7	Thk/FC/1st [4000 ~ 1000 / 2500 / 100 Volt/step]
	8	Thk/FC/2nd [4000 ~ 1000 / 2500 / 100 Volt/step]

2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
510*	Fu_Bias_SW		
	1	Fu_Bias_SW	Switches the fusing and discharge pin bias control on or off. [0 ~ 1 / 1 / 1/step] DFU <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0: Control off 1: Control on
801*	ChrgClnIntval		
	1	ChrgClnIntval	Sets the charge corona unit cleaning interval. [0 ~ 5000 / 600 / 100 counts/step] Refer to section 6 for details.
	2	ChrgClnIntval - 2	Sets the charge corona unit cleaning interval. The charge corona cleaning is carried out after 600 (SP2-801-1) development counts, at job end or after 700 (=the sum of the settings in SP2-801-1 and -2) development counts (stops in the middle of the job) [0 ~ 5000 / 100 / 100 counts/step]
802	ChargerCln		
	1	Charger Cln	Executes a forced charge corona unit cleaning. Set to 1 to start cleaning. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step]
901*	EnvControl		
	1	EnvControl	Switches environment control on or off. [0 ~ 1 / 1 / 1/step] DFU <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0: Control off (The paper transfer and cleaning bias environments are set to NN1. The image transfer bias environment is set to MM.) 1: Control on
903	PaperTrans_Low		
	1	LL1/Nrml	Adjusts the paper transfer current applied when the machine is at low temperature. [0.0 ~ 70.0 / 1.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] The specified value is subtracted from the value specified by SP2-310 (PaperTrans_LL1) under the following conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The machine is in the LL1 environment. 400 images or less are created after the machine starts
904	1CBiasAdj		
	1	[M]	Adjusts the development bias applied during the mono-color mode. DFU [0 ~ 100 / 50 / 1 V/step]
	2	[C]	[0 ~ 100 / 0 / 1 V/step]
	3	[Y]	[0 ~ 100 / 0 / 1 V/step]
	4	[K]	[0 ~ 100 / 0 / 1 V/step]

2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
⇒ 905	Paper Transfer Roller Type	
	1	Old/New Transfer Roller Type This SP has add with firmware version V2.18 (1st release) due to the shape modification to the paper transfer roller to increase transferability. When updating from V2.18 to V2.19 or later, please check SP2-310-001 thru SP2-314-032 (paper transfer currents) and SP2-903-01 (paper transfer Adjustment) as the defaults for these values have been changed. 0: New paper transfer roller type (Drum Type) 1: Old paper transfer roller type (straight type)
⇒ 912	Temp_HumDisp	
	1	Temp Displays the temperature measured by the temperature sensor inside the machine. [-127 ~ 127 / 0 / 1°C/step]
	2	Humidity_1 Displays the humidity measured by the humidity sensor inside the machine. [0 ~ 255 / 0 / 1%/step]
	3	Humidity_2 Displays the absolute humidity calculated from the temperature/humidity sensor readings. [0 ~ 65535 / 0 / 0.1 g/m ³ /step]
	4	EnvLevel Displays the current humidity level calculated from the absolute humidity. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • LL1: 0 < AH ≤ 3.5 • LL2: 3.5 < AH ≤ 8.0 • NN1: 8.0 < AH ≤ 14 • NN2: 14 < AH ≤ 19 • HH: 19 < AH * AH = absolute humidity
917	Test Pattern	
	1	Test Pattern Allows you to print out the test pattern. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1: Print out the test patterns listed in SP5-955 (Test Pattern – Pattern). To print the selected chart, change the setting from 0 to 1, then print out the demo sheet (user tool) or send a print job from a PC.
930*	TrimAdjust	
	1	Front Adjusts the white margin on printouts. [0 ~ 65535 / 0 / 1/step]
	2	Back [0 ~ 65535 / 0 / 1/step]
	3	Lead [0 ~ 65535 / 20 / 1/step]
	4	Trail [0 ~ 65535 / 20 / /step]

⇒	2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
	939	OPC_Lub_Int	
	1	OPC_Lub_Int	Executes/does not execute OPC lubrication by interrupting the job. DFU [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Off • 1: On <i>SP2-942-1 (OPC_Lub_Intrl) specifies the lubrication interval.</i>
	940	OPC_Lub_Mode	
	1	OPC_Lub_Mode	Executes a forced OPC lubrication to reduce the friction on the OPC belt. DFU [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The OPC belt and the lubricant brush operate for 2 minutes.
	941	OPC_Lub_Time	
	1	job end	Determines how long the OPC belt is lubricated for after the end of every job. [0 ~ 30 / 20 / 1 s/step]
	2	OPC_Lub_Int	Determines how long the OPC belt is lubricated at the forced lubrication [0 ~ 60 / 10 / 1 s/step]
	942	OPC_Lub_Intrl	
	1	OPC_Lub_Intrl	[10 ~ 200 / 50 / 10/step] DFU <i>When SP2-939 (OPC_Lub_Int) is set to on, the machine lubricates the OPC belt and image transfer belt at the interval (number of prints) set with this SP. Incoming print jobs do not interrupt the lubrication.</i>
	943	Discharge Tsld (Discharge Threshold)	
	1	Discharge Tsld	Adjusts the threshold of discharge. DFU [9.0 ~ 22.0 / 15.0 / 1.0 g/m ³ /step]



2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
944	OPCLub:Lrg Area	
	1	Int Enables/disables OPC lubrication after a certain amount of images are printed. The lubrication timing depends on SP2-944-2 to -5. When high coverage images are continuously printed, cleaning of the OPC may not be enough. To correct this, OPC lubrication is carried out during printing (lubrication time: around 34 seconds). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On • Off When "on" is set, OPC lubrication is executed under either of the following conditions: Condition 1. The number of printouts since the previous lubrication reaches the value in SP2-944-4; and the average pixel coverage of those printouts exceeds the value in SP2-944-2. Conditions 2. The number of printouts since the previous lubrication reaches the value in SP2-944-5; and the average pixel coverage of those printouts exceeds the value in SP2-944-3.
	2	ImgAreaValue1 Adjusts the average pixel. [50 ~ 800 / 500 / 10 /step]
	3	ImgAreaValue2 [50 ~ 800 / 350 / 10 /step]
	4	Sheets1 [10 ~ 80 / 30 / 1 /step]
	5	Sheets2 [10 ~ 80 / 60 / 1 /step]
950	S_Reg._Adj.	
	1	M(2:P1b) Colour registration adjustment: adjusts the start timing of imaging for each color. DFU [-3 ~ 3 / -1 / 2 line/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2 lines = 0.047566 ms (about 85 μm) • +: Delays the start timing. • -: Advances the start timing. • The start timing is adjusted only in plain paper mode, and when one of the following conditions is satisfied: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Between the two images on the transfer belt (when two images are developed on the OPC at the same time (● 6.2)) 2) B4 SEF or larger (multi-print job)
	2	C(2:P1b) [-3 ~ 3 / 0 / 2 line/step]
	3	Y(2:P1b) [-3 ~ 3 / 0 / 2 line/step]



2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
950	4	K(2:P1b)	[−3 ~ 3 / 0 / 2 line/step]
	5	M(1:P1b)	[−3 ~ 3 / −1 / 2 line/step]
	6	C(1:P1b)	[−3 ~ 3 / 0 / 2 line/step]
	7	Y(1:P1b)	[−3 ~ 3 / 0 / 2 line/step]
	8	K(1:P1b)	[−3 ~ 3 / 0 / 2 line/step]
	9	M(P1a)	For use in Japan only. [−3 ~ 3 / 0 / 2 line/step]
	10	C(P1a)	
	11	Y(P1a)	
	12	K(P1a)	
960 *	Tray_Heater		
	1	Tray_Heater	Optional tray heaters installed or not [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] 0: No, 1: Yes
970	OilClearMode		
	1	Mode	Enables/disables the settings of SP2–970–2 through 4. [0 ~ 1 / 1 / 1 /step] <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0: Does not clear• 1: Clears Oil on duplex copies gets on the transfer belt, and this can cause uneven image density. To remove this oil, printing stops, the PCU turns, and the cleaning unit removes the oil.
	2	Print_Int	Enables/disables interruption of the oil removal process. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1 /step] <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0: Users cannot interrupt• 1: Users can interrupt If interruption is enabled, the user does not need to wait until the oil removal process ends, but the output image may be poor.
	3	Repetition_Num	Specifies how many times the oil removal process is repeated. [1 ~ 20 / 5 / 1 /step] The more times the oil removal is repeated, the better the output images are; but the longer it takes
	4	Dup_Sheets	Specifies how often the oil removal process is done. The unit is the number of duplex prints. The counter counts down once every narrow (A4 SEF or less) duplex sheet, and counts back up 1 for every other type of sheet. [1 ~ 50 / 10 / 1 /step]

SP3-XXX: (Process)

3	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
001	ProcessCtrl		
	1	ProcessCtrl	Does a forced process control, and displays the result as one of the following codes. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Normal termination • 103: Error (ID sensor inactive → Defective ID sensor, Defective circuit, Defective BCU board) • 104: Error (ID sensor unable to receive light → Defective OPC belt, Dirty OPC belt, Defective ID sensor, Defective circuit, Defective BCU board) • 105: Error (ID sensor unable to receive reflection from OPC → Same as "104") • 254: Execution impossible (Executed while not in the ready status) • 255: Execution aborted (due to an SC or a cover opened)
003*	Lub_Interval		
	1	Lub_Interval	Sets the process control interval. [0 ~ 1000 / 200 / 10 sheet/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Disables automatic process control
004*	EnvChange		
	1	Temp	Sets the temperature/humidity change that triggers process control (process control is done if temperature or humidity has changed by this amount since the previous process control). [0 ~ 255 / 15 / 1°C/step]
	2	Humidity	[0 ~ 65535 / 15.0 / 1.0 g/m ³ /step]
005*	ProconPreRound		
	1	ProconPreRound	PCU and development unit idling is done before process control. This value determines the amount of idling rotation. [1 ~ 5 / 1 / 1 turn/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1 turn: A3 length
006*	DensityAdjust		
	1	M/A AdjustLevel	Select the toner density compensation level for process control. [0 ~ 3 / 0 / 1/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: None • 1: Weak • 2: Medium • 3: Strong <i>The higher the value, the darker the prints will be.</i>
	2	Vh_ AdjustLevel	

3	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
910*	DoctorIntval	
	1	print(FC) Sets the doctor roller reverse rotation interval. [0 ~ 50 / 50 / 1 sheet/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The value indicates how many sheets are output before the doctor roller is reversed. (Sheet counts are converted into equivalent A4-LEF sheet counts.) • Reversing the roller removes toner blockages. • The sheet count is reset after reverse rotation. • Decrease the value when vertical white lines appear on prints.
	2	print(MC) [0 ~ 65535 / 50 / 1 sheet/step]
	3	job end [0 ~ 65535 / 20 / 1 sheet/step]
920*	Lub._CL_Time	
	1	Lub._CL_Time Sets the OPC belt lubrication period. DFU [0 ~ 100 / 100 / 10%/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When 100 is specified, the OPC belt cleaning clutch is always on whenever the OPC is turning, so the OPC gets lubricated. When 50 is specified, the clutch is only on half the time that the motor is on.
940	JobEnd_Int	
	1	JobEnd_Int The OPC belt is lubricated after the end of every job. This SP determines whether the lubrication is interrupted when a job arrives at the printer. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Interrupted • 1: Not interrupted
941	OPC_Ide_PwrOn	
	1	Idling_Time The image transfer belt tends to curl after a long period without rotation. To correct this, image transfer belt idling is done if the fusing temperature is not high enough to print <u>just after the main switch is turned on</u> . This SP determines how long the idling rotation is done. [3 ~ 5 / 3 / 1 minute/step]
	2	PrintingReady Select when the machine can accept a print job after the idling starts. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Immediately • 1: After idling has been done for 1 minute • 2: After idling finishes. [0 ~ 2 / 0 / 1/step]

3	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
942	OPC_Ide_E_Svr		
	1	Idling_Time	<p>The image transfer belt has curl tendency after long period without rotation.</p> <p>The image transfer belt tends to curl after a long period without rotation.</p> <p>To correct this, image transfer belt idling is done if the fusing temperature is not high enough to print <u>when returning from energy saver mode</u>.</p> <p>This SP determines how long the idling rotation is done. [3 ~ 5 / 3 / 1 minute/step]</p>
	2	PrintingReady	<p>Select when the machine can accept a print job after the idling starts.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Immediately • 1: After idling has been done for 1 minute • 2: After idling finishes. <p>[0 ~ 2 / 0 / 1/step]</p>
970	ImgAreaRate		
	1	M	<p>Specifies the minimum image area (expressed as a percentage of an A4 page) required to maintain optimum development unit condition (☛ Toner Revitalization: SP3-971 [AutoTnrConsume]).</p> <p>[0 ~ 10.0 / 2.0 / 0.1 %/step]</p> <p><i>After 20 sheets over a number of small jobs (or after 50 sheets in one job), if the developed area is less than the value of this SP mode, toner is transferred to the image transfer belt and cleaned off. This is performed during the doctor roller reverse rotation.</i></p>
	2	C	[0.0 ~ 10.0 / 2.0 / 0.1 %/step]
	3	Y	[0.0 ~ 10.0 / 2.0 / 0.1 %/step]
971	AutoTnrConsume		
	1	AutoTnrConsume	<p>Enables/disables the toner revitalization.</p> <p>[0 or 2 / 2 / 1 /step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Disables • 2: Enables <p><i>Continuous printing with a relatively low coverage ratio (CMYK less than 5% each) tends to reduce the charge potential of the toner, because the toner remains in the hopper for a long time. This can lead to spots on the copy. Toner revitalization removes this defective toner periodically.</i></p>
980	EmptyRev(Bk)		
	1	EmptyRev(Bk)	<p>Activates/deactivates 1-color idling after paper transfer.</p> <p>[0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Deactivates • 1: Activates <p><i>Set this to 1 if the user complains about diagonal lines in solid areas of prints that only use one toner color (M, C, or Y). It is especially noticeable in black areas.</i></p>

SP5-XXX: (Mode)

5	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
009*	Language		
	1		<p>Selects the language for the operation panel. After changing the setting, turn the main switch off and on for initialization. [2 ~ 16 / 2 / 1 /step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2: <i>British</i> • 3: <i>American</i> • 4: <i>French</i> • 5: <i>German</i> • 6: <i>Italian</i> • 7: <i>Spanish</i> • 8: <i>Dutch</i> • 9: <i>Norwegian</i> • 10: <i>Danish</i> • 11: <i>Swedish</i> • 12: <i>Polish</i> • 13: <i>Portuguese</i> • 14: <i>Hungarian</i> • 15: <i>Czech</i> • 16: <i>Finnish</i>
024	mm/inch Display		
	1	mm/inch Display	<p>Changes the unit on the display. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: <i>mm</i> • 1: <i>inch</i>
045*	Counter Method		
	1	Counter Method	<p>Switches the counter display. The setting can only be changed once. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: <i>Developments</i> • 1: <i>Prints</i>
046*	RomUpdateDisp		
	1	ROM Update	<p>Enables or disables the ROM Update utility. When enabled, this utility will be displayed in the user program mode. [0 ~ 1 / 1 / 1/step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: <i>Enabled</i> • 1: <i>Disabled</i>
101*	Energy Saver		
	3	Level 1	<p>Sets the energy saver timers. [0 ~ 60 / 0 / 10 s/step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>To enable Energy Saver, use the user program mode. When Energy Saver Level 1 is enabled, the value is initialized to 30 seconds.</i> • 0: <i>Energy saver level 1 is disabled</i>
	4	Level 2	<p>[0 ~ 3600 / 1800 / 60 s/step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>To enable Energy Saver, use the user program mode. When Energy Saver Level 2 is enabled, the value is initialized to 1,800 seconds.</i> • 0: <i>Energy saver level 2 is disabled</i>

5	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
104*	Double Count		
	1	Double Count	The counters count double for A3/11" x 17". [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0: Normal count 1: Double count
305*	ES Level 2 set		
	1	ES Level 2 set	Activates energy saver level 2. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0: Enables 1: Disables
401*	ULimitAutoSet		
	44	ULimitAutoSet	Activates the auto user code registration function (prints are counted and logged for each user code and the counts can be viewed with SmartNetMonitor). [0 ~ 1 / 1 / 1/step]0: Inactivated <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1: Activated
801	Memory Clear		
	1	All	Clears the settings from the NVRAM and initializes the settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enter key: Clears Escape key: Does not clear
	2	ENG_All	Clears the engine settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enter key: Clears Escape key: Does not clear
	3	SCS (System Control Service)	Clears the system settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enter key: Clears Escape key: Does not clear
	4	IMH (Image Memory Handler)	Clears IMH data. DFU <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enter key: Clears Escape key: Does not clear
	5	MCS (Memory Control Service)	Clears MCS data. DFU <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enter key: Clears Escape key: Does not clear MCS is for network settings.
	8	PRT	Clears the user tool settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enter key: Clears Escape key: Does not clear
	11	NCS	Clears the network settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enter key: Clears Escape key: Does not clear
803	InputCheck (See section 5.3.2.)		
804	OutputCheck (See section 5.3.3.)		
810	SC_Reset		
	1	SC_Reset	Resets a fusing-related SC. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] Resets a type A service call condition. NOTE: Turn the main switch off and on after using this SP.

5	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
811	MachineSerial		
	2	Display	Displays the machine serial number. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step]
812*	FAX TEL No.		
	2	FAX TEL No.	Sets the fax or telephone number for a service representative by using the enter key and the down arrow key. [0 ~ 0 / 0 / 0/step] • <i>Both numbers and alphabetic characters can be input.</i>
813*	HV_SC_Sens		
	1	HV_SC_Sens	Activates/deactivates detection of SC conditions for the high voltage power supplies. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] • <i>0: Activated</i> • <i>1: Deactivated</i> • <i>The following SCs are affected: SC300, 301, 302, 350, 351, 400, 410, 411, 412, 413, 420, 421, 430</i>
814*	Jam_OFF/ON		
	1	Jam_OFF/ON	Activates/deactivates jam detection. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] • <i>0: Jam sensor activated</i> • <i>1: Jam sensor deactivated</i>
816*	RMS Setting		
	1	RMS Setting	Enables/disables the RMS function. DFU [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] • <i>0: Disable</i> • <i>1: Enable</i>
828	Network		
	66	HD job Clear	Clears/prints the jobs spooled on the HDD (before the main power was turned off) after initialization. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] • <i>0: Clears</i> • <i>1: Prints</i>
	67	JobSpool(LPR)	Spools/does not spool jobs. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] • <i>0: Does not spool</i> • <i>1: Spools</i>
	68	JopSpool(IPP)	Spools/does not spool jobs. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] • <i>0: Does not spool</i> • <i>1: Spools</i>
832	HDD Init		
	1	HDD Init.	Initializes the hard disk. [0 ~ 0 / 0 / 0/step] <i>Use this SP mode only for hard disk error recovery.</i>

5	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
833*	JobLog ON/OFF	
	7	JobLog ON/OFF Saves the results of jobs in the job log. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1 /step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If this mode is enabled, the result data is written on the HDD. If no HDD is installed, this feature is disabled even if this SP is set to "enabled". • 0: Disabled • 1: Enabled
839	IEEE 1394	
	4	Device Name Displays the host name.
	7	Cycle Master Activates/deactivates the cycle master function. [0 ~ 1 / 1 / 1 /step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Deactivates • 1: Activates
	8	BCR mode Specifies the setting of the broadcast channel register (BCR). [0 ~ 3 / 3 / 1 /step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Does not operate until IRM writes data • 1: Wait awhile; copies the BCR of IRM if IRM does not write data • 2: (Reserved) • 3: Always validates the BCR
	9	IRM 1394a Check Executes/does not execute the 1394a check of IRM (1 bit). [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1 /step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Does not execute • 1: Executes
	10	Unique ID Shows/does not show node unique IDs. [0 ~ 1 / 1 / 1 /step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Does not show • 1: Shows
	11	Logout Specifies how the initiators are handled. [0 ~ 1 / 1 / 1 /step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Rejects the initiator if it tries to log in once again after having logged off • 1: Rejects the initiator if it tries to log on once again after having logged off; then forcefully makes the initiator log in
	12	Login Validates/invalidates exclusive logon processing. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1 /step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Invalidates exclusive logon processing • 1: Validates exclusive logon processing
	13	Login MAX Specifies the maximum number of initiators that are able to log on. [0 ~ 63 / 8 / 1 /step]
	IEEE 802.11b	
840	4	Current SSID Displays the current SSID.
	6	Channel Max Specifies the maximum number of channels. [0 ~ 14 / 0 / 1 /step]
	7	Channel Min Specifies the minimum number of channels. [0 ~ 14 / 0 / 1 /step]
	11	WEP key number Displays the WEP key number.



5	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
844	USB	
	1	TransferRate Specifies the transfer rate. • HS/FS Auto • FS Fixation
	2	Vendor ID Specifies the vendor ID. [0000 ~ FFFF / 05CA / 1 /step]
	3	Product ID Specifies the vendor ID. [0000 ~ FFFF / 0403 / 1 /step]
	4	DevReleaseNum (Device Release Number) Specifies the device release number. [0 ~ 9999 / 100 / 1 /step]
851	Bluetooth	
	1	Bluetooth Selects the Bluetooth mode. DFU • Public • Private
907	Plug/Play	
	1	Plug/Play Specifies the Plug and Play setting. [0 ~ 6 / 0 / 1 /step] • 0: Ricoh Asia & EU • 1: Ricoh US • 2: SAVIN • 3: GES • 4: NRG • 5: Infotec • 6: LANIER
930*	Meter_Charge	
	1	Meter_Charge Activates the meter charge function. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1 /step] • 0: Off • 1: On
931	PM_Display	
	1	Charger Specifies whether the PM warning for the charge corona unit is displayed when the replacement time arrives. • 1: Displayed • 0: Not displayed
	2	PCU Specifies whether the PM warning for the PCU is displayed when the replacement time arrives. • 1: Displayed • 0: Not displayed
	3	Bank_Feed Specifies whether the PM warning for the feed rollers in the optional paper feed unit is displayed when the replacement time arrives. • 1: Displayed • 0: Not displayed

5	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
955*	Test Pattern	
	1	Pattern Selects the test pattern. ⇒ Enable with SP2-917 (Test Pattern), then send a job from a PC or print an SMC list. [0 ~ 255 / 0 / 1 /step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Normal operation • 1: Vertical 1 dot & 1 line • 2: Horizontal 1 dot & 1 line • 3: Vertical 2 dots & 1 line • 4: Horizontal 2 dots & 1 line • 5: Grid – 1 dot & 1 line • 6: Grid – 1 dot & dual lines • 7: Independent dot pattern • 8: 2 independent dots pattern • 9: Black • 10: Belt pattern • 11: Trimmed area • 12: 2 dots & 1 trimmed area • 13: Slant grid • 14: 2 dots & a slant grid • 15: Horizontal (dots & a stitch pattern) • 16: Check Flag • 19: 4 independent dots • 20: Horizontal 1 dot & a line (LD 1/2 reversals) • 21: Grid – 1 dot & a line (LD 1/2 reversals) • 22: Grid – 1 dot & dual lines (LD 1/2 reversals) • 23: Independent 1 dot pattern (LD 1/2 reversals) • 24: 3 line gray scale • 25: Horizontal gray scale • 26: Vertical gray scale • 29: Horizontal gray scale extended • 30: Vertical gray scale extended • 31: Horizontal gray scale 600 dpi • 32: Vertical gray scale 600 dpi • 35: Horizontal gray scale with white spots • 36: Vertical gray scale with white spots • 38: Horizontal gray scale extended with white spots • 39: Vertical gray scale extended with white spots • 40: Horizontal gray scale 600 dpi with white spots • 41: Vertical gray scale 601 dpi with white spots • 43: White - for process evaluation • 50: Vertical stitch & dot pattern • 51: 2 beam density pattern • 52: Trimmed area & cross pattern • 53: Grid – 1 dot & 1 line (2) • 54: Grid – 1 dot & dual lines (2) • 55: Independent 2 dot pattern – 40 mm sub scan • 56: Independent 2 dot pattern – 102.5 mm sub scan • 57: Process control pattern Reset to 0 after finishing the tests.
	2	Density Adjusts the test pattern density [0 ~ 255 / 255 / 1 /step]

5	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
970	DebugSerial		
	1	DebugSerial	[0 ~ 0xff / 0x00 / 0 /step] DFU
990*	SP print mode		
	1	SP all print	Prints SP setting data. [0 ~ 255 / 0 / 0 /step] <ul style="list-style-type: none">• SP all print: All items printed out with SPs 5-990-2, -4, -6, and -7.• All: All SP mode settings• Non-Default: SP settings that have been changed from the defaults
	2	All	
	4	Loging	
	6	Non-Default	
	7	NIB Summry	
998	ColorAdjExe		
	1	ColorAdjExe	Executes charge corona wire cleaning and forced process control. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1 /step]

SP7-XXX: (Data Log)

7	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
003*	M/C Counter		
	1	P: Total	Displays the values of the color counters. [–3000 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1/step]
	7	P: B&W	[0 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1/step]
	8	P: Full Color	[0 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1/step]
	10	D: Color	[–3000 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1/step] <i>This SP mode is development counter for meter charge mode.</i>
	11	D: B&W	[–2000 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1/step] <i>This SP mode is development counter for meter charge mode.</i>
	20	P: Full color	[–1000 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1/step] <i>This SP mode is used for the Japanese market only.</i>
	21	P: B&W/Single	[–2000 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1/step] <i>This SP mode is used for the Japanese market only.</i>
	22	P: Single	[–2000 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1/step] <i>This SP mode is used for the Japanese market only.</i>
	23	P: B&W	[–2000 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1/step] <i>This SP mode is used for the Japanese market only.</i>
	25	P: Full Color	[–1000 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1/step] <i>This SP mode is used for the Japanese market only.</i>
	28	P: Color (except for B&W)	[–1000 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1/step] <i>This SP mode is print counters for meter charge mode. This SP mode is used in all markets.</i>
	29	P: B&W	[–2000 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1/step] <i>This SP mode is print counters for meter charge mode. This SP mode is used in all markets.</i>
	30	P: Color Total	[–1000 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1/step] <i>This SP mode is print counters for meter charge mode. This SP mode is used in all markets.</i>
007*	Other Counter		
	1	Duplex	Displays counter values. [0 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 0 sheet/step]
	2	A3/DLT/Over420	
	3	Staple	
101*	Size Counter		
	4	A3	Displays the counter values for each paper size. [0 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 0 sheet/step]
	5	A4	
	6	A5	
	13	B4	
	14	B5	
	32	11" x 17"	
	36	8 1/2" x 14"	
	38	8 1/2" x 11"	
	44	5 1/2" x 8 1/2"	
	128	Other	
106*	WasteTnrFull		
	1	OPC	Displays the waste toner bottle counter. [0 ~ 65535 / 0 / 1 /step]
	2	Belt	[0 ~ 65535 / 0 / 1 /step]

7	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
107*	OilCounter		
	1	EndCounter	Displays the oil supply unit counter. [0 ~ 65535 / 0 / 1 /step]
	2	NearEndCounter	
204*	Feed Counter		
	1	Tray1	Displays the number of sheets fed from each paper feed station. [0 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 0 sheet/step]
	2	Tray2	
	3	Tray3	
	5	By-pass	
	6	Duplex	
502*	Total Jam		
	1	Total Jam	Displays the total number of jams detected. [0 ~ 9999 / 0 / 0 /step]
504*	Jam Location		
	3	Tray1:NonFeed	Displays the number of jams according to the location. where they were detected. [0 ~ 9999 / 0 / 0 /step]
	4	Tray2:NonFeed	
	5	Tray3:NonFeed	
	6	Bypass:NonFeed	
	8	VerticalTrans1	
	9	VerticalTrans3	
	12	Regist.1	
	13	Regist.3	
	14	Fusing_Unit1	
	16	Exit1	
	17	Relay1	
	19	EntDuplex1	
	20	EntDuplex:Rev1	
	23	ExitDuplex1	
	40	Ent.Fin.	
	41	Exit_Fin.	
	42	Base_Fin.	
	52	Tray2: OFF	
	53	Tray3: OFF	
	58	VerticalTrans1	
	59	VerticalTrans2	
	60	VerticalTrans3	
	63	Regist.2	
	64	Regist.4	
	66	Exit2	
	67	Relay2	
	69	EntDuplex2	
	70	EntDuplex:Rev2	
	73	ExitDuplex2	
	100	Finisher entrance/Upper Mail box	
	101	Finisher Exit/Lower Mail box	
	102	Finisher Print removed	
	103	Finisher Base sensor	
	104	Finisher Staple Error	

7	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
504*	105	Finisher Tray Shift Error	Displays the number of jams according to the location. where they were detected. [0 ~ 9999 / 0 / 0 /step]
	106	Finisher Tray Lift Error	
	133	Finisher Exit: off	
506*	Jam Paper Size		Displays the number of jams according to paper size. [0 ~ 9999 / 0 / 1 /step]
	4	A3	
	5	A4	
	13	B4	
	14	B5	
	32	11" x 17"	
	36	8 1/2" x 14"	
	38	8 1/2" x 11"	
	44	5 1/2" x 8 1/2"	
	128	Other	
508*	Replace_Cnter		Displays how many times the parts/consumables have been replaced. [0 ~ 255 / 0 / 1 /step]
	1	PCU	
	2	Development: M	
	3	Development: C	
	4	Development: Y	
	5	Development: Bk	
	6	FusingUnit	
	7	Charger	
	8	Oil	
	9	WesteTnr: OPC	
	10	WesteTnr: Belt	
508*	11	Tonner: M	Displays how many times the parts/consumables have been replaced. [0 ~ 255 / 0 / 1 /step]
	12	Tonner: C	
	13	Tonner: Y	
	14	Tonner: Bk	
	15	Bank1_Feed	
	16	Bank2_Feed	
509*	Proc_Cont_Cnter		Displays the process control counter. [0 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1 /step]
	1	Proc_Cont_Cnter	
510*	Chgr_Cln_Cntr		Displays the charge corona unit cleaning counter. [0 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1 /step]
	1	Chgr_Cln_Cntr	

7	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
603*	Proc_ErrorLog	
	1 Log 1	Displays the process control error log. [0 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1 /step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 103: ID sensor unable to receive light Reasons: ID sensor failure or incorrect installation, BCU failure • 104: ID sensor unable to receive reflection Reasons: As for 103, plus: Uneven OPC belt surface, foreign material on OPC belt • 105: ID sensor unable to receive OPC reflection Reasons: As for 103, plus: Uneven OPC belt surface, foreign material on OPC belt • 110: ID sensor defective imaging – Cyan Reasons: Abnormal development bias, dirty bias terminal, development unit incorrectly installed, BCU failure • 111: ID sensor defective imaging – Magenta Reasons: As for 110 • 113: ID sensor defective imaging – Cyan Reasons: As for 110, plus: Laser writing failure, abnormal charge, loss of synchronization • 114: ID sensor defective imaging – Magenta Reasons: As for 110, plus: Laser writing failure, abnormal charge, loss of synchronization • 115: ID sensor defective imaging – Yellow Reasons: As for 110, plus: Laser writing failure, abnormal charge, loss of synchronization • 116: ID sensor defective imaging – Black Reasons: As for 110 • 118: Black not detected Reasons: As for 110 • 123: ID sensor defective imaging – Black Reasons: As for 110, plus: Laser writing failure, abnormal charge, loss of synchronization
	2 Log 2	
	3 Log 3	
803*	PM_Counter	
	1 PCU	Displays the number of sheets printed for each current unit. [0 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For clearing the counters, see SP7-804.
	2 Development: M	
	3 Development: C	
	4 Development: Y	
	5 Development: Bk	
	6 FusingUnit	
	7 Charger	
	8 Bank1_Feed	
	9 Bank2_Feed	
804	PM_Clear	
	6 FusingUnit	Clears the PM counters. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1 /step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For displaying the counter, see SP7-803.
	7 Charger	
	8 Bank1_Feed	
	9 Bank2_Feed	
	100 AllReset	

7	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
807	SC/Jam Clear		
	1	SC/Jam Clear	Clears the counters related to SC codes and paper jams. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 0 /step]
808	Counter Clear		
	1	Counter Clear	Clears all counters except for SP7-003 and -007. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 0 /step]
816	Tray Clear		
	1	Tray1	Clears the tray counters (SP7-204). [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 0 /step]
	2	Tray2	
	3	Tray3	
	5	BypassTray	
	6	Duplex	
819	OilCntRst		
	1	OilCntRst	Resets the oil counter values to "0." [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 0 /step] • 0: Does not clear • 1: Clears
825	Counter Reset		
	1	Counter Reset	Resets the total counter values to "0." [0 ~ 0 / 0 / 0 /step]
832*	Diag. Result		
	1	Diag. Result	Displays the result of the diagnostics. Refer to section 4.2 for the error codes. [0 ~ 0 / 0 / 0 /step]
833	Coverage		
	1	Last:M	Displays coverage ratios. [0.00 ~ 100.0 / 0.00 / 0.01 %step] <i>This SP mode displays the "coverage ratio" of the output, i.e. the ratio of the total pixel area of the image data to the total printable area on the paper.</i>
	2	Last:C	
	3	Last:Y	
	4	Last:Bk	
	5	Average: M	<i>Do not use this counter for billing purposes. This is because this value is not directly proportional to the amount of toner consumed, although of course it is one factor that affects this amount. The other major factors involved include: the type, total image area and image density of the original, toner concentration and developer potential.</i> <i>Last: This is the coverage for the previous sheet.</i> <i>Average: This is the average coverage for each sheet.</i>
	6	Average: C	
	7	Average: Y	
	8	Average: Bk	
834	TnrConsume		
	1	M	Displays the coverage ratios, including toner revitalization mode. [0 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1 /step] <i>This displays the average coverage ratio, including toner consumed during printing and toner consumed during toner revitalization mode (SP3-971).</i> <i>Do not use this counter for billing purposes</i>
	2	C	
	3	Y	
	4	Bk	

7	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
835	HighDutyCnt		Used for the toner revitalization process (SP3-971). Counts the number of developments made during the past 12 hours.
	1	M	
	2	C	
	3	Y	
	4	Bk	
836	Total Memory		Displays the memory capacity in the controller system.
	1	Total Memory	
850	P/J		Print per job counters are displayed.
	1	P/J(1)	
	2	P/J(2)	
	3	P/J(3)	
	4	P/J(4)	
	5	P/J(5)	
	6	P/J(6–10)	
	7	P/J(11–20)	
	8	P/J(21–)	
901	Assert Info (Assert Information)		Records the location where the last problem (SC990) was detected in the program. The data stored in this SP is used for problem analysis. [0 ~ 0 / 0 / 0 /step]
	1	File Name	
	2	# of Lines	
	3	Location	
906*	PMCounter-PREV		Displays the counters for the previous units. [0 ~ 9999999 / 0 / 1 /step]
	1	PCU	
	2	Development: M	
	3	Development: C	
	4	Development: Y	
	5	Development: Bk	
	6	FusingUnit	
	7	Charger	
	8	Oil	
	9	WasteTnr: OPC	
	10	WasteTnr: Belt	
	11	Toner: M	
	12	Toner: C	
	13	Toner: Y	
	14	Toner: Bk	
	15	Bank1_Feed	
	16	Bank2_Feed	
	17	Development: M	
	18	Development: C	
	19	Development: Y	
	20	Development: Bk	
	21	PCU	
	22	FusingUnit	
910	Firmware PN		Displays the part numbers. [0 ~ 0 / 0 / 0 /step]
	1	System	
	2	Engine	
	7	Finisher	
	9	Bank1	
	11	Mail Box	

7	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
910	13	Duplex	Displays the part numbers. [0 ~ 0 / 0 / 0 /step]
	18	NIB	
	19	Bank2	
	150	RPCS	
	151	PS	
	152	RPDL	
	153	R98	
	154	R16	
	155	RPGL	
	156	R55	
	157	RTIFF	
	158	PCL	
	159	PCLXL	
	160	MSIS	
	161	MSIS(OPTION)	
	200	Factory	
	204	Printer	
	209	Test	
	210	MIB	
911*	Firmware Version		Displays the firmware versions. [0 ~ 0 / 0 / 0 /step]
	1	Controller	
	2	Engine	
	7	Finisher	
	9	Bank1	
	11	Mail Box	
	13	Duplex	
	18	NIB	
	19	Bank2	
	150	RPCS	
	151	PS	
	152	RPDL	
	153	R98	
	154	R16	
	155	RPGL	
	156	R55	
	157	RTIFF	
	158	PCL	
	159	PCLXL	
	160	MSIS	
	161	MSIS(OPTION)	
	200	Factory	
	204	Printer	
	209	Test	
	210	MIB	
920	PM Interval		Adjusts the PM interval for each unit. [60 ~ 120 / 120 / 5/step]
	1	Fusing Unit	
	3	Charger	
	4	PCU	
	5	Development (K)	
	6	Development (MCY)	

7	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
930	PM counter correction		A unit can be replaced before its PM counter reaches the predicted value (➡ 2.2). In this case the PM counter is automatically set to "0." When you want the PM counter to take over the previous value, the counter value of the old unit can be input. After inputting the value of this SP mode, turn the main switch off and on.
	1	Development:M	
	2	Development:C	
	3	Development:Y	
	4	Development:Bk	
	5	PCU	

Input Check Table

The SP numbers do not appear on the screen. Just scroll through the menu with the up/down arrow keys until the required item appears on the display.

SP5-803 -XXX		Description	Reading	
			0	1
1	Tray1	Tray set (standard tray)	Set	Not set
2	Tray1PaperEnd	Paper end sensor (standard tray)	End	Not end
3	Tray1NearEnd	Paper near-end sensor (standard tray)	Not near end	Near end
4	Tray1PaperSize	Paper size sensor (standard tray)	(See table 1.)	
5	RegistSensor	Registration sensor	Detected	Not detected
6	V Trans Sensor	Paper feed sensor	Detected	Not detected
7	ExitSensor	Exit sensor	Detected	Not detected
8	ExitFull	Paper overflow sensor	Full	Not full
9	ExitCover	Exit cover switch	Closed	Open
10	IntChngSensor	Interchange unit exit sensor	Detected	Not detected
11	By-passPaper	By-pass paper end sensor	Detected	Not detected
12	By-passSet	By-pass tray set	Not set	Set
13	FusingUSet	Fusing unit set	Set	Not set
14	OilEnd	Oil supply unit empty	End	Not end
17	TonerEnd: M	Toner end sensor: M	Not end	End
18	TonerEnd: C	Toner end sensor: C	Not end	End
19	TonerEnd: Y	Toner end sensor: Y	Not end	End
20	TonerEnd: K	Toner end sensor: K	Not end	End
21	TonerCart. M	Toner cartridge memory chip: M	Not set	Set
22	TonerCart. C	Toner cartridge memory chip: C	Not set	Set
23	TonerCart. Y	Toner cartridge memory chip: Y	Not set	Set
24	TonerCart. K	Toner cartridge memory chip: K	Not set	Set
27	WasteToner OPC	OPC belt waste toner sensor	Full	Not full
28	W.T.Bottle OPC	OPC belt waste toner bottle switch	Set	Not set
31	BeltMark	Belt mark sensor	Not detected	Detected
32	PCUNew	New PCU sensor	Not new	New
33	WasteToner Blt	Transfer belt waste toner sensor	Full	Not full
34	W.T.Bottle Blt	Transfer belt waste toner bottle switch	Set	Not set
35	LD5VCover	Interlock switch	Closed	Open
36	LeftCover	"Close Left Cover" status	Closed	Open
37	RightCover	Right cover	Closed	Open
38	FrontCover	Front cover	Closed	Open
39	Cover 24V	Interlock switch (24V)	Closed	Open
41	I'changeUnit	Interchange unit	Set	Not set

SP5-803 -XXX		Description	Reading	
			0	1
42	DevMotorLock	Development motor lock	Locked	Not locked
43	OpcMotorLock	Main motor lock	Locked	Not locked
44	PfdMotorLock	Paper feed motor lock	Locked	Not locked
45	PolyMotorLock	Polygon motor lock	Locked	Not locked
46	FusingSensor	Fusing exit	Detected	Not detected
55	DplxConnect	Duplex unit	Not connected	Connected
56	Bank1Connect	1st optional paper tray	Not connected	Connected
57	Bank2Connect	2nd optional paper tray	Not connected	Connected
58	ExitOptConnect	Exit Option Connection	Not connected	Connected
60	Fin.EntSensor	Finisher: Entrance sensor	Not detected	Detected
61	Fin.ExitSensor	Finisher: Exit sensor	Not detected	Detected
62	Fin.HPSensor	Finisher: Jogger HP sensor	Not positioned	Positioned
63	Fin.TopCover	Finisher: Top cover sensor	Closed	Open
64	Fin.PaperHgt.	Finisher: Stack height sensor	Lever is lowered	Lever is raised
65	Fin.Upper	Finisher: Tray upper limit sensor	Not uppermost	Uppermost
66	Fin.NearFull	Finisher: Stack near-limit sensor	Not near limit	Near limit
67	Fin.StplCover	Finisher: Stapler cover	Closed	Open
68	Fin.StplHP	Finisher: Stapler HP sensor	Not at HP	At HP
69	Fin.StplEmpty	Finisher: Staple end	Detected	Not detected
70	Fin.StplCtrg	Finisher: Staple cartridge	Not detected	Detected
71	Fin.StplLock	Finisher: Stapler unit lock	Not locked	Locked
72	Fin.BaseSensor	Finisher: Base sensor	Not detected	Detected
73	Fin.BaseCover	Finisher: Right cover switch	Closed	Open
74	Fin.PaperPress	Finisher: Lever sensor	Lever is raised	Lever is lowered
80	4binFeedSens1	Mailbox: Lower vertical transport sensor	Paper present	No paper
81	4binFeedSens2	Mailbox: Upper vertical transport sensor	Paper present	No paper
84	4binFullSens1	Mailbox: Tray 1 overflow	Not full	Full
85	4binFullSens2	Mailbox: Tray 2 overflow	Not full	Full
86	4binFullSens3	Mailbox: Tray 3 overflow	Not full	Full
87	4binFullSens4	Mailbox: Tray 4 overflow	Not full	Full
88	4binPaperSens1	Mailbox: Tray 1 paper	Detected	Not detected
89	4binPaperSens2	Mailbox: Tray 2 paper	Detected	Not detected
90	4binPaperSens3	Mailbox: Tray 3 paper	Detected	Not detected
91	4binPaperSens4	Mailbox: Tray 4 paper	Detected	Not detected
92	4binDoorSens	Mailbox: Door safety sw.	Open	Closed
100	BankFeedSens1	1st optional tray: Relay sensor	No paper	Paper present
101	BankFeedSens2	2nd optional tray: Relay sensor	No paper	Paper present

SP5-803 -XXX		Description	Reading	
			0	1
102	BankCover1	1st optional tray: Right cover (vertical guide switch)	Closed	Open
103	BankCover2	2nd optional tray: Right cover (vertical guide switch)	Closed	Open
104	Bank1Set	1st optional tray: Set	Not set	Set
105	Bank2Set	2nd optional tray: Set	Not set	Set
106	Bank1PaperEnd	1st optional tray: Paper end	Not end	End
107	Bank2PaperEnd	2nd optional tray: Paper end	Not end	End
108	Bank1PaperSize	1st optional tray: Paper size	(See table 2.)	
109	Bank2PaperSize	2nd optional tray: Paper size		
110	Bank1NearEnd	1st optional tray: Paper height	(See table 3.)	
111	Bank2NearEnd	2nd optional tray: Paper height		
120	DplxEntSens	Duplex: Entrance sensor	Not detected	Detected
121	DplxExitSens	Duplex: Exit sensor	Detected	Not detected
122	DplxOpen	Duplex unit open switch	Closed	Open
123	DplxCover	Duplex cover sensor	Open	Closed

Table 1: Tray 1 Paper Size

Switch	North America	Europe/Asia	Value
0000	LG SEF*	B4 SEF*	00000000
0001	DLT SEF**	A3 SEF**	00100000
0010	B5 LEF	B5 LEF	00010000
0011	B5 SEF****	B5 SEF****	00110000
0100	LT LEF***	A4 LEF***	00001000
0101	HLT LEF	A5 LEF	00101000
0110	A4 SEF	A4 SEF	00011000
0111	LT SEF	LT SEF	00111000

* : Selected with SP1-902-1 [PaperSize - B4/LG], (LG SEF/B4 SEF)

** : Selected with SP1-902-2 [PaperSize - A3/DLT], (DLT SEF/A3 SEF)

*** : Selected with SP1-902-3 [PaperSize - A4/LT], (LT LEF/A4 LEF)

**** : Selected with SP1-902-4 [PaperSize - B5/Executive], (B5 SEF/10.5" x 7.25" SEF)

0: pushed

1: not pushed

Table 2: 1st/2nd Bank Paper Size

The paper size is displayed in the ASAP paper size code. For example, 000001001 (0x05) is displayed for A4 LEF.

Size	North America	Europe/Asia	Code
A3 SEF	Detected	Detected	10000100
B4 SEF	None	Detected	10100100
A4 SEF	None	Detected	10100110
A4 LEF	Detected	Detected	00000101
B5 LEF	Detected	Detected	00001110
A5 LEF	None	Detected	00101100
DLT SEF	Detected	Detected	10100000
LG SEF	Detected	None	10100100
LT SEF	Detected	None	10100110
LT LEF	Detected	Detected	00100110
HLT LEF	Detected	None	00101100

Table 3: 1st/2nd Bank Near End

Remaining paper	Paper height sensor 2	Paper height sensor 1	Code
Full	ON	ON	01100100
Nearly full	OFF	ON	00110010
Near end	OFF	OFF	00001010

Output Check Table

The SP numbers do not appear on the screen. Just scroll through the menu with the up/down arrow keys until the required item appears on the display.

SP5-804 -XXX		Description
1	PF Mtr:89mm/s	Paper feed motor: 89 mm/s
2	PF Mtr:178mm/s	Paper feed motor: 178 mm/s
3	PF Mtr:240mm/s	Paper feed motor: 240 mm/s
4	PF CL (1)	Paper feed clutch (standard tray)
6	FusingMtr	Fusing unit motor
7	FusingMtr: Half	Fusing unit motor: Half Speed
8	FusingFan: High	Fusing unit fan: High speed
9	FusingFan: Low	Fusing unit fan: Low speed
12	Regist CL	Registration clutch
13	I'changeSol1	Upper gate solenoid
14	I'changeSol2	Lower gate solenoid
15	By-pass CL	By-pass paper feed clutch
16	Pick-up SOL	By-pass pick-up solenoid
17	GAPCISleepMode	GAPCIS Sleep Mode Trigger Signal
18	QL/TonerEnd	QL/Toner End
19	DevCl: M	Development clutch: M
20	DevCl: C	Development clutch: C
21	DevCl: Y	Development clutch: Y
22	DevCl: K	Development clutch: K
23	DevMtr	Development motor
24	DevMtr: Half	Development motor: Half Speed
25	DevMtr: Rev	Development motor: Reverse
26	DevMtr: RevHalf	Development motor: Reverse Half Speed
27	Lub. Cl	OPC belt cleaning clutch
28	IDsensLED	ID sensor LED
29	OPCMtr	Main motor: Regular Speed
30	OPCMtr: Half	Main motor: Half Speed
31	OPCMtr: Rev	Main motor: Reverse
32	OPCMtr: RevHalf	Main motor: Reverse Half Speed
33	PolygonMtr	Polygon motor
34	LD	LD
35	PaperTransSol	Paper transfer solenoid
36	BeltClnCl	Transfer belt cleaning clutch
37	EngineReady	Engine Ready
39	GAVDReset	GAVD Reset
40	BeltClnSol	Transfer belt cleaning contact solenoid
45	PolyMtr+LD	Polygon Motor + LD
46	Forced Lub.	Forced Lubrication to OPC belt
47	OzonFan	Ozone Fan
48	Fan3	3rd Fan (Not Used)
49	TonerEnd	Toner End LED
50	Charger	Charge corona unit output
51	Dev.Bias: KY	Development bias: K

SP5-804 -XXX		Description
52	Dev.Bias: CM	Development bias: MCY
53	Trans. Belt	Image transfer power supply
54	PaperTrans.: P	Paper transfer: +
55	PaperTrans.: N	Paper transfer: –
56	BeltCln: P	Image transfer belt cleaning: +
57	FusingBias	Fusing bias
58	QuenchingBias: L	Discharge pin power supply: L
59	QuenchingBias: H	Discharge pin power supply: H
60	Fin.AllOff	Finisher All Off
61	Fin.FeedMtr	Finisher: Main motor
62	Fin.JoggerMtr	Finisher: Jogger motor
63	Fin.PdlSol1	Finisher: Paddle roller solenoid
64	Fin.PEUSol1	Finisher: Exit unit gear solenoid
65	Fin.LeverSol	Finisher: Stack height lever solenoid
66	Fin.TrayMtr	Finisher: Output tray motor
67	Fin.StplMtr	Finisher: Stapler motor
68	Fin.FreeRun	Finisher: Free run
80	4bin AllOff	Mailbox: All Off
81	4bin Motor	Mailbox: Main motor
82	4bin SOL1	Mailbox: Turn gate solenoid 1
83	4bin SOL2	Mailbox: Turn gate solenoid 2
84	4bin SOL3	Mailbox: Turn gate solenoid 3
85	4bin FreeRun	Mailbox: Free run
100	BankCl1	1st optional paper tray unit: Paper feed clutch
101	BankCl2	2nd optional paper tray unit: Paper feed clutch
102	Bank1Mtr	1st optional paper tray unit: Paper feed motor
103	Bank1Mtr: Half	1st optional paper tray unit: Paper feed motor - half speed
104	Bank1Mtr: High	1st optional paper tray unit: Paper feed motor - high speed
105	Bank2Mtr	2nd optional paper tray unit: Paper feed motor
106	Bank2Mtr: Half	2nd optional paper tray unit: Paper feed motor - half speed
107	Bank2Mtr: High	2nd optional paper tray unit: Paper feed motor - high speed
108	"Bank1,2Half"	1st and 2nd optional paper tray units: Half speed
109	"Bank1,2Mtr"	1st and 2nd optional paper tray units: Paper feed motor
120	DplxRevMtr	Duplex: Inverter motor
121	DplxRevMtrRev	Duplex: Inverter motor - reverse
122	DplxFeedMtr	Duplex: Transport motor
123	DplxFeedMtrRev	Duplex: Transport motor - reverse
124	DplxSol	Duplex: Inverter gate solenoid
125	DplxFreeRun	Duplex: Free run

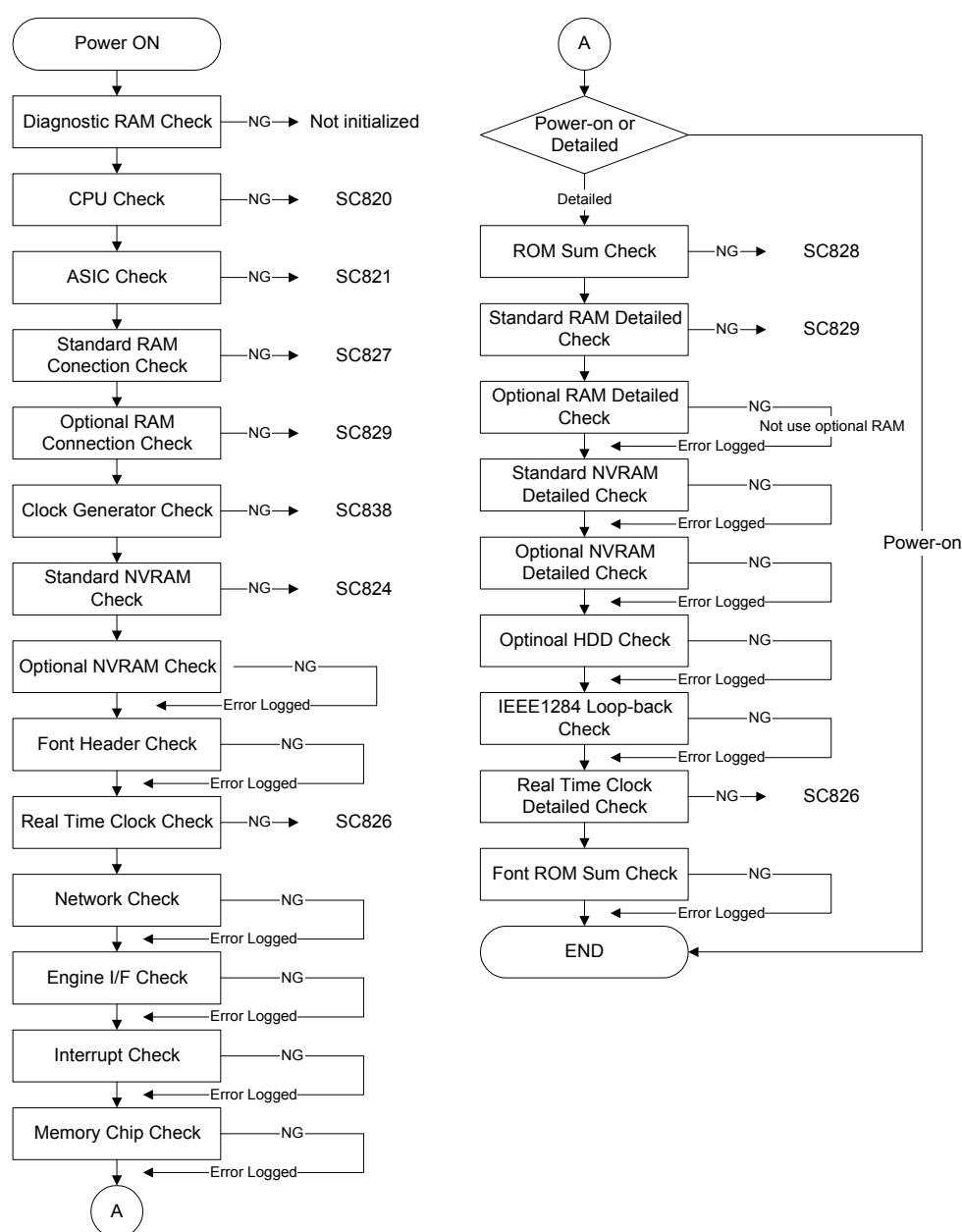
5.3 CONTROLLER SELF-DIAGNOSTICS

5.3.1 OVERVIEW

There are three types of self-diagnostics for the controller.

- Power-on self-diagnostics: The machine automatically starts the self-diagnostics just after the power has been turned on.
- Detailed self-diagnostics: The machine does the detailed self-diagnostics by using a loop-back connector (P/N G0219350)
- SC detection: The machine automatically detects SC conditions at power-on or during operation.

The following shows the workflow of the power-on and detailed self-diagnostics.



5.3.2 DETAILED SELF-DIAGNOSTICS

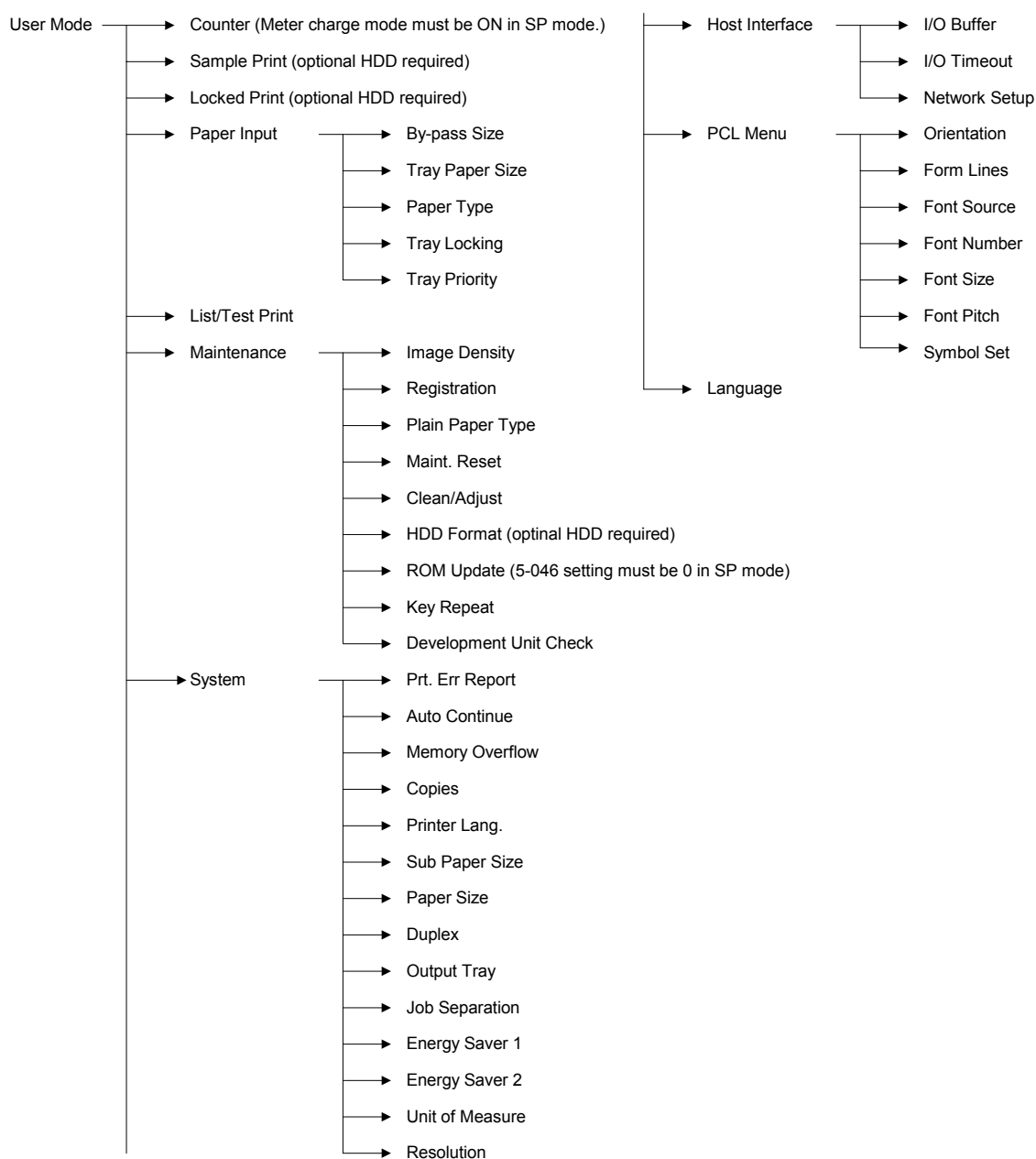
This detailed self-diagnostic test requires a loop-back connector (P/N: G0219350).

1. Turn off the machine and attach the loop-back connector to the parallel interface.
2. Turn on the machine while pressing the “Online” key and “# Enter” key together.
3. The machine automatically starts the self-diagnostics and prints the diagnostic report after completing the test.
 - Refer to the diagnostics report for the detected errors. The errors detected during self-diagnostics can be checked with SP7-832-001 (Diag. Result).
 - Refer to section 4.2 for details about the error codes.

5.4 USER PROGRAM MODE

To activate the user program mode, press the menu key and use the up/down arrow keys to scroll through the menu. To go back to a higher level, press the escape key. After changing the settings, press the online key. The user menu list can be printed using 'menu list' in the "List/Test Print" user mode.

User Mode Tree



5.5 UPGRADING SOFTWARE

CAUTION

1. Before upgrading the software, print out the system settings and check the current software versions.
2. Check that your IC card contains a later version of the software.
Machine performance is not guaranteed if you install an older version.

NOTE: Open the front cover when upgrading the firmware. This is to prevent the printer from going in the process control session.

5.5.1 OVERVIEW

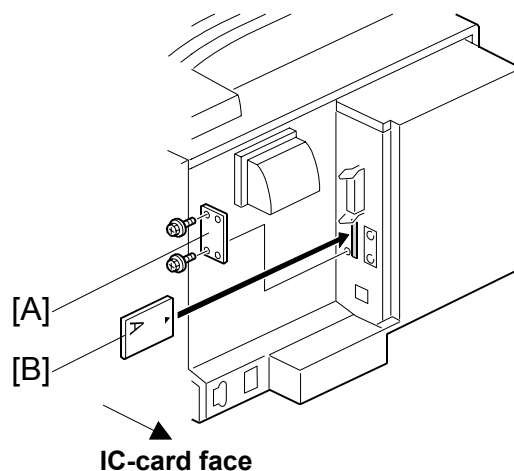
You can upgrade the following software modules:

- Engine software (BCU board software) – 1 card
- Controller system software (Controller board software) – 2 cards (no special order required)
- Network card system software – 1 card

5.5.2 UPGRADING

Procedure

1. Turn the main switch off.
2. IC card cover [A] (⚠ x 2)
3. Insert the IC card [B].



4. Open the front cover and turn the main switch on. The message on the right appears on the operation panel.

Engine

5. Press the enter key.

Engine

*

6. Press the down arrow key.

Update Data

7. Press the enter key.

Updating...

8. Wait until the message on the right appears on the operation panel.

Updated

Power Off On

9. Turn the main switch off.

10. Remove the IC card.

11. If upgrading two or more software modules, insert the next IC card and repeat the steps above.

12. Put back the IC card cover.

13. Turn the main switch on.

Error Recovery***Installation Error***

If the software upgrade is unsuccessful, “NG!” or “ERR” appears on the operation panel. When either of the messages is output, do the following:

- 1) Turn the main switch off.
- 2) Check that the IC card is correctly inserted.
- 3) Turn the main switch on.
- 4) Start upgrading software from the beginning.

Power Failure

If the power supply is interrupted, an error code may appear on the operation panel. Then, do the following:

- 1) Turn the main switch off.
- 2) Failure during BCU firmware download: Turn DIP switch 1 on the BCU board to ON
Failure during controller, emulation, or network firmware download: Turn DIP switch 1 on the controller board to ON
- 3) Turn the main switch on.
- 4) Start upgrading software from the beginning.
- 5) Turn the DIP switch off again after finishing.

5.6 DIP SWITCHES

Controller Board

DIP SW No.	OFF	ON
1	Boot-up from machine	Boot-up from IC card
2 to 4	Factory Use Only: Keep these switches OFF.	

If a download attempt failed, you must boot the machine from the IC card. To do this, set DIP SW 1 on the controller board to ON.

BCU Board

DIP SW No.	OFF	ON
1	Boot-up from machine	Boot-up from IC card
2 to 4	Factory Use Only: Keep these switches OFF.	

If a download attempt failed, you must boot the machine from the IC card. To do this, set DIP SW 1 on the BCU board to ON.

5.7 PRINTING A TEST PATTERN

1. Use SP5-955-1 (Test Pattern – Pattern) to select the pattern that you wish to print.
2. Enable test pattern printing by setting SP2-917 (Test Pattern) to 'On'.
3. To print the test pattern, send a one-page job to the printer, or print an SMC list (try using SP5-990-6, SP Print mode – Non default).
4. After finishing the test patterns, return SP2-917 (Test Pattern) to 'Off', or switch the machine off/on

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: G071 - 006

06/16/2003

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER - C7010

LANIER - LP036C

RICOH - AFICIO CL5000

SAVIN - CLP1036

SUBJECT: SERVICE MANUAL - INSERT

The Service Manual pages listed below must be replaced with the pages supplied.

The revised areas have been highlighted by an arrow ⇒.

PAGES:

- 5-24 Updated Information (SP Mode Tables)



**SERVICE
MANUAL**

2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
510*	Fu_Bias_SW		
	1	Fu_Bias_SW	Switches the fusing and discharge pin bias control on or off. [0 ~ 1 / 1 / 1/step] DFU <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0: Control off 1: Control on
801*	ChrgClnIntval		
	1	ChrgClnIntval	Sets the charge corona unit cleaning interval. [0 ~ 5000 / 600 / 100 counts/step] Refer to section 6 for details.
	2	ChrgClnIntval - 2	Sets the charge corona unit cleaning interval. The charge corona cleaning is carried out after 600 (SP2-801-1) development counts, at job end or after 700 (=the sum of the settings in SP2-801-1 and -2) development counts (stops in the middle of the job) [0 ~ 5000 / 100 / 100 counts/step]
802	ChargerCln		
	1	Charger Cln	Executes a forced charge corona unit cleaning. Set to 1 to start cleaning. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step]
⇒ 803	Charge Cleaning Off Time		
	1	Charge Cleaning Off time Requires MCU v2.26 and BICU v1.40 firmware.	[0 ~ 200 / 60 / 10 seconds/step] A 60-second interval already exists for performing an idle discharge after corona wire cleaning, this SP mode allows the interval to be adjusted. The idle discharge is to maintain an even charge wire surface, ensuring proper charging.
901*	EnvControl		
	1	EnvControl	Switches environment control on or off. [0 ~ 1 / 1 / 1/step] DFU <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0: Control off (The paper transfer and cleaning bias environments are set to NN1. The image transfer bias environment is set to MM.) 1: Control on
903	PaperTrans_Low		
	1	LL1/Nrml	Adjusts the paper transfer current applied when the machine is at low temperature. [0.0 ~ 70.0 / 1.0 / 0.1 μ A/step] The specified value is subtracted from the value specified by SP2-310 (PaperTrans_LL1) under the following conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The machine is in the LL1 environment. 400 images or less are created after the machine starts
904	1CBiasAdj		
	1	[M]	Adjusts the development bias applied during the mono-color mode. DFU [0 ~ 100 / 50 / 1 V/step]
	2	[C]	[0 ~ 100 / 0 / 1 V/step]
	3	[Y]	[0 ~ 100 / 0 / 1 V/step]
	4	[K]	[0 ~ 100 / 0 / 1 V/step]

BULLETIN NUMBER: G071 - 007

07/22/2003

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER - C7010

LANIER - LP036C

RICOH - AFICIO CL5000

SAVIN - CLP1036

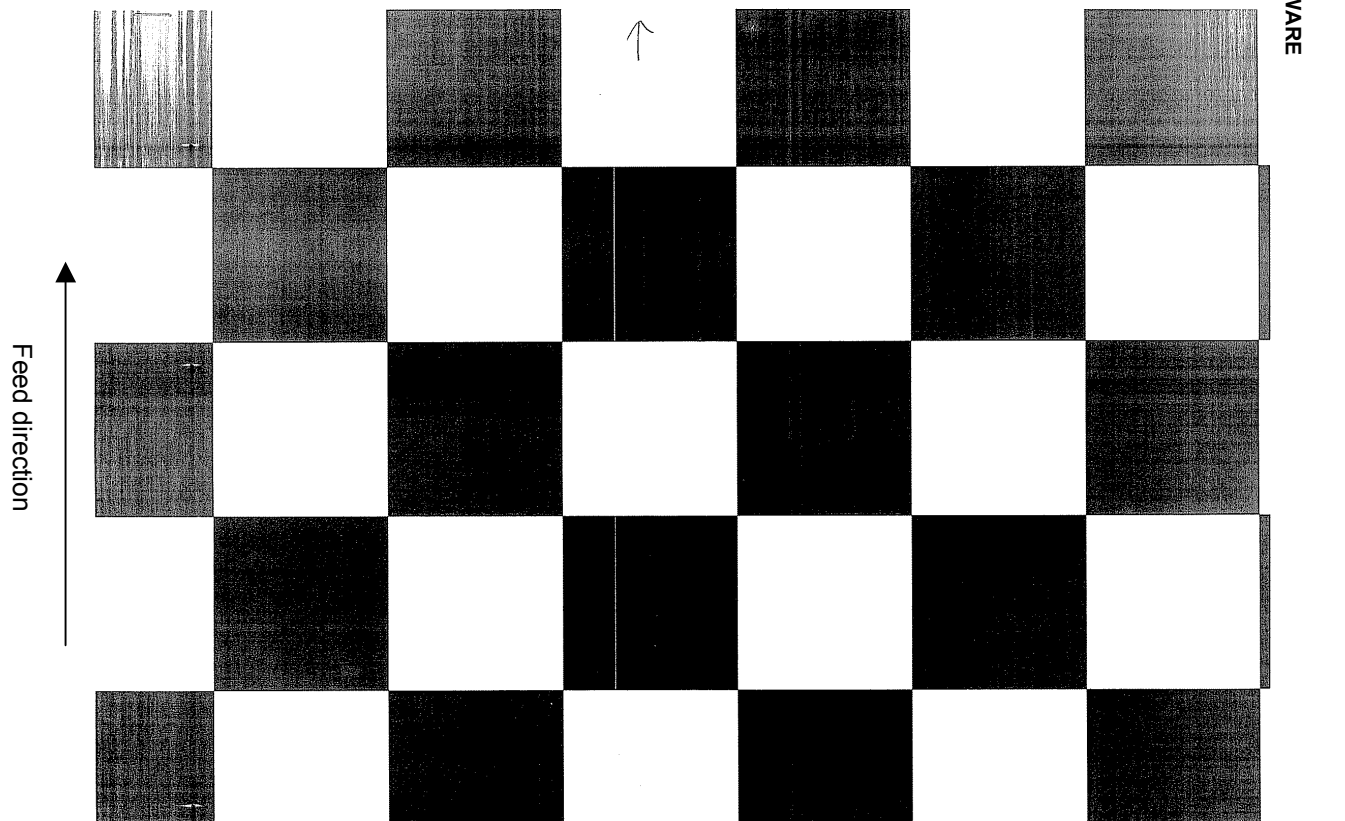
SUBJECT: FAINT BLACK IMAGE

SYMPTOM:

Image density becomes lighter across the image; both sides may appear lighter than the center on the copy. (Refer to sample) This is visible in solid image and halftone areas, and occurs more easily with:

- 1) B/W image areas
- 2) Originals with low image coverage ratios
- 3) Jobs with a low quantity of sets (e.g. 1 or 2 page(s) per job.)

Sample:



CAUSE:

The lubricant applied to the OPC belt migrates into the black development unit, causing the friction level on the developer roller surface to decrease. This makes it difficult for the toner to be transferred onto the roller surface, causing the image to gradually get lighter. The symptom primarily occurs with black developer, but could potentially occur with a color developer if a single color is the primary output.

NOTE: *The symptom temporarily subsides when the toner cartridge is replaced and new toner is supplied to the hopper (concentration of lubricant in the unit is minimized).*

SOLUTION:

During the next service visit for the G071, the firmware should be upgraded and the SP values as identified in Table 1 should be changed. The modified firmware changes the rotation time of the PCU assembly to reduce the lubrication used on the OPC.

NOTE: *This symptom can possibly occur on the B051/B052, however, the procedure is different. Refer to TSB B051/B052 - 021 for the correct procedure.*

Update to the following modified firmware:

- Main Unit Controller version **2.27** or later. (This firmware requires two PCMCIA Cards)
- BCU version **1.42** or later. (This firmware requires one PCMCIA Card)

A total of three cards are needed to upgrade the firmware without a laptop with MCE software at customer location.

NOTE: *These versions were applied from April '03 production.*

Print 2 test patterns as follows:

1. Use SP 5-955-1 #16 (Test Pattern).
2. Enable test pattern printing by setting SP 2-917 (Test Pattern) to "ON".
3. To print the test pattern, send a two-page Black/White job from the printer, or print an SMC list SP 5-990.-001. (SP ALL)
4. After finishing the test pattern, return to SP 2-917 (Test Pattern) to "OFF", or power machine off then on. Inspect the prints and if the symptom is evident continue this procedure.

After updating the firmware, input the following new values manually.

SP No.	Description	Value
2-938-001 (New SP)	OPC Reverse Interval	10
2-941-001	OPC Lubricant Time – Interrupt	14
3-920-001	Lubrication Cleaning Time	50
3-921-001	Lubricant Clutch OFF: 1C	6
3-921-002	Lubricant Clutch OFF: 2C/3C/4C	6

Table 1

5. Replace the black development unit.
6. Replace the black toner cartridge.

NOTE: *It is necessary to replace the toner cartridge since the lubricant also gets into the cartridge.*

7. Print a complete SMC Report and configuration page.
8. Complete the form attached and submit to the address indicated. Be sure to attach the service history, SMC report, internal test patterns and configuration page to the form.

UNITS AFFECTED:

All G071 printers manufactured after the serial number listed below will have the new style firmware installed during production.

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner C7010 Lanier LP036C Ricoh Aficio CL5000 Savin CLP1036	P7536400358

G071 Development Unit Form

TSC is providing a replacement Black Development Unit for G071 printers that exhibit the defined symptom. The replacement Development Unit shipments are contingent upon proper submittal of the items listed below.

1. Replacement Development Unit will ship from TSC by UPS Ground only.
2. Development Unit is replacement inventory after proof of failure.

NOTE: *Fax copy samples are not appropriate for evaluation, only HARD COPIES WILL BE ACCEPTED.*

Check List (please be sure that all items are included with this Form):

- ☐ **SMC Report (SP5-990-001)**
- ☐ **2 printed Test Pattern SP 5-955-001 # 16 (sample indicating the symptom denoting paper direction and lead edge.)**
- ☐ **Configuration Page**

Mail to:
Ricoh Corporation
19C Chapin Road
P.O. Box 2008
Pine Brook, NJ 07058-2008
Attn: OPSD Box 32/ TSB G071 – 007

DEALER NAME:		
ADDRESS:		
CITY:	STATE:	ZIP CODE:
ATTN:		TECH ID #
PHONE #:	FAX #:	
DEALER ACCOUNT NUMBER:		

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: G071 - 008

07/22/2003

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER - C7010

LANIER - LP036C

RICOH - AFICIO CL5000

SAVIN - CLP1036

SUBJECT: SERVICE MANUAL - INSERT

The Service Manual pages listed below must be replaced with the pages supplied.

The revised areas have been highlighted by an arrow ⇒.

PAGES:

- 5-26 and 5-30

Updated Information (SP Mode Table)



**SERVICE
MANUAL**

⇒	2		Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
⇒	938	OPC Reverse Interval		
		1	OPC Reverse Interval	<p>[0 ~ 100 / 10 / 10 counts /step]</p> <p>The Main motor rotates the OPC belt backwards for 500 ms at the end of every job, in order to remove foreign particles between the OPC belt and OPC cleaning blade. However, this does not need to be performed so often. In addition, reducing the frequency of OPC belt reverse rotation improves the cleaning blade performance. This SP adjusts the counter for the OPC belt reverse rotation, and is incremented as follows: LT/A4 LEF or smaller: 1, larger than LT/A4 LEF: 2.</p> <p>When this SP reaches its set maximum, reverse rotation is performed for 500ms at job end.</p> <p>NOTE: Requires main unit controller version 2.27, and BICU firmware version 1.42 or later.</p>
	939	OPC_Lub_Int		
		1	OPC_Lub_Int	<p>Executes/does not execute OPC lubrication by interrupting the job. DFU</p> <p>[0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Off • 1: On <p><i>SP2-942-1 (OPC_Lub_Intrvl) specifies the lubrication interval.</i></p>
	940	OPC_Lub_Mode		
		1	OPC_Lub_Mode	<p>Executes a forced OPC lubrication to reduce the friction on the OPC belt. DFU</p> <p>[0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>The OPC belt and the lubricant brush operate for 2 minutes.</i>
	941	OPC_Lub_Time		
		1	job end	<p>Determines how long the OPC belt is lubricated for after the end of every job.</p> <p>[0 ~ 30 / 14 / 1 s/step]</p> <p>NOTE: Requires main unit controller version 2.27, and BICU firmware version 1.42 or later.</p>
		2	OPC_Lub_Int	<p>Determines how long the OPC belt is lubricated at the forced lubrication</p> <p>[0 ~ 60 / 10 / 1 s/step]</p>
	942	OPC_Lub_Intrvl		
		1	OPC_Lub_Intrvl	<p>[10 ~ 200 / 50 / 10/step] DFU</p> <p><i>When SP2-939 (OPC_Lub_Int) is set to on, the machine lubricates the OPC belt and image transfer belt at the interval (number of prints) set with this SP. Incoming print jobs do not interrupt the lubrication.</i></p>
	943	Discharge Tsld (Discharge Threshold)		
		1	Discharge Tsld	<p>Adjusts the threshold of discharge. DFU</p> <p>[9.0 ~ 22.0 / 15.0 / 1.0 g/m³/step]</p>

3	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
910*	DoctorIntval	
	1	print(FC) Sets the doctor roller reverse rotation interval. [0 ~ 50 / 50 / 1 sheet/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The value indicates how many sheets are output before the doctor roller is reversed. (Sheet counts are converted into equivalent A4-LEF sheet counts.) • Reversing the roller removes toner blockages. • The sheet count is reset after reverse rotation. • Decrease the value when vertical white lines appear on prints.
	2	print(MC) [0 ~ 65535 / 50 / 1 sheet/step]
	3	job end [0 ~ 65535 / 20 / 1 sheet/step]
⇒ 920*	Lub._CL_Time	
	1	Lub._CL_Time Sets the OPC belt lubrication period. DFU [0 ~ 100 / 50 / 10%/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When 100 is specified, the OPC belt cleaning clutch is always on whenever the OPC is turning, so the OPC gets lubricated. When 50 is specified, the clutch is only on half the time that the motor is on. NOTE: Requires main unit controller version 2.27, and BICU firmware version 1.42 or later.
⇒ 921	Lubricant Clutch OFF	
	1	1 C [0 ~ 11 / 6 / 1s /step]
	2	2C/3C/4C Allows the image transfer belt cleaning clutch off timing to be adjusted. The setting determines the number of seconds after image transfer belt cleaning roller charging that the clutch is turned off. With previous versions, the clutch is always running while the development roller motor rotates. NOTE: Requires main unit controller version 2.27, and BICU firmware version 1.42 or later.
940	JobEnd_Int	
	1	JobEnd_Int The OPC belt is lubricated after the end of every job. This SP determines whether the lubrication is interrupted when a job arrives at the printer. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Interrupted • 1: Not interrupted
941	OPC_Ide_PwrOn	
	1	Idling_Time The image transfer belt tends to curl after a long period without rotation. To correct this, image transfer belt idling is done if the fusing temperature is not high enough to print <u>just after the main switch is turned on</u> . This SP determines how long the idling rotation is done. [3 ~ 5 / 3 / 1 minute/step]
	2	PrintingReady Select when the machine can accept a print job after the idling starts. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Immediately • 1: After idling has been done for 1 minute • 2: After idling finishes. [0 ~ 2 / 0 / 1/step]

BULLETIN NUMBER: G071 - 009

08/19/2003

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER - C7010

LANIER - LP036C

RICOH - AFICIO CL5000

SAVIN - CLP1036

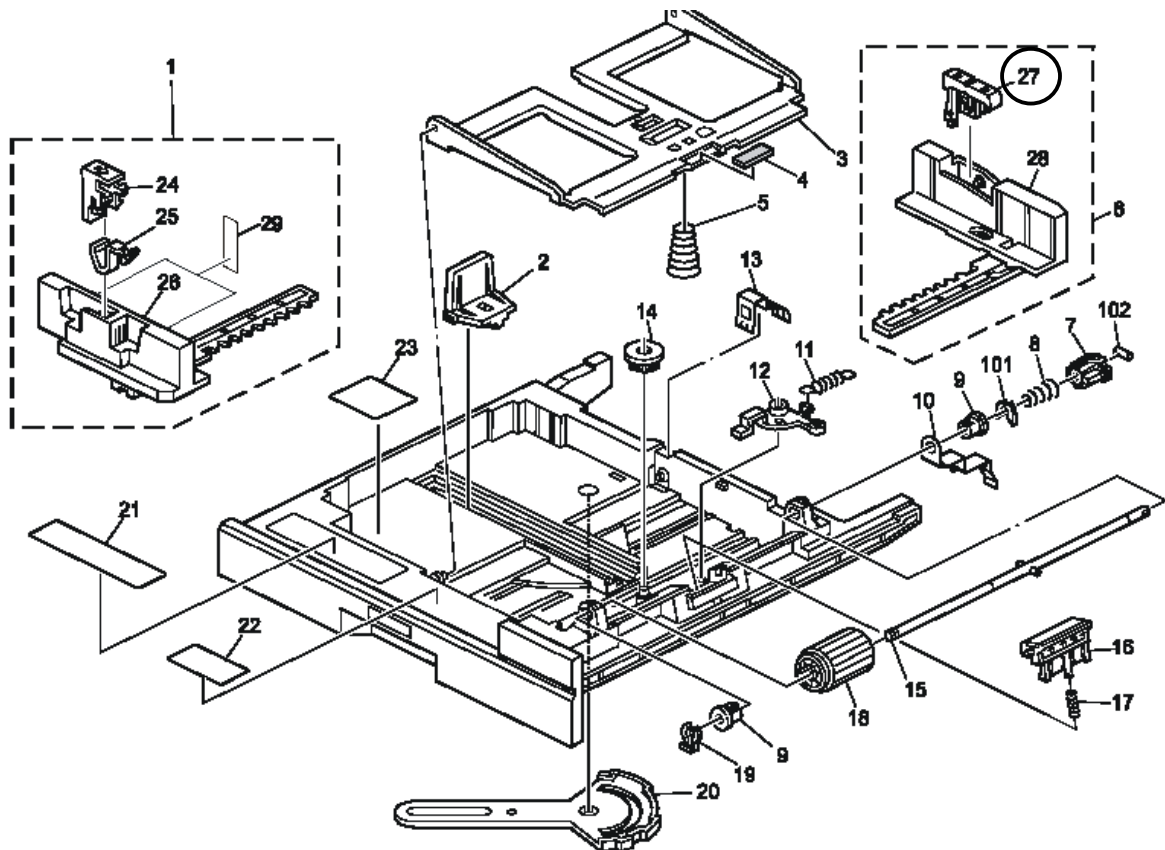
SUBJECT: REAR LEVER STOPPER

GENERAL:

The Rear Lever Stopper has been redesigned to ensure that the fence is not pulled from the weight of the paper stack when the tray is set, which can cause skew.



■ PARTS



The following part update is being issued for all G071 Parts Catalogs.

					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	NEW PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	INT	PAGE	ITEM
G0702717	G0702718	Rear Lever Stopper	1-1	1	17	27

UNITS AFFECTED:

All G071 copiers manufactured after the serial numbers listed below will have the new style Rear Lever Stopper installed during production.

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner C7010	P7527200282
Savin CLP1036	P7527200282
Lanier LP 036c	P7527200282
Ricoh Aficio CL5000	P7527200282

INTERCHANGEABILITY CHART:

0	OLD and NEW parts can be used in both OLD and NEW machines.	2	NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines. OLD parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines.
1	NEW parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines. OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines.	3	OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines. NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines.
3/S	Must be installed as a set on units manufactured prior to the S/N cut-in. On units manufactured after the S/N cut-in or previously modified, use the new part numbers individually.		

BULLETIN NUMBER: G071 - 010

08/25/2003

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER - C7010

LANIER - LP036C

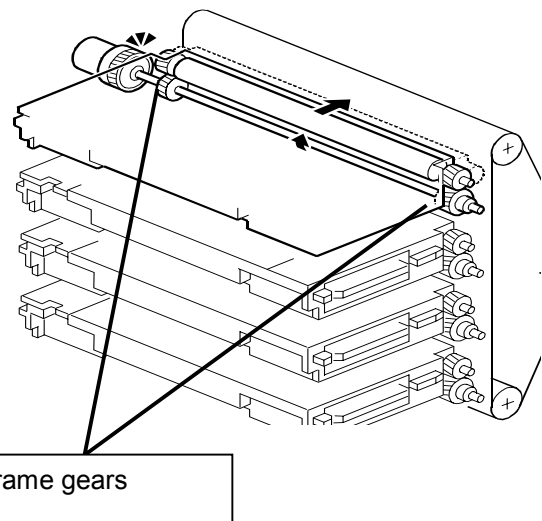
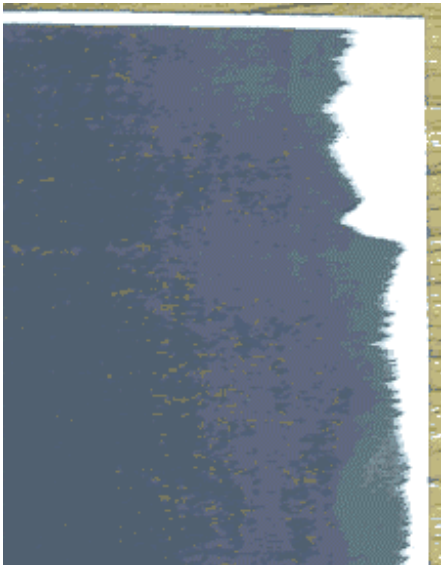
RICOH - AFICIO CL5000

SAVIN - CLP1036

SUBJECT: BLANK AREA ON ONE SIDE OF THE IMAGE

SYMPTOM:

A blank area may appear on one side of the image (development unit front or rear).



CAUSE:

The development unit front gears engage their mainframe counterparts slightly differently than the rear gears.

SOLUTION:

Rotate the mainframe gears manually, removing the development unit(s) on which the symptom occurs, and then reinstall the unit(s).



■ COPY QUALITY



■ PARTS

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: G071 - 011

09/22/2003

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER - C7010

LANIER - LP036C

RICOH - AFICIO CL5000

SAVIN - CLP1036

SUBJECT: SERVICE MANUAL - INSERT

The Service Manual pages listed below must be replaced with the pages supplied.

The revised areas have been highlighted by an arrow ⇒.

PAGES:

- 5-22 and 23 Updated Information (Modifications to SP Modes)
- 5-26 Updated Information (Modifications to SP Modes)



**SERVICE
MANUAL**

2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
320*	PaperTrans_Col (Paper Transfer Correction) The display indicates: Paper Type/Side 1 or 2/Printing mode	
	1	Nrml/1st/1C Corrects the electric current for paper transfer. DFU [0 ~ 100 / 45 / 1%/step]
	2	Nrml/1st/2C [0 ~ 100 / 90 / 1%/step]
	3	Nrml/1st/3C [0 ~ 100 / 100 / 1%/step]
	4	Nrml/2nd/1C [0 ~ 100 / 45 / 1%/step]
	5	Nrml/2nd/2C [0 ~ 100 / 90 / 1%/step]
	6	Nrml/2nd/3C [0 ~ 100 / 100 / 1%/step]
	7	Thick/1st/1C [0 ~ 100 / 45 / 1%/step]
	8	Thick/1st/2C [0 ~ 100 / 90 / 1%/step]
	9	Thick/1st/3C [0 ~ 100 / 100 / 1%/step]
	10	Thick/2nd/1C [0 ~ 100 / 45 / 1%/step]
	11	Thick/2nd/2C [0 ~ 100 / 90 / 1%/step]
	12	Thick/2nd/3C [0 ~ 100 / 100 / 1%/step]
	13	OHP/1C [0 ~ 100 / 60 / 1%/step]
	14	OHP/2C [0 ~ 100 / 90 / 1%/step]
	15	OHP/3C [0 ~ 100 / 100 / 1%/step]
400*	ClnBiasLL1	
	1	1C Adjusts the transfer belt cleaning bias voltage when absolute humidity AH (g/m ³) is in the following range: 0 < AH ≤ 3.5 (this is the 'LL1' humidity range) DFU [0 ~ 2000 / 1200 / 10 Volt/step]
	2	2C-4C [0 ~ 2000 / 1200 / 10 Volt/step]
	3	HalfSpeed/1C [0 ~ 2000 / 1200 / 10 Volt/step]
	4	HalfSpeed/2C-4C [0 ~ 2000 / 1200 / 10 Volt/step]
	5	Ppattern [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	6	NoImageArea [0 ~ 2000 / 1400 / 10 Volt/step]
	7	JamRecovery [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	8	OPC Lubrication Time [0 ~ 2000 / 1400 / 10 Volt/step] **
401*	ClnBiasLL2	
	1	1C Adjusts the transfer belt cleaning bias voltage when absolute humidity AH (g/m ³) is in the following range: 3.5 < AH ≤ 8.0 (this is the 'LL2' humidity range) DFU [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	2	2C-4C [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	3	HalfSpeed/1C [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	4	HalfSpeed/2C-4C [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	5	Ppattern [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	6	NoImageArea [0 ~ 2000 / 1400 / 10 Volt/step]
	7	JamRecovery [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	8	OPC Lubrication Time [0 ~ 2000 / 1400 / 10 Volt/step] **

⇒ ** **NOTE:** Requires Main Unit firmware version 2.28 and BICU firmware version 1.44A or later.

2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)	Function / [Setting]
⇒ 402*	ClnBiasNN1	
	1	1C Adjusts the transfer belt cleaning bias voltage when absolute humidity AH (g/m ³) is in the following range: 8.0 < AH ≤ 14 (this is the 'NN1' humidity range) DFU [0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	2	2C-4C [0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	3	HalfSpeed/1C [0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	4	HalfSpeed/2C-4C [0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	5	Ppattern [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	6	NoImageArea [0 ~ 2000 / 1400 / 10 Volt/step]
	7	JamRecovery [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	8	OPC Lubrication Time [0 ~ 2000 / 1400 / 10 Volt/step] ** See page 5-22
⇒ 403*	ClnBiasNN2	
	1	1C Adjusts the transfer belt cleaning bias voltage when absolute humidity AH (g/m ³) is in the following range: 14 < AH ≤ 19 (this is the 'NN2' humidity range) DFU [0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	2	2C-4C [0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	3	HalfSpeed/1C [0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	4	HalfSpeed/2C-4C [0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	5	Ppattern [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	6	NoImageArea [0 ~ 2000 / 1400 / 10 Volt/step]
	7	JamRecovery [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	8	OPC Lubrication Time [0 ~ 2000 / 1400 / 10 Volt/step] ** See page 5-22
⇒ 404*	ClnBiasHH	
	1	1C Adjusts the transfer belt cleaning bias voltage when absolute humidity AH (g/m ³) is in the following range: 19 < AH (this is the 'HH' humidity range) DFU [0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	2	2C-4C [0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	3	HalfSpeed/1C [0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	4	HalfSpeed/2C-4C [0 ~ 2000 / 1700 / 10 Volt/step]
	5	Ppattern [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	6	NoImageArea [0 ~ 2000 / 1400 / 10 Volt/step]
	7	JamRecovery [0 ~ 2000 / 1600 / 10 Volt/step]
	8	OPC Lubrication Time [0 ~ 2000 / 1400 / 10 Volt/step] ** See page 5-22
⇒ 500*	FusingBias (Discharge pin)	
	1	Nrml/1C/1st Adjusts the discharge pin voltage (paper separation) and fusing bias voltage. DFU [4000 ~ 1000 / 3000 / 100 Volt/step] • Same bias voltage is applied to the fusing unit and the discharge pin.
	2	Nrml/1C/2nd [4000 ~ 1000 / 3000 / 100 Volt/step]
	3	Nrml/FC/1st [4000 ~ 1000 / 2500 / 100 Volt/step]
	4	Nrml/FC/2nd [4000 ~ 1000 / 2500 / 100 Volt/step]
	5	Thk/1C/1st [4000 ~ 1000 / 3000 / 100 Volt/step]
	6	Thk/1C/2nd [4000 ~ 1000 / 3000 / 100 Volt/step]
	7	Thk/FC/1st [4000 ~ 1000 / 2500 / 100 Volt/step]
	8	Thk/FC/2nd [4000 ~ 1000 / 2500 / 100 Volt/step]

2	Mode No. (Class 1, 2, and 3)		Function / [Setting]
938	OPC Reverse Interval		
	1	OPC Reverse Interval	<p>[0 ~ 100 / 10 / 10 counts /step]</p> <p>The Main motor rotates the OPC belt backwards for 500 ms at the end of every job, in order to remove foreign particles between the OPC belt and OPC cleaning blade. However, this does not need to be performed so often. In addition, reducing the frequency of OPC belt reverse rotation improves the cleaning blade performance. This SP adjusts the counter for the OPC belt reverse rotation, and is incremented as follows: LT/A4 LEF or smaller: 1, larger than LT/A4 LEF: 2. When this SP reaches its set maximum, reverse rotation is performed for 500ms at job end.</p> <p>NOTE: Requires main unit controller version 2.27, and BICU firmware version 1.42 or later.</p>
939	OPC_Lub_Int		
	1	OPC_Lub_Int	<p>Executes/does not execute OPC lubrication by interrupting the job. DFU</p> <p>[0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0: Off 1: On <p><i>SP2-942-1 (OPC_Lub_Intrl) specifies the lubrication interval.</i></p>
940	OPC_Lub_Mode		
	1	OPC_Lub_Mode	<p>Executes a forced OPC lubrication to reduce the friction on the OPC belt. DFU</p> <p>[0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1/step]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The OPC belt and the lubricant brush operate for 2 minutes.
941	OPC_Lub_Time		
	1	job end	<p>Determines how long the OPC belt is lubricated for after the end of every job.</p> <p>[6 ~ 30 / 14 / 1 s/step]</p> <p>NOTE: Requires main unit controller version 2.28, and BICU firmware version 1.44A or later.</p>
	2	OPC_Lub_Int	<p>Determines how long the OPC belt is lubricated at the forced lubrication. (See NOTE for SP2-941-1)</p> <p>[6 ~ 60 / 10 / 1 s/step]</p>
942	OPC_Lub_Intrl		
	1	OPC_Lub_Intrl	<p>[10 ~ 200 / 50 / 10/step] DFU</p> <p><i>When SP2-939 (OPC_Lub_Int) is set to on, the machine lubricates the OPC belt and image transfer belt at the interval (number of prints) set with this SP. Incoming print jobs do not interrupt the lubrication.</i></p>
943	Discharge Tsld (Discharge Threshold)		
	1	Discharge Tsld	<p>Adjusts the threshold of discharge. DFU</p> <p>[9.0 ~ 22.0 / 15.0 / 1.0 g/m³/step]</p>

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: G071 - 012

09/30/2003

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER - C7010

LANIER - LP036C

RICOH - AFICIO CL5000

SAVIN - CLP1036

SUBJECT: PARTS CATALOG UPDATES

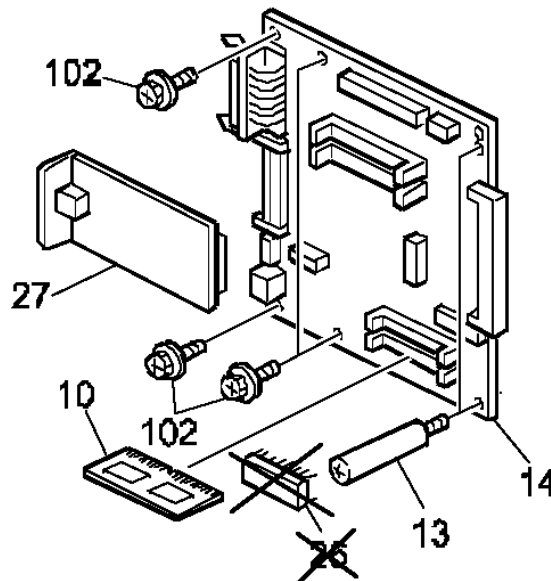
GENERAL:

The following parts updates are being issued for all G071 Parts Catalogs.



● **UPDATE 1:**

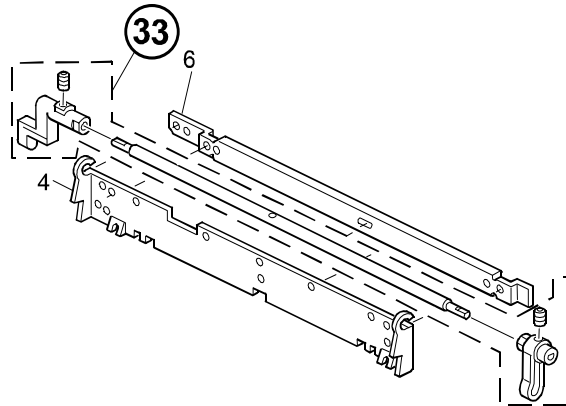
Total Counter – Please delete the Total Counter, P/N G0709099- Item 26 from your G071 Parts Catalog as it was mistakenly listed. Please update your G071 Parts Catalog with the following information.



			REFERENCE	
PART NUMBER	DESCRIPTION	QTY	PAGE	ITEM
G0709099	Total Counter	1→0	41	26

● **UPDATE 2:**

Arm Shaft Assembly – The Front Arm, Rear Arm and Arm Shaft have been combined into one assembly to ensure that the shaft is level when attached, as this is difficult to achieve when installing the individual components without a factory tool. Please update your G071 Parts Catalog with the following information.



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	NEW PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	INT	PAGE	ITEM
G0706238		Front Arm	1→0		21	10
G0706239		Rear Arm	1→0		21	1
G0706240		Arm Shaft	1→0		21	5
05730040E		Hexagon Headless Set Screw – M3x4	2→0		21	104
	→ G0706237	Arm Shaft Assembly	1	-	21	33 *

* DENOTES NEW ITEM NUMBER

● **UPDATE 3:**

EEPROM on the BCU Board – The IC - EEPROM I2C Bus 32K Dip was omitted from the parts catalog.
NOTE: The service part BCU board (P/N-G0705120) does not include this EEPROM (P/N-14075404). However, if only the board is defective, it is not necessary to order and replace the EEPROM. Simply replace the board alone, and use the EEPROM attached to the old board. Please update your G071 Parts Catalog with the following information.

BCU BOARD (G071) Page 49

Incorrect

Symbol No.	Index No.
IC104	117

Correct

Symbol No.	Index No.
IC104 (IC socket)	193

					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	NEW PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	INT	PAGE	ITEM
-	14075404	IC - EEPROM I2C BUS 32K DIP	1	-	53	193 *

* DENOTES NEW ITEM NUMBER

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: G071 - 013

10/08/2003

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER - C7010

LANIER - LP036C

RICOH - AFICIO CL5000

SAVIN - CLP1036

SUBJECT: SERVICE MANUAL - INSERT

The Service Manual pages listed below must be replaced with the pages supplied.

The revised areas have been highlighted by an arrow ⇒.

PAGES:

- 5-4 and 5-7 Updated Information (SP Mode Tables)



**SERVICE
MANUAL**

5.2 SP MODE TABLES

NOTE: In the Function/[Setting] column:

- The related pop-up screen name and function name (if any) appear in parenthesis following the function description.
- Comments are in *italics*.
- The setting range is enclosed in brackets, with the default setting written in **bold**.
- An asterisk (*) after the mode number means that this mode's value is stored in the NVRAM. If you do a RAM reset, all these SP modes will be returned to their factory settings.
- **DFU** stands for **D**esign/**F**actory **U**se only. Values marked **DFU** should not be changed.

5.2.1 SERVICE (CONTROLLER SERVICE MODES)

⇒

Mode No. (Class 1 and 2)		Function / [Setting]
Bit Switch		
1	Bit Switch 1	(See “Bit Switch Settings”.)
2	Bit Switch 2	
3	Bit Switch 3	
4	Bit Switch 4	
Clear Setting		
1	Clear Setting	Initializes the settings in the “System” menu of the user tools.
Print Summary		
1	Print Summary	Prints the service summary sheet (a summary of all the controller settings).
DispVersion		
1	Disp Version	Displays the version of the controller firmware.
ToneCtlSet		
1	Tone (Factory)	Recalls the gamma settings. Select the factory, previous, or current setting.
2	Tone (Prev.)	
3	Tone (Current)	
ToneCtlSet		
1	*600 x 600 x 2 Photo	Selects the printing mode (resolution) for the printer gamma adjustment. When selecting a print mode, an asterisk (*) is displayed in the front of the mode.
2	600 x 600 x 2 Graph	
3	600 x 600 Text	
4	600 x 600 x 2 Text	
5	600 x 600 Photo	
PrnColorSheet		
1	ToneCtlSheet	Prints the test page to check the color balance before and after the gamma adjustment.
2	ColorChart	

Bit Switch 1

Bit	Function	Default
0	Key protect [0: Not activated, 1: Activated] DFU	0
1	(Not used.) DFU	0
2	(Not used.) DFU	0
3	(Not used.) DFU	0
4	(Not used.) DFU	0
5	(Not used.) DFU	0
6	(Not used.) DFU	0
7	Emulation print area (RPCS only). [0: Not printed, 1: Printed] DFU	0

Bit Switch 2

Bit	Function	Default
1	Overlap job mode (njob) [0: Not activated, 1: Activated] DFU	1
3	PDL Sniffing- See PUB(C)-051 for details. 0: Enabled , 1: Disabled	0
4	"Letterhead mode" display in UP mode (*NOTE) [0: Not activated, 1: Activated]	0

NOTE: In addition to 2-4 Bit Switch setting, press the following keys to enter the hidden menu display mode.

#Enter → Escape → Menu

The hidden indication "Letterhead mode" appears at the bottom of "system" menu. You can select the letterhead mode in this menu.

Bit Switch 3

Bit	Function	Default
0	PS Fonts Download- See PUB(C)-045 for details. 1: ON, 0: OFF	0

Bit Switch 4

Bit	Function	Default
0	Background areas of simple graphics (RPDL, R16, R55, R98) [0: Not painted, 1: Painted] DFU	0
1	Unknown 2-byte characters (R98) [0: Cleared, 1: Not cleared] DFU	0
2	Specifies portrait/landscape reset (R16) [0: Reset by the reset command, 1: Not reset by the reset command] DFU	0
3	Changes line thickness adjustment mode [0: Mode 1, 1: Mode 2] DFU	0
4	Displays or not displays error messages No. 84 through DF (RPDL, R16, R55, R98, GL/GL2). [0: Displays, 1: Not displays] DFU	0
5	Displays or not displays error messages No. E1 and higher (RPDL, R16, R55, R98, GL/GL2). [0: Displays, 1: Not displays] DFU	0
6	Changes the tray setting (GL/GL2). [0: LP, 1: MFP] DFU	0
7	Changes the default tray. [0: LP (Tray 1), 1: MFP (System default)] DFU	0

FIRMWARE HISTORY

PUBLISHED DATE: 09/19/2003

PRODUCT CODE: G071

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – C7010

LANIER – LP036C

RICOH – AFICIO CL5000

SAVIN – CLP1036

GENERAL:

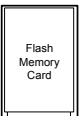
The latest firmware version can be downloaded at the Technology Solutions Center FTP Site at <http://tsc.ricohcorp.com>. Be sure to check the README file for important notes and explanations.

NOTE: Refer to Facts Line Bulletin # FL002 and Publication Bulletin #023 for more information about the FTP Internet Web Site and EPROM/Flash Card Exchange program.

The revised areas have been highlighted by an arrow ⇒.

TABLE OF CONTENTS:

⇒	MAIN UNIT CONTROLLER FIRMWARE HISTORY:.....	2
	MAIN UNIT CONTROLLER MODIFICATIONS:.....	3
	SP MODE TABLE:.....	7
⇒	BCU FIRMWARE HISTORY:	14
	NIB FIRMWARE HISTORY:.....	17



FIRMWARE

MAIN UNIT CONTROLLER FIRMWARE HISTORY:



G0705940	PROGRAM NAME	VERSION	CHECK SUM	PRODUCTION
D	--	V2.18	--	August 2002 Production
E	--	V2.19	--	Not Applied To The Production Machines
F	--	V2.20	--	Not Applied To The Production Machines
G	--	V2.21	--	Not Applied To The Production Machines
H	--	V2.22	--	November 2002 Production
J	--	V2.22.1	--	January 2003 Production
K	G0705941K.bin G0705940K.bin	V2.24	6E31 EF54	February 2003 Production
L	G0705941L.bin G0705940L.bin	V2.25	FCB9 A00C	March Production '03
M	G0705941M.bin G0705940M.bin	V2.26	211D FD70	April Production '03
N	G0705941N.bin G0705940N.bin	V2.27	E37C 2774	April Production '03
P	G0705941P.bin G0705940P.bin	V2.28	7B7C 80AF	June Production '03
Q	G0705941Q.bin G0705940Q.bin	V2.28.2	798D 3423	August Production '03

⇒ **NOTE:** Whenever updating main unit controller firmware from version 2.28 or later, please be sure to update the BCU firmware at the same time to version 1.44A or later.

MAIN UNIT CONTROLLER MODIFICATIONS:



Description of Modification	Firmware Level
Merged PCL job cannot print).	V2.28.2
<p>1. The following SP modes have been added. For details, please refer to BICU firmware release note for version 1.44A. SP2-400-008: Cleaning Bias LL1: OPC lubrication time SP2-401-008: Cleaning Bias LL2: OPC lubrication time SP2-402-008: Cleaning Bias NN1: OPC lubrication time SP2-403-008: Cleaning Bias NN2: OPC lubrication time SP2-404-008: Cleaning Bias HH: OPC lubrication time [0 to 2000/ 1400 / 10 Volt/step]</p> <p>2. Minimum value changed for SP2-941-01, -02 (OPC lubrication time). Minimum increased from 0 to 6: SP2-941-01: Job End: [6 ~ 30 / 14 / 1 s/step] SP2-941-02: OPC Lubrication Interval: [6 ~ 60 / 10 / 1 s/step]</p> <p>NOTE: Along with this main unit controller version, be sure to update the BICU firmware to v1.44A or later.</p>	V2.28
<p>To ensure proper printing quality, the default values for the following SP modes have been reviewed and some SP modes newly added.</p> <p>-SP3-920-001 (Lubrication Cleaning Time) (): old default [0 ~ 100 / 50 (100) / 1% /step] -SP2-941-001(OPC Lubricant Time – job end) [0 ~ 30 / 14 (20) / 1s /step]</p> <p>-SP3-921-001 (Lubricant Clutch OFF: 1C): Newly added [0 ~ 11 / 6 / 1s /step] -SP3-921-002 (Lubricant Clutch OFF: 2C/3C/4C): Newly added [0 ~ 11 / 6 / 1s /step] Allows the image transfer belt cleaning clutch off timing to be adjusted. The setting determines the number of seconds after image transfer belt cleaning roller charging that the clutch is turned off. With previous versions, the clutch is always running while the development roller motor rotates.</p> <p>-SP2-938-001 (OPC Reverse Interval): Newly added [0 ~ 100 / 10 / 10 counts /step] The Main motor rotates the OPC belt backwards for 500 ms at the end of every job, in order to remove foreign particles between the OPC belt and OPC cleaning blade. However, this does not need to be performed so often. In addition, reducing the frequency of OPC belt reverse rotation improves the cleaning blade performance. This SP adjusts the counter for the OPC belt reverse rotation, and is incremented as follows: LT/A4 LEF or smaller: 1, larger than LT/A4 LEF: 2. When this SP reaches its set maximum, reverse rotation is performed for 500ms at job end.</p> <p>NOTE: Along with this main unit controller version, be sure to update the BICU firmware to v1.42 or later. For details, please refer to TSB G071-007 (Faint Black Images).</p>	V2.27

Description of Modification	Firmware Level
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Changes made in preparation for the addition of SP3-921-01/02 (from the next version). Note: These SP modes are not yet operational. New SP mode added: SP2-803-01 (Charge Cleaning Off time). [0 ~ 200 / 60 / 10 seconds/step] <p>NOTE: Although a 60-second interval already exists for performing an idle discharge after corona wire cleaning, this new SP mode allows the interval to be adjusted. The idle discharge is to maintain an even charge wire surface, ensuring proper charging.</p>	V2.26
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The new Wireless LAN card (produced from Dec '02) is sometimes unable to communicate with the PC after a certain interval when using 802.11ad hoc mode. <p>NOTE: This does not occur with ad hoc or infrastructure modes, previous Wireless LAN cards (produced up until Nov '02).</p>	V2.25
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> SP1-105-01 (Fusing Temperature): Default for idling start changed from 145 to 140 (Refer to the SP mode table). SP2-801-02 (Additional Value of the charge corona cleaning interval) has been newly added. The cleaning interval for the additional charge corona unit has been adjusted as shown. [0 ~ 5000 / 100 / 100 counts/step] With this new SP, it is possible to adjust the interval for charge corona cleaning in the middle of a job: Before: The charge corona cleaning is carried out after 600 (SP2-801-1) development counts, at job end or after 700 (<u>no adjustment</u>) development counts (stops in the middle of the job). After: The charge corona cleaning is carried out after 600 (SP2-801-1) development counts, at job end or after 700 (= <u>the sum of the settings in SP2-801-1 and -2</u>) development counts (stops in the middle of the job). 	V2.24
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hardware Ethernet Problem Selecting HDD font or DIMM font may sometimes reduce available memory. Printing speed is sometimes low when printing an AutoCAD file. 	V2.22.1
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Machine may freeze during printing when using a certain application w/HDD font or DIMM font selection. Text characters may appear darker with a certain raster image. Graphics objects may appear darker when available memory is low. Wireless LAN card sometimes cannot communicate with the printer when the WEP key is ON. 	V2.22
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Translation corrections for some words in Polish and German. 	V2.21

Description of Modification	Firmware Level
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> SP1-905-01 (pressure roller type) has been newly added. 0 : new pressure roller type (2.1mm), 1 : old pressure roller type (1.5mm) This has been added due to the pressure roller modification applied to prevent fusing jams (wrapping around the pressure roller), whereby the layer thickness of the pressure roller was changed from 1.5 mm to 2.1mm from first production. <p>NOTE: <i>When updating from v2.19 or former to v2.20 or later, it is necessary to manually enter a value of 0 into this SP mode and then press #, which instructs the machine to use the new data for fusing control.</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Some default values of SP1-105 (Fusing Temperature) have been changed. (Refer to the SP mode table). Default settings for SP2-944-4 and –5 have been changed to reduce the OPC lubrication mode cycle : P2-944-4 : Sheets-1 : [10 to 80/ 30 (old : 20) / 1sheet/step] SP2-944-5 : Sheets-2 : [10 to 80/ 60 (old : 40) / 1sheet/step] Euro symbol not printed with PS driver. 	V2.20
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Minor bug corrections. 	V2.19

Description of Modification	Firmware Level
<p><u>FIRST RELEASE:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Display for SP5-945 (MidThickPaper) deleted, as this setting can be performed in User Tools. • SP1-920-1 to 3 (PFMtrDelayTime) has been newly added • SP2-310 to 2-314: Some defaults have been changed • Default value of SP2-903 (PaperTrans_Low) has been changed from 8.0 to 1.0 to improve image quality in low-temperature and low-humidity conditions: Adjusts the paper transfer current applied when the machine is at low temperature. [0.0 ~ 70.0 / 1.0 / 0.1 μA/step] • SP2-905-01 (paper transfer roller type) has been newly added due to a shape modification to the paper transfer roller to increase transferability (from first production). 0: New paper transfer roller type (Drum type), 1: Old paper transfer roller type (straight type) <p>NOTE: <i>When updating from v2.18 to v2.19 or later, please check to see that the new defaults for the following SPs have been applied (new default table below). <u>If they have not, set SP2-905-01 to a value of 0 and press #.</u> August production machines have the drum type installed, therefore it is not necessary to set this to 0 on these machines.</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Due to the paper transfer roller modification above, defaults have been changed for SP2-310-001 to SP2-314-032 (paper transfer current SPs), and SP2-903-01 (paper transfer adjustment). • Default for SP2-943 (Discharge Threshold) has been changed from 17.0 to 15.0, and the minimum setting changed from 13.0 to 9.0. <p>NOTE: <i>As with all DFU SP modes, please do not adjust the setting.</i> Adjusts the threshold of discharge. DFU [9.0 ~ 22.0 / 15.0 / 1.0 g/m³/step]</p>	<p>V2.18</p>

SP MODE TABLE:

NOTE: The follow service programs have been changed or added due to changes in the firmware. The new defaults are in "**Bold Type**" and the old defaults are in brackets (XXX).

920	Paper Feed Motor Delay Timing		
	1		Adjust the timing of the paper feed motor when the registration roller feeds the paper by the fusing motor. This adjusts the paper buckle at the registration by the start timing of the paper feed motor. Normally, the paper buckle is adjusted by SP1-003. It is not necessary to adjust in the field. (The copier version has clutch to control the timing. This adjustment is only for printer model.) [0 ~ 50 / 15 / 5/step] DFU
	2		
	3		[0 ~ 50 / 0 / 5/step] DFU (Small size: A4/LT or narrower)
105*	Fusing Temp.		
	1	H: Pre	Sets the temperature at which the heating roller starts idling. [100 ~ 180 / 140 (145) / 1°C/step]
	2	H: _Ready	Sets the temperature at which the heating roller enters the print ready condition. [100 ~ 180 / 155 (165) / 1°C/step]
105*	3	H: _Standby	Sets the heating roller temperature for the ready (standby) condition. After the main switch has been turned on, the machine enters this condition when the heating roller temperature reaches the temperature specified in this SP mode. When the machine is recovering from energy saver or auto off mode, the machine becomes ready when both heat and pressure roller temperatures reach the specified temperature. Pressure roller: SP1-105-16 [100 ~ 180 / 160 (175) / 1°C/step]
	4	H: Plain/1C	Sets the heating roller temperature for plain paper in single-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 155 (160) / 1°C/step]
	5	H: Plain/FC	Sets the heating roller temperature for plain paper in full-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 160 (170) / 1°C/step]
	6	H: M-Thick/1C	Sets the heating roller temperature for medium thickness paper in single-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 165 (170) / 1°C/step]
	7	H: M-Thick/FC	Sets the heating roller temperature for medium thickness paper in full-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 170 (180) / 1°C/step]

105	8	H: Thick/1C	Sets the heating roller temperature for thick paper in single-color mode [120 ~ 190 / 165 (170) / 1°C/step]
	9	H: Thick/FC	Sets the heating roller temperature for thick paper in full-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 170 (175) / 1°C/step]
	10	H: OHP/1C	Sets the heating roller temperature for OHP sheets in single-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 165 (170) / 1°C/step]
	11	H: OHP/FC	Sets the heating roller temperature for the OHP sheets in full-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 175 (180) / 1°C/step]
	12	H: Duplex/1C	Sets the heating roller temperature for duplex printing (both sides) in single-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 150 (155) / 1°C/step]
	13	H: Duplex/FC	Sets the heating roller temperature for duplex printing (both sides) in full-color mode. [120 ~ 190 / 155 (165) / 1°C/step]
	14	P: Pre	Sets the temperature at which the pressure roller starts idling. [10 (30) ~ 100 / 10 (30) / 1°C/step]
	15	P: _Ready	Sets the temperature at which the pressure roller becomes ready for printing. [60 ~ 150 / 65 (80) / 1°C/step]
105*	16	P: _Standby	Sets the pressure roller temperature for the ready (standby) condition. After the main switch has been turned on, the machine enters this condition when the pressure roller temperature reaches the temperature specified in this SP mode. When the machine is recovering from energy saver or auto off mode, the machine becomes ready when both heat and pressure roller temperatures reach the specified temperature. Heating roller: SP1-105-3 [60 ~ 150 / 110 (120) / 1°C/step]
	27	H: OFFSET+	Sets the heating roller temperature correction for when room temperature is 15°C or lower. [0 ~ 20 / 5 / 1°C/step]
	28	P: OFFSET+	Sets the pressure roller temperature correction for when room temperature is 15°C or lower. [0 ~ 20 / 0 / 1°C/step]
	29	H: OFFSET-	Sets the heating roller temperature correction for when room temperature is 30°C or higher. [0 ~ 20 / 5 / 1°C/step]
	30	P: OFFSET-	Sets the pressure roller temperature correction for when room temperature is 30°C or higher. [0 ~ 20 / 0 / 1°C/step]

310*	PaperTrans_LL1 (Paper Transfer LL1) The display indicates: Paper Weight/Side 1 or 2/Paper Width (mm)	
	1	Nrml/1st/-297 Sets the paper transfer current when absolute humidity AH (g/m ³) is in the following range: 0 < AH ≤ 3.5 (this is the 'LL1' humidity range) Adjust only if there are problems with insufficient transfer in the image area of the copy for a particular paper type or mode, or in response to field problems as directed by technical support staff. [0 ~ 70.0 / 25.0 (32.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	2	Nrml/1st/257-296 [0 ~ 70.0 / 25.0 (34.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	3	Nrml/1st/210-256 [0 ~ 70.0 / 25.0 (36.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	4	Nrml/1st/129-209 [0 ~ 70.0 / 25.0 (39.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	5	Nrml/1st/-128 [0 ~ 70.0 / 25.0 (42.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	6	Mid/1st/-297 [0 ~ 70.0 / 26.0 (33.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	7	Mid/1st/257-296 [0 ~ 70.0 / 26.0 (35.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	8	Mid/1st/210-256 [0 ~ 70.0 / 26.0 (37.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	9	Mid/1st/129-209 [0 ~ 70.0 / 26.0 (40.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	10	Mid/1st/-128 [0 ~ 70.0 / 26.0 (43.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	11	Thk/1st/-297 [0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 (16.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	12	Thk/1st/257-296 [0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 (19.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	13	Thk/1st/210-256 [0 ~ 70.0 / 16.0 (21.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	14	Thk/1st/129-209 [0 ~ 70.0 / 18.0 (24.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	15	Thk/1st/-128 [0 ~ 70.0 / 20.0 (27.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	16	Nrml/2nd/-297 [0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 (38.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	17	Nrml/2nd/257-296 [0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 (40.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	18	Nrml/2nd/210-256 [0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 (42.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	19	Nrml/2nd/129-209 [0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 (43.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	20	Nrml/2nd/-128 [0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 (44.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	21	Mid/2nd/-297 [0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 (39.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	22	Mid/2nd/257-296 [0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 (41.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	23	Mid/2nd/210-256 [0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 (43.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	24	Mid/2nd/129-209 [0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 (44.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	25	Mid/2nd/-128 [0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 (45.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	26	Thk/2nd/-297 [0 ~ 70.0 / 12.0 (16.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	27	Thk/2nd/257-296 [0 ~ 70.0 / 16.0 (19.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	28	Thk/2nd/210-256 [0 ~ 70.0 / 20.0 (21.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	29	Thk/2nd/129-209 [0 ~ 70.0 / 24.0 / 0.2 µA/step]
	30	Thk/2nd/-128 [0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 (26.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
	31	OHP/297 [0 ~ 70.0 / 16.0 / 0.2 µA/step]
	32	OHP/210 [0 ~ 70.0 / 20.0 (22.0) / 0.2 µA/step]
311*	PaperTrans_LL2 (Paper Transfer LL2) The display indicates: Paper Weight/Side 1 or 2/Paper Width (mm)	
	1	Nrml/1st/-297 Sets the paper transfer current when absolute humidity AH (g/m ³) is in the following range: 3.5 < AH ≤ 8.0 (this is the 'LL2' humidity range) See SP2-310 for comments. [0 ~ 70.0 / 27.0 (36.0) / 0.2 µA/step]

311*	2	Nrml/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 (38.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	3	Nrml/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 (40.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	4	Nrml/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 (43.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	5	Nrml/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 27.0 (46.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	6	Mid/1st/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 (37.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	7	Mid/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 (39.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	8	Mid/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 (41.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	9	Mid/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 (44.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	10	Mid/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 (47.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	11	Thk/1st/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 (20.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	12	Thk/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 (21.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	13	Thk/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 (23.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	14	Thk/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 16.0 (24.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	15	Thk/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 17.0 (26.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	16	Nrml/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 (40.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	17	Nrml/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 (43.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	18	Nrml/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 (45.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	19	Nrml/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 (47.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	20	Nrml/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 (50.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	21	Mid/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 (41.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	22	Mid/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 (44.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	23	Mid/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 (46.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	24	Mid/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 (48.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	25	Mid/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 (51.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	26	Thk/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 13.0 (20.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	27	Thk/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 16.0 (24.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	28	Thk/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 19.0 (27.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	29	Thk/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 23.0 (31.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	30	Thk/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 (34.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	31	OHP/297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 17.0 (19.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	32	OHP/210	[0 ~ 70.0 / 21.0 (26.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
312*	PaperTrans_NN1 (Paper Transfer NN1) The display indicates: Paper Weight/Side 1 or 2/Paper Width (mm)		
	1	Nrml/1st/-297	Sets the paper transfer current when absolute humidity AH (g/m^3) is in the following range: 80 < AH \leq 14 (this is the 'NN1' humidity range) See SP2-310 for comments. [0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 (40.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	2	Nrml/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 (42.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	3	Nrml/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 32.0 (44.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	4	Nrml/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 (47.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	5	Nrml/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 (50.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	6	Mid/1st/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 (41.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	7	Mid/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 (43.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	8	Mid/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 33.0 (45.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	9	Mid/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 32.0 (47.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	10	Mid/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 (51.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]

312*	11	Thk/1st/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 (23.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	12	Thk/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 (23.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	13	Thk/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 (24.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	14	Thk/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 (24.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	15	Thk/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 (24.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	16	Nrml/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 27.0 (42.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	17	Nrml/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 (45.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	18	Nrml/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 (48.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	19	Nrml/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 (51.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	20	Nrml/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 (55.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	21	Mid/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 (43.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	22	Mid/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 (46.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	23	Mid/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 (49.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	24	Mid/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 (52.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	25	Mid/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 (56.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	26	Thk/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 (23.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	27	Thk/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 16.0 (28.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	28	Thk/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 17.0 (32.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	29	Thk/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 23.0 (37.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	30	Thk/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 (42.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	31	OHP/297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 17.0 (22.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	32	OHP/210	[0 ~ 70.0 / 21.0 (30.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
313*	PaperTrans_NN2 (Paper Transfer NN2) The display indicates: Paper Weight/Side 1 or 2/Paper Width (mm)		
	1	Nrml/1st/-297	Sets the paper transfer current when absolute humidity AH (g/m^3) is in the following range: 14 < AH \leq 19 (this is the 'NN2' humidity range) See SP2-310 for comments. [0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 (36.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	2	Nrml/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 (38.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	3	Nrml/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 (39.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	4	Nrml/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 (40.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	5	Nrml/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 (42.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	6	Mid/1st/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 (37.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	7	Mid/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 (39.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	8	Mid/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 32.0 (40.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	9	Mid/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 (41.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	10	Mid/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 (43.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	11	Thk/1st/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 16.0 (25.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	12	Thk/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 (25.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	13	Thk/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 (24.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	14	Thk/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 (24.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	15	Thk/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 (24.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	16	Nrml/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 (43.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	17	Nrml/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 (45.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	18	Nrml/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 33.0 (46.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	19	Nrml/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 32.0 (48.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]

313*	20	Nrml/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 (50.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	21	Mid/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 (44.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	22	Mid/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 32.0 (46.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	23	Mid/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 34.0 (47.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	24	Mid/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 33.0 (49.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	25	Mid/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 32.0 (51.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	26	Thk/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 (28.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	27	Thk/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 (32.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	28	Thk/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 17.0 (36.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	29	Thk/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 23.0 (41.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	30	Thk/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 (45.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	31	OHP/297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 18.0 (23.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	32	OHP/210	[0 ~ 70.0 / 22.0 (33.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
314*	Paper Trans HH (Paper Transfer HH). The display indicates: Paper Weight/Side 1 or 2/Paper Width (mm)		
	1	Nrml/1st/-297	Sets the paper transfer current when absolute humidity AH (g/m^3) is in the following range: 19 < AH (this is the 'HH' humidity range) See SP2-310 for comments. [0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 (32.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	2	Nrml/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 (33.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	3	Nrml/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 (33.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	4	Nrml/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 (34.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	5	Nrml/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 26.0 (34.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	6	Mid/1st/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 (33.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	7	Mid/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 (34.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	8	Mid/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 (34.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	9	Mid/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 29.0 (35.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	10	Mid/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 27.0 (35.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	11	Thk/1st/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 16.0 (26.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	12	Thk/1st/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 (25.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	13	Thk/1st/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 (25.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	14	Thk/1st/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 (24.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	15	Thk/1st/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 (24.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	16	Nrml/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 30.0 (44.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	17	Nrml/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 33.0 (44.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	18	Nrml/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 36.0 (44.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	19	Nrml/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 34.0 (44.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	20	Nrml/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 32.0 (44.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	21	Mid/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 31.0 (45.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	22	Mid/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 34.0 (45.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	23	Mid/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 37.0 (45.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	24	Mid/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 35.0 (45.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	25	Mid/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 33.0 (45.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	26	Thk/2nd/-297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 14.0 (28.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	27	Thk/2nd/257-296	[0 ~ 70.0 / 15.0 (32.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	28	Thk/2nd/210-256	[0 ~ 70.0 / 16.0 (36.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]

Firmware History for G071

314*	29	Thk/2nd/129-209	[0 ~ 70.0 / 22.0 (40.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	30	Thk/2nd/-128	[0 ~ 70.0 / 28.0 (44.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	31	OHP/297	[0 ~ 70.0 / 18.0 (24.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]
	32	OHP/210	[0 ~ 70.0 / 22.0 (36.0) / 0.2 μ A/step]

BCU FIRMWARE HISTORY:



G0705150	PROGRAM NAME	VERSION	CHECK SUM	PRODUCTION
P	--	V1.32	--	August 2002 Production
Q	--	V1.33	--	Not Applied To The Production Machines
R	--	V1.35	--	Not Applied To The Production Machines
S	--	V1.36	--	December 2002 Production
T	--	V1.37	--	November 2002 Production
V	--	V1.38	F699	February 2003 Production
G0705151	G0705151.bin	V1.40	5FBA	April 2003 Production
G0705151	G0705151B.bin	V1.42	D6E3	April 2003 Production
G0705151	G0705151C.bin	V1.44A	0C47	July 2003 Production
G0705151	G0705151D.bin	V1.45	A657	August 2003 Production

NOTE: *Whenever updating BCU firmware from version 1.44A or later, please be sure to update the main unit controller firmware at the same time to version 2.28 or later.*

	Description of Modification	Firmware Level
⇒	<p>Eliminated unnecessary occurrences of SC420 (Fusing bias discharge error): SC420 will not be triggered when a leak occurs as a result of a small hole on the fusing belt surface, since from field experience it has been confirmed that belt lifetime is actually longer when the SC is not triggered in these conditions. If the leak should occur, instead of the SC the machine turns SP2-510 OFF (fusing bias SW), and the fusing bias is not applied until the fusing counter is cleared when the user replaces the unit or the SP is set back to ON.</p>	V1.45
⇒	<p>1. Eliminated unnecessary occurrences of SC410 (2nd transfer electric leakage): SC410 tends to frequently occur when using paper with a high moisture content under high-temperature, high-humidity conditions when the resistance on the paper transfer roller is low. The roller current was previously lowered for mono-color mode (45% that of full color), which lowered the resistance and caused frequent occurrences. This version uses the color mode current for mono-color until job end to eliminate unnecessary occurrences under the conditions described above.</p> <p>2. SP modes newly added (listed below). These SPs have been added to ensure proper (higher) transfer belt cleaning by applying the following bias voltages at job end (OPC lubrication time):</p> <p>SP2-400-008: Cleaning Bias LL1: OPC lubrication time SP2-401-008: Cleaning Bias LL2: OPC lubrication time SP2-402-008: Cleaning Bias NN1: OPC lubrication time SP2-403-008: Cleaning Bias NN2: OPC lubrication time SP2-404-008: Cleaning Bias HH: OPC lubrication time [0 to 2000/ 1400 / 10 Volt/step]</p> <p>2. Minimum value changed for SP2-941-01, -02 (OPC lubrication time). Minimum increased from 0 to 6: SP2-941-01: Job End: [6 ~ 30 / 20 / 1 s/step] SP2-941-02: OPC Lubrication Interval: [6 ~ 60 / 10 / 1 s/step]</p> <p>NOTE : Along with this BICU version, be sure to update the main unit controller firmware to v2.28 or later.</p>	V1.44A
	<p>Modified in accordance with Main Unit Controller version 2.27 enhancements. For details, please see Main Unit Controller version 2.27 Description of Modification.</p> <p>NOTE: Along with this BICU version, be sure to update the main unit controller firmware to version 2.27 or later. For details, please see TSB G071 – 007 (Faint Black Images).</p>	V1.42
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Minor bugs corrected. Changes made in preparation for the addition of SP3-921-01/02 (from the next version) NOTE: These SP Modes are not yet operational. 	V1.40

Description of Modification	Firmware Level
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Software changed so that oil end detection is not performed while the fusing unit is in operation, in order to prevent oil end misdetections caused by winter humidity (humidification). SP mode newly added: SP2-801-02 (Additional Value of the charge corona cleaning interval). SC687 misdetections sometimes occur when paper is loaded into the bypass tray after the bypass tray reaches paper end. The detection conditions for SC412 (2nd transfer disconnection) have been changed from 60ms to 240ms to prevent misdetections that can sometimes occur in low-temperature conditions. 	V1.38
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Minor bugs corrected. 	V1.37
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Misdetection of toner end and/or toner near end even when the toner cartridge still contains enough toner to continue printing. The paper end condition may not be detected even when the paper in the optional tray has run out. 	V1.36
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> SP1-905-01 (pressure roller type) newly added. For details, please refer to the main unit controller firmware history. Detection conditions for SC560 (Zero cross error) have been changed as follows (upper limits eliminated, as they are unnecessary): <u>Old:</u> 50Hz: Machine detects less than 45Hz or greater than 54Hz. 60Hz: Machine detects less than 55Hz or greater than 64Hz. <u>New:</u> 50Hz: Machine detects less than 45Hz. 60Hz: Machine detects less than 55Hz. Default settings for SP2-944-4 and -5 have been changed to reduce the OPC lubrication mode cycle: SP2-944-4: Sheets-1: [10 to 80/ 30 / 1sheet/step] SP2-944-5: Sheets-2: [10 to 80/ 60 / 1sheet/step] Paper end is sometimes not detected even when the paper in the standard tray runs out. 	V1.35
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Minor bug corrections. 	V1.33
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> First release. 	V1.32

NIB FIRMWARE HISTORY:

G0705911	PROGRAM NAME	VERSION	CHECK SUM	PRODUCTION
H	--	V3.72	--	August 2002 Production
I	--	V3.73	--	October 2002 Production
J	G0705911J.bin	V3.74	6EB6	January 2003 Production

Description of Modification	Firmware Level
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> SC990 (Software performance error) may occur if continuous print jobs are sent using the LPR port when network traffic is very heavy. 	V3.74
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Software changed to support the new IC chip on the new wireless LAN option (old chip discontinued). Note: This version works with both the old and new IC chips. 	V3.73
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> First release 	V3.72